

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

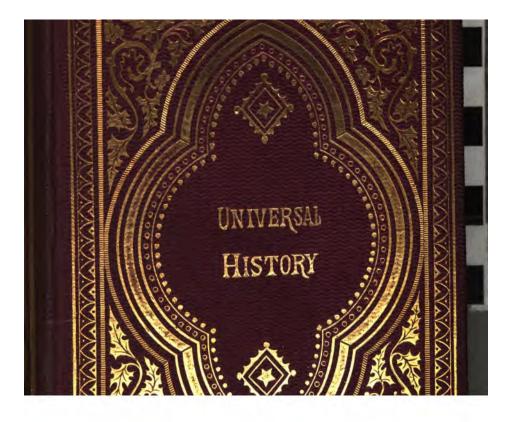
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

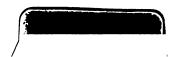
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + Refrain from automated querying Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

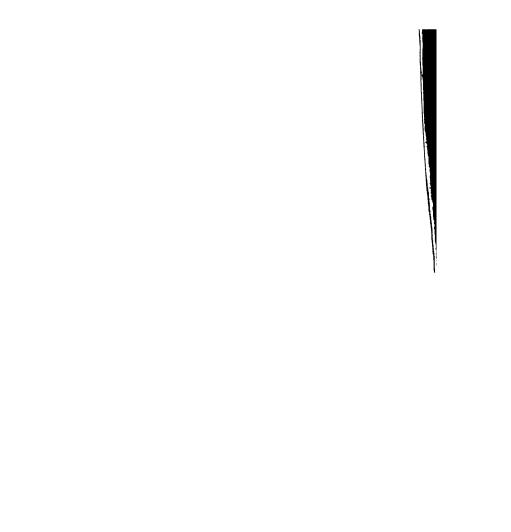
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/

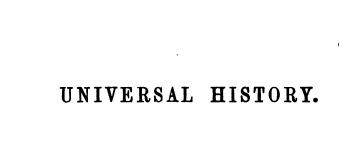


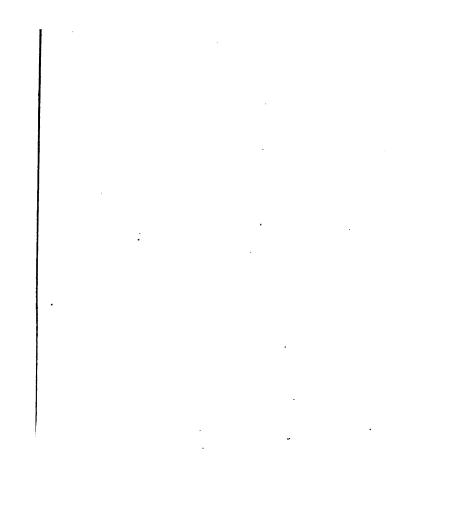








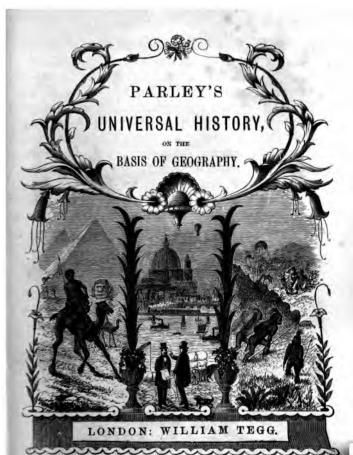


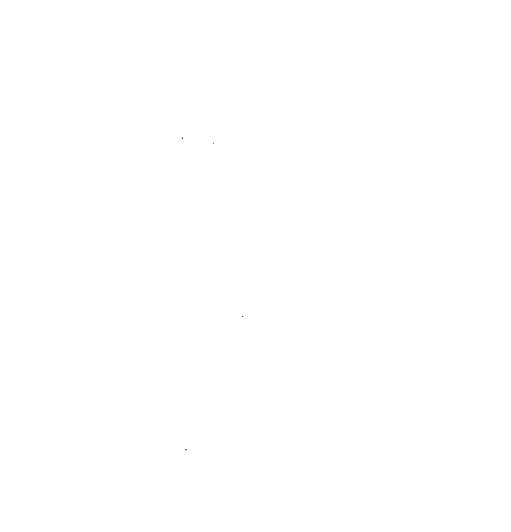




•







JNIVERSAL HISTORY,

ON THE

BASIS OF GEOGRAPHY.

BY PETER PARLEY, Andrick

TALES ABOUT NATURAL HISTORY;" "THE SEA AND PACIFIC OCEAN." ETC.

FOR THE USE OF FAMILIES AND SCHOOLS.

Ellustrated by Maps,

NGBAVED ON STEEL FROM THE LATEST AUTHORITIES.

BY A. G. FINDLAY, F.R.G.S.

Twelfth Edition.

LONDON: WILLIAM TEGG.

2.2.3. K. 33.

M'CORQUODALE AND CO., PRINTERS, LONDON: WORKS, NEWTON.



PREFACE.

THE idea of embracing, in the compass of this little volume, anything like a tolerable outline of Universal History, would doubtless excite a smile on the lip of a college professor, should he ever condescend to peep into our humble title-page. But let my object be clearly understood, and then I hope the attempt I have here made will not be deemed either ridiculous or presuming.

A work which gives in detail the history of mankind must necessarily be voluminous. It is therefore beyond the utmost stretch of the youthful intellect to compass it; the young reader shrinks back in despair, even from undertaking the task of its perusal. He looks upon the formidable row of octavos, in which such a wilderness of lore is collected, as a maze in which he is sure to get lost, and he therefore prudently resolves to keep clear.

Abridgments of general history have been usually liable to still greater objections. They are little more than dry lists of dates, presenting no pictures to the imagination, exciting no sympathies in the heart, and imparting few ideas to the understanding. If, by dint of labour, a meagre chronological table is extracted by the reader, and fixed in the memory, it is of no practical use. It is but a skeleton, without flesh, sinews, or soul; a mass of words, to which the mind can assign no clear definitions.

And yet it is very desirable that every person should, at an early period of life, have imprinted on his mind, in bright and unfading colours, a clear outline of the story of mankind, from its beginning in the plain of Shinar down to the present hour. The advantages of this are obvious. It makes all subsequent reading and reflection on the subject of history both useful and interesting; it becomes a stimulus to research; it is ever after a clew to guide the inquirer through the labyrinths of historical lore.

The task of preparing a work which may accomplish this desirable object in respect to the young, is doubtless

difficult. To steer clear of bewildering diffuseness on the one hand, and repulsive chronological brevity on the other—and at the same time to weave into a few pages, a clear, vivid, and continuous tale of the great human family—one that may be both comprehensible and entertaining to the young reader—demands a nicer understanding of the youthful heart and intellect, and more art in the adaptation of language to simple minds, than can often be at the command of any man. But though the undertaking be discouraging, it is perhaps worth the trial; if I fail, I do but follow the fortunes of others; if I have not the power to command success, accident may come to my aid.

So I have written my book, and the world may take it for what it is worth. I have based History upon Geography, illustrating them by maps. I have written for the *Young*; but as I desire that this volume may not be forced upon anybody as a monitor or master, I say in the title-page, that it is designed for families and schools.

There is one feature of the work upon which I wish to add a few remarks. Before giving the history of any country, I tell the reader where it is; I give him a sketch of its present condition; I direct his attention to its place on the map, and ask him to observe its position in relation to other places. Having thus given the country a "local habitation and a name," in the mind of the reader, I proceed to relate its story. Thus it will be seen that I have made Geography the basis of History; a point of much importance, as I think, in teaching this subject to children. In a larger work, it is less necessary, for it may be presumed that older readers are acquainted with geography, before they enter upon the study of history.

PETER PARLEY.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.	
CHAP, PAG	•
1. About Travelling in the Car of a Balloon, and what curious	
	1
2. About History and Geography, and other Matters	3
3. How the World is divided into Land and Water	6
4. About the Inhabitants of Asia, Africa, and other Countries	7
5. About the different Kinds of People in the World	9
ASIA.	
6. About the Climate, Productions, Mountains, People, and	
Animals of Asia, and other Things 11	L
7. About the Creation. The Deluge 14	1
8. How Noah and his Family came out of the Ark. How the	
People settled in the Land of Shinar. About Babel . 19	5
9. More about Babel	3
10. About the great Assyrian Empire, and Reign of Queen	
Semiramis	
11. Queen Semiramis sets forth to conquer the World, but is	
defeated by the King of the Indies	•
12. About Ninyas. Reign of Sardanapalus, and Ruin of the	•
Assyrian Empire	4
	•
13. About the Hebrews or Jews. Origin of the Hebrews. The	_
Removal of Jacob and his Children to Egypt 26	5
14. The Bondage in Egypt. Flight of the Hebrews, and Destruc-	
	19
15. About the Wanderings of the Israelites in the Wilderness .	<i>33</i>
4. Overthrow of the Midianites. Samson, Judge of Israel	86

CHA	= •				Page
	Samson's Exploits and Death		•	•	38
18.	Beginning of the Reign of Saul		•		40
19.	Combat of David and Goliath				42
20.	The Reign of David. Wisdom of Solomon				44
21.	Building of the Temple. Visit of the Queen of	Sh	ba		40
22.	The Decline of the Jewish Nation			•	50
23.	The Hebrew Prophets				53
24.	Crucifixion of the Saviour. Destruction of Jeru	sale	m		5€
25.	Cyrus conquers Babylon. His Death		•		59
26.	Reign of Cambyses				62
27.	Expedition of Xerxes into Greece				64
28.	Affairs of Persia till the Saracen Conquest .		•	•	67
29.	Modern History of Persia				70
30.	Early History of China				73
31.	Anecdotes of the Chinese Emperor		•		75
32.	Cities of China. Manners of the Chinese .				78
33.	Origin of the Arabs. Rise of Mahomet .				81
34.	Sequel of the History of the Saracens				84
35.	About Syria, Phœnicia, and Asia Minor .				87
36.	A brief View of Several Nations				91
87.	Review of the History of Asia				94
38.	Chronology of Asia	•	•	•	98
	AFRICA.				
39.	About the Geography of Africa. The Inhabitan	ıts			101
	Early Sovereigns of Egypt				104
	Egyptian Architecture and Sculpture		•		107
	The Ptolemies and Queen Cleopatra				110
	Sequel of the Egyptian History				114
	Summary of Ethiopian Matters		•		116
	Origin of the Barbary States, and their Piracies	on 1	he	·	
	Christians				118
Fa	bles and Facts shout Africa	•	•	•	191

	C	ONTE	NTS.						xi
CHAI	- -								PAGE
	History of the Slave Trad	е.	•	•	•	•		•	123
48.	Chronology of Africa.	•	•		•	•	•	•	125
	1	EUR	PE.						
49.	Introductory Remarks on	its G	eograp	hy, a	nd ot	her I	Lat ter		127
50.	About Greece. Where it	t is si	tuated	. A	ppear	ance	of th	е	
	Country. Climate.	•	•		•	•	•		132
51.	The Extent of Greece. I	First S	ettlen	ent o	of the	Coun	try		134
52.	The Grecian Lawgivers	•		•					137
53.	War with Persia .	•		•	•	•			139
54.	Affairs of Athens .	•					•		141
55.	Beginning of the Theban	War		•	•	•			144
56.	Sequel of the Theban Wa	r.	•				•		146
57.	Grecian Religion or Myth	ology							149
58.	The Grecian Philosophers								152
59.	The Grecian Philosophers	cont	inued						154
60.	Something more about Ph	ilosop	hers.	Abou	t the	Greel	Poet	s	157
61.	About the Mode of Life ar	nong	he an	cient	Greek	29			160
	Philip of Macedon conque								164
	Conquests of Alexander th								167
64.	Sequel of Alexander's Car	reer							169
65.	Greece invaded by the Ga	uls or	Kelts						172
66.	End of Grecian Independe	ence							174
67.	Modern History of Greece			•	. '	• .			176
68.	Chronology of Greece .								179
69.	About Italy as it now is		•						180
70.	Founding of Rome by Ron	nulus.	Its 1	Early	State				183
71.	Battle of the Horatii and	Curia	tii						187
72.	From the Reign of Ancus	Mart	ius till	the	Expu	lsion	of th	е	
	Kings								189
73.	The Story of Coriolanus							•	192
74.	Rome invaded by the Gaul	s. T	he Fir	st Pn	nic W	7 ar	•	•	195
75.	Second and Third Punic W	a ra		~~ u		aı	•	•	720

	٠	
ĸ	٦	1

CONTENTS.

CHA	-							PAGE
	Scipio's Triumph	•	•	•	•	•	•	200
77.	Sylla and Marius				•			203
78.	Cneus Pompey and Julius Cæsan	٠.		•	•	•		205
79.	Cæsar usurps the Supreme Power	•			•			207
80.	Assassination of Julius Cæsar					•		209
81.	Consequences of Cæsar's Death	•						211
82.	About the great Power and Exte	ent of	the I	Roma	n Em	pire i	n	
	the Time of Augustus .		•	•				213
83.	The means by which Rome acqu	ired i	ts Po	wer		•		216
84.	Rome under the Emperors .	•	•			•		219
85.	Fall of the Western Empire of the	he Ro	mans					221
86.	Progress of the Decline of Rome	•						224
87.	Manners and Customs of the and	cient 1	Roma	ns				227
88.	About Religion. Deities. Tem	ples.	Mar	riage				229
	About Funeral Rites and Cerem							232
90.	Roman Farms. Mode of Plough	ing.	Farn	n-hou	ses.	Grain	ı.	
	Cattle. Superstitions of the E	arme	rs. G	arde	ns. T	Vines		236
91.	Country Houses. Description of	Pliny	's Vi	lla.	Aque	lucts		239
92.	Military Affairs of the Romans.	Divis	ion o	f the	Army	. Th	е	
	Imperial Eagle. Music. Arms	. Dre	ss. b	L ilita:	y Re	ward	8.	
	Crowns. The Triumph .		•		•			243
93.	About Naval Affairs. The War				rce.	Show	78	
	of Wild Beasts. Exhibitions	of G	ladia	tors				246
94.	Sports. Chariot Racing. The	Circus	. Ca	rriag	es. I	Privat	e	
	Entertainments. Supper R	coms	. C	onviv	ial P	artie	в.	
	Luxuries		•					249
95.	About Theatres. Clocks and	Watcl	ies.	The	Fine	Art	g.	
	Books and Writing. Costume	e. C	onclu	sion				252
	Rome under the Popes		•	•				255
	About the former Italian States			•	•	•	•	259
	Chronology of Rome	•	•	•			•	261
· A	bout the Ottoman Empire.	Curke	y iu 🛭	Euro	e. 7	l'urke	y	
	in Asia. About the Climate.	Peon	le. a	nd ot	ner th	sari.		263

CONTENTS.	xiii
-----------	-------------

PA PA	32
out the Saracens. How the Turks overturned the Sara-	
n Empire. How the Ottoman Turks founded the Otto-	
an Empire. About Bajazet, Timour, and others 26	36
uel of the Turkish History 26	39
ly History of Spain. The Moorish Conquest 27	2
rs between the Moors and Spaniards 27	16
Spanish Inquisition	18
Invincible Armada. Curious death of a Spanish King.	
cent Affairs of Spain	30
hort Story about Portugal	8
onology of Turkey, Spain, and Portugal 28	35
cription of France. Its Climate. Cities. Manufactures.	
anners and Customs of the People	37
out the Gauls and other Tribes of Barbarians. How the	
outhern Parts of Europe were first settled, and how the	
orthern Parts were settled afterwards	90
ry of the Barbarians continued	92
Gauls. Origin of the French Nation	95
out Clovis and Little King Pepin	97
Reign of Charlemagne	99
out the Crusades, or Holy Wars	02
out the Feudal System	05
out Chivalry or Knight-Errantry	10
• •	13
g Philip and Pope Boniface. Wars of the French and	
	16
Reigns of several French Kings	20
<u> </u>	22
French Revolution	25
Rise of Napoleon Bonaparte	29
•	30
	32
	335

X	V

CONTENTS.

CHAP.				PAGE
126.	About Germany	•	•	838
	About the ancient Tribes of Germany, Charlemagne	e, &c.		340
128.	Affairs of Switzerland			343
	Sequel of the German History	•		346
130.	About Austria, Hungary, &c	•		348
131.	About Hungary, Bohemia, the Tyrol, &c	•		351
132.	About Prussia	•		353
133.	History of Prussia			355
134.	Chronology of Germany, Austria, Hungary, and Pr	ussia		358
135.	Description of Russia	•		359
136.	Description of Russia continued	•		362
137.	The Reign of Peter the Great			365
138.	The Successors of Peter the Great			367
139.	About Sweden			370
140.	Charles the Twelfth and his Successors			373
141.	About Lapland, Norway, and Denmark			375
142.	Brief Notices of several Kingdoms and States .			378
143.	Chronology of Russia, Sweden, Lapland, Norway, I)enma	ark	,
	Holland, Belgium, &c	•		382
144.	Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland			384
145.	About London, and other cities of England, Wales	s, Sco	t-	
	land, and Ireland	·.		386
146.	Origin of the British Nation. The Druids .	•		338
	Saxon and Danish Kings of England			391
148.	Norman Kings of England			393
	English wars and Rebellions			396
	The Lancastrian Kings of England			399
	Wars of the Roses			402
	Reigns of the Tudor Princes			404
	The Reign of Elizabeth			407
	Accession of the House of Stuart			410
	Wars of the King and Parliament	•		419
. 27	he Protectorate and the Restoration			416

	Contents.					XV
CHAP.						Page
	The Revolution of 1688, and other Matters	,	•	•	-	418
	The Hanoverian Kings of Great Britain	•	•	•	•	421
	The Story of Wales	•	•	:	•	424
	The Story of Scotland	• .	•	•	•	427
	About Ireland	•			•	431
162.	Matters and Things					434
163	Chronology of Great Britain			•		437
164.	Review. The Dark Ages. Important Inv	rentic	ons, &	c.		439
	General Chronology of Europe	•	•	•	•	445
	AMERICA.					
166.	About America					448
167.	The first Inhabitants of America .					452
168.	Discovery of America by Columbus .					454
169.	A few words about Iceland and Greenland	ıd.	Settle	ment	8	
	of the French in America	•	•	•		457
170.	The French Colonies conquered by the En	glish	•			461
171.	Description of the United States .	•				463
172.	Settlement and Colonial History of New E	nglar	ad			465
173.	Affairs of New England continued .	•				467
174.	Early History of Virginia					470
175.	Settlement of the other Colonies .					472
176.	Causes which led to the Revolution .				•	473
177.	The American War					475
178.	Affairs of the United States since the Revo	lutio	n			477
179.	General Remarks upon the History of the	Unite	ed Sta	tes		480
	About South America. El Dorado, and				of	
	Youth	•				482
181.	History of the Mexican Territories. Guat	imals				484
	Spanish Peruvian Territories	•				487
	Account of the Brazilian Territories	-			٠.	489

184. The West Indies .

EV i	CONTR	NTS.						
CHAP.								Pagi
185. The West In	dies continued		è	•	•	۵	•	494
186. The West In	idies continued	•	•	•	٠		•	497
187. Chronology	of America .	•	•	•	•	•	•	500
	OCEA	NIA.						
188. About Ocean	ia. The Malaysi	an Isla	ands					502
189. The Austral	ian Divisions of O	ceania						504
190. Polynesia.	The Sandwich Isla	ands				•′		507
191. Polynesia co	ntinued. The So	ciety I	slan	is.	The 1	3ount	y	510
192. Story of the	Bounty concluded						٠.	512
193. Chronology	of Oceania .	•			•			515
144. Duration of	Empires. Asia.	Africa	١.					515
	Empires continued					•		520
196. Ancient Nar	nes of Countries, &	EC.	•	•				527
	nd Progress of Go		ent	٠.	•			530
	. Agriculture. (533
199. Commerce					·			538
200. Painting, Sc	ulpture, and Music	٠.						544
	Progress of various							549
	coveries and Inve		•					553
203. Reigning Ma	marche				-	_		RKO

•

.

PETER PARLEY'S UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

CHAPTER I.—INTRODUCTION.

ABOUT TRAVELLING IN A BALLOON, AND WHAT CURIOUS THENGS ONE MAY MEET WITH.

- 1. If you could get into the car of a balloon, rise into the air, and sail over the country, how many interesting things you would see! At one moment you would be passing over a city, at another you would look down upon a valley, or a river, or a hill, or a mountain!
- 2. What a pleasant method this would be of studying what is called geography! for geography, you know, is a description of cities, rivers, valleys, hills, mountains, and other things that a traveller meets with.
- 3. How much more delightful this would be than to look over maps, which only give you a sort of picture, showing where towns are placed, how rivers run, and where mountains lie. But as very few of us can travel about with balloons, we must be content with maps, and learn geography from them as well as we can.
- 4. Suppose that, in travelling in some distant country, we should meet with a building different from any we had

ever seen; suppose that it was built of stone, covered with moss, and marked with great age, as if it had been erected at least five hundred years ago:—

- 5. Suppose that, on entering this building, we should find strange, dark rooms of vast size; suppose that we should find in this building the graves of persons who died two or three hundred years ago, with their names carved upon the stones beneath which their bones repose!—
- 6. Now, what do you imagine we should think of all this? Should we not be curious to know why this building was erected—when, and by whom it was built? Should we not be anxious to know something of the people who constructed such a wonderful building? Should we not desire to go back five hundred years, and learn the story of that distant time?
- 7. And if we could meet with some old man who had lived so long, should we not wish to sit down by his side and hear him tell how and when this edifice was built? Should we not ask him a thousand questions about the people who built it, and those who had been buried in it?
- 8. Now, if you were to travel in foreign countries, you would meet with a great many such buildings as I have described. You would, indeed, find many that are more than five hundred years old.
- 9. If you were to extend your travels to Italy, or Greece, or Egypt, or some parts of Asia, you would often meet with the Fains of temples, palaces, and cities, which existed in a perfect

state two or three thousand years ago. Some of these would excite your wonder on account of their beauty, and some on account of their grandeur.

- 10. Such things you would meet with in foreign lands, but no man could be found old enough to tell you their story from his own observation. What then would you do? Perhaps you would be content, after returning from your travels, to sit down with old Peter Parley, and hear the history of those ancient times.
- 11. Well, I suppose that most of my readers have either travelled about, or read of distant countries. Perhaps, then, they are curious to hear an old man tell of the olden time. If the reader is not already tired of my stories, I beg him to sit down and hear what I have to say.

QUESTIONS.—1. What would a person see if he were to sail over the country in a balloon? 2. What is geography? 3. What are maps?

4. Suppose we should meet with some old building, what should we desire to know? 5. What would a traveller meet with in foreign lands?

5. What would he meet with in Italy, Greece, Egypt, or Asia? What would these ancient ruins teach?

CHAP. II.—Introduction continued.

ABOUT HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY, AND OTHER MATTERS.

1. I SUPPOSE you have often met with the words History and Geography. History is the story of mankind since the world was created, and may be compared to an old man

who has lived for thousands of years, and who has seen cities built and fall into decay; who has seen nations rise, flourish, and disappear; and who, with a memory full of wonderful things, sits down to tell you of all that has happened during so many ages.

- 2. Geography, as I have before said, is a description of towns, rivers, mountains, and countries—the things which a traveller sees in going from one place to another. Geography, then, may be compared to some roving fellow who has been all over the world in ships, stage-coaches, steamboats, and railway carriages, and who has come back to give us an account of all he has seen.
- 3. You will see, then, that history is a record of events which have happened, and that geography tells you of the places where they happened. In order to understand the former, you must know something of the latter. In this little book I shall, therefore, sometimes put on the old greybeard of History, who has lived for thousands of years, and tell you of what has come to pass; and sometimes I shall take you in a balloon or vessel, and carry you with me to the places where the events I relate have occurred.
- 4. I shall, in the progress of my story, tell you how the first man and woman were made, how they had a large family, how these increased and spread themselves throughout the different countries. I shall tell you of the great nations that have existed, of the great battles that have been fought, and of the deeds of celebrated persons.

- 5. But, before I proceed, I must remind you that the world round, and that men and animals live upon the surface; hat the face of the earth is divided into land and water; that n the land trees, grass, herbs, and flowers grow; men and nimals dwell; and towns, cities, and villages are built.
- 6. A high piece of land, you know, is called a mountain r hill; a low piece of land is called a valley. You often to water running in a stream through a valley; this is alled a river: and you sometimes see a still piece of water irrounded by hills; this is called a lake.
- 7. About one-third of the face of the earth is land, and wo-thirds are water. The land is divided into two great intinents; the western continent consists of North and outh America; the eastern continent consists of Europe, frica, and Asia.
- 8. If you will turn to page 7, you will see a map of the astern continent; and on page 8, you will see a map of the restern continent.

QUESTIONS.—1. What is history? To what may it be compared? What is geography? To what may it be compared? 5. What is se shape of the earth? Where do men and animals live? How is se face of the land divided? What grow upon the land? What live pen the land? What are built upon the land? 6. What is a mounin or hill? A valley? A river? A lake? 7. What part of the cerof the earth is laud? What portion is water? How is the land vided? What of the western continent? The eastern?

CHAP. III.—Introduction continued.

HOW THE WORLD IS DIVIDED INTO LAND AND WATER.

- 1. I HAVE said that about two-thirds of the face of the earth are covered with water. This water is one vast salt sea, but to different parts we give different names.
- 2. That part which lies between Europe and America is called the Atlantic Ocean, and is about three thousand miles wide; that part which lies between America and Asia is called the Pacific Ocean, and is about ten thousand miles wide. There are many other names given to other parts of the great salt sea.
- 3. Ships, as you well know, sail from one country to another upon the water, and in this way a great deal of trade or commerce is carried on. But, as mankind live on the land, my stories will chiefly relate to what has happened there.
- 4. I suppose you have heard people speak of the four quarters of the world. By this they mean Europe, Asia Africa, and America. Besides these, there are a great many pieces of land encircled by water, called islands.
- 5. In the Pacific Ocean there are many of these, the inhabitants of which are very numerous. These islands are considered the fifth division of the world, which is called Oceania. Many people divide the world into six parts, thus:

 Europe, Asia, Africa, America, Australasia, and Polynesia.
 Oceania, however, comprehends the two latter.



EASTERN BOENUSPHERE.



6. Now, what I am going to tell you has happened in these different parts of the world. In order to understand ny stories, it is necessary you should look over the maps which are here given. These will show you where the different countries are about which I am going to speak.

Questions.—1. What of the great mass of water that covers two-hirds of the earth? 2. What of the Atlantic Ocean? The Pacific? What of ships? What of the land? 4. What are the four quarers of the world? What is an island? 5. What of Oceania?

I wish you to answer the following questions from the maps:-

What ocean lies east of America? What lies to the west? Into that two parts is America divided? Which way is Europe from America? Which way is Africa? How far is Europe from America? Iow far is Africa? What ocean lies west of Europe? What lies to be west of Africa? What to the south of Africa and Asia? What o the east of Asia? How is Europe bounded? Which way is it rom Africa? How is Africa bounded? How is Africa separated rom Asia? What sea lies between Africa and Europe? Are Europe and Asia separated by water, or do they lie together in one piece of and? How is Asia bounded? Point your finger toward Asia. Coward Europe. Toward Africa.

CHAP. IV .- INTRODUCTION continued.

ABOUT THE INHABITANTS OF ASIA, AFRICA, AND OTHER COUNTRIES.

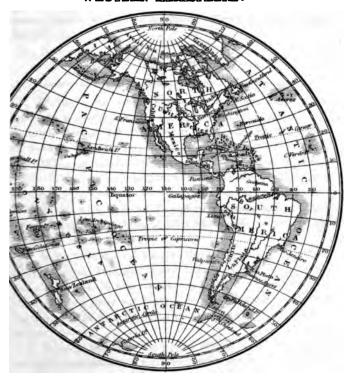
- 1. BEFORE I proceed further, I must tell you that Asia is a vast country with a multitude of cities, occupied by a great many different nations.
- 2. The principal of these nations are:—The Tartars, who wander from place to place, and dwell chiefly in tents; the

Arabs, who have large flocks of camels and fine horses, with which they roam ever the desert; the Hindoos or inhabitants of India, who travel about on elephants, and worship idels; the Persians, who are very fend of poetry, and have splendid palaces; the Chinese, from whom we get tea; and the Turks, who sit on cushions instead of chairs.

- 3. The whole population of Asia, is about seven hundred, and eighty millions, which is more than half the inhabitants of the whole globe. It has ten times as many people as the whole of North and South America put together.
- 4: Africa, you know, is the native land of the negroes. It has a few large cities, but the whole number of people is but eighty-nine millions.
- 5. Europe is divided into several nations, such as the English, French, Italians, Spaniards, Germans, Russians, and others. It has many fine cities, and about two hundred and eighty millions of inhabitants.
- 6. America has some large cities, and many pleasant towns and villages, but more than half the country is uninhabited. The whole population is about seventy millions.
- 7. Oceania, as I have before said, consists of many islands in the Pacific Ocean. One of these, Australia, is the largest island on the globe. The population of these places is continually increasing, but may be stated at about three millions and a half at the present time,

OFERTONE.—1. What of Asia? 2. What are the principal nations of Asia? 3. Population of Asia? 4. What of Africa? Population?

WESTERN HEROSPHERE.



	•	

5. What of Europe? Population? 6. What of America? Population? 7. What of Oceania? In which direction are the Oceanic islands from Liverpool? Population? Where are the Oceanic islanda?

CHAP. V. .- INTRODUCTION continued.

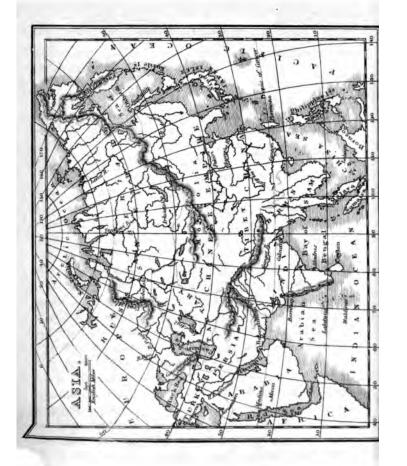
ABOUT THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF PEOPLE IN THE WORLD.

- 1. PERHAPS the whole number of the inhabitants upon the globe is nearly one thousand two hundred millions. All these are descended from Adam and Eve, who, the Bible tells us, lived in the garden of Eden!
- 2. What an immense family to have proceeded from one pair! You may well believe that it has taken many years for the human family to increase to this extent.
- 3. If you were to travel in different countries, you would observe that the inhabitants differ very much in their colour, dress, and mode of living.
- 4. Some have dark skins, like the colour of a dead leaf, as the American Indians; some have a yellowish or olive colour, like the Chinese; some are a deep sooty brown, like the Hindoos; some are black, like the Negroes; and some are white, like the English, and the people of the United States.
- 5. In some countries the people live in huts built of mud or sticks, and subsist by hunting with the bow and arrow. These are said to be in the savage state. The American Indians, some of the negroes of Africa, some of the inhabi-

tants of Asia, and most of the Oceanians, inhabitants of the Pacific Isles, are savages.

- 6. In some countries the people live in houses partly of stone and mud. They have few books, no churches or meeting-houses, and worship idols. Such are most of the negroes of Africa, and many tribes in Asia. These are said to be in the barbarous state, and are often called barbarians. Many of their customs are very cruel.
- 7. In some countries the inhabitants live in tolerable houses, and the rich have fine palaces. The people have many ingenious arts, but the schools are poor, and but a small portion are taught to read and write. The Chinese, the Hindoos, the Turks, and some other nations of Asia, with some of the inhabitants of Africa and Europe, are in this condition, which may be called a civilized state.
- 8. In many parts of Europe, and in the United States, the people live in good houses; they have good furniture, many books, good schools, churches, meeting-houses, steamboats, and railroads. These are in the highest state of civilization.
- 9. Thus, you observe that mankind may be divided into four classes—those who are in the savage state, those who are in the barbarous state, those who are merely civilized, and those who are in the highest state of civilization. The four little pictures at the beginning of this book will make you better understand and remember the subject.

Questions.—1. What is the whole population of the globe? Where the Adam and Eve live? 3. What would you observe in travelling



ASIA 11

through different countries? 5. What of people in the savage state?
6. What of people in the barbarous state? 7. What of people in the civilized state? 8. What of people in the highest state of civilization?
9. Into what four classes may mankind be divided?

CHAP. VI.—ASIA.

ABOUT THE CLIMATE, PRODUCTIONS, MOUNTAINS, PEOPLE, AND ANIMALS
OF ASIA, AND OTHER THINGS.

- 1. I HAVE already said that Asia is a vast country, containing a great many cities and a multitude of inhabitants. It lies on the eastern side of the eastern hemisphere; and you may go to it either by sailing round the Cape of Good Hope and across the Indian Ocean, or by crossing Europe, or by passing between Europe and Africa, over the Mediterranean Sea.
- 2. In the northern portion of Asia the climate is warm. These parts are chiefly inhabited by the Chinese, Hindoos, Persians, Arabians, and Turks. In many places the country is fertile, and in the valleys beautiful flowers, spicy shrubs, and fragrant trees are found.
- 3. Wild bigs of the most brilliant colours are often seen in the forests. Peacocks, pheasants, and other domestic fowls, are natives of these sunny regions. Oranges grow wild in some parts, and many of our most splendid garden-flowers are to be found growing on the hills and in the valleys of Southern Asia.

- 4. In the centre of Asia there are some mountains whose tops are covered with everlasting snow. These are the loftiest peaks in the world, and are nearly six miles in height. To the north of these is a cold region, where there are vast plains, with scattered tribes of Tartars roaming over them for the scanty pastures they afford for their camels and horses.
- 5. In these gloomy tracts there are few towns or cities. The inhabitants are for the most part wanderers, who build no houses but dwell in tents, and live upon the milk and flesh of their flocks. They also hunt the wild-deer, antelopes, and other animals that are found in these regions.
- 6. The native animals of Asia are many of them very remarkable. The elephant is found in the thickets, the rhinoceros along the banks of rivers; the lion in the plains, the royal tiger in the forests, monkeys and apes of many kinds abound in the hot parts, and serpents thirty feet in length are sometimes met with.
- 7. In the southern portions of Asia hurricanes are common, and these sometimes are so violent as to overturn the houses, rend the forests in pieces, and scatter ruin and desolation over the land. The country is often parched with drought, and destructive famine follows. Sometimes millions of locusts come upon the wind, and devour every green thing, so that nothing is left for man or beast. Pestilence often visits the people, and sweeps away thousands upon thousands.

13

8. Such is Asia, a land of wonders both in its geography and history. It is the largest of the four quarters of the globe; it contains the loftiest mountains; it affords the greatest variety of animal and vegetable productions; and the seasons here display at once their most beautiful and their most fearful works.

ASIA.

9. Asia, too, is the most populous quarter of the globe; it contained the first human inhabitants, and from this quarter all the rest of the globe has been peopled. Here, too, the most remarkable events took place which belong to the history of man. Here the most wonderful personages were born that have ever trod this earth; and here, too, the mighty miracles of Jehovah were wrought.

QUESTIONS.—How is Asia bounded on the North? East? South? West? Which way is Asia from Europe? In what part of Asia is Persia? In which direction from Persia is Arabia? Hindostan? China? Tartary? Siberia? Red Sea? Egypt? Mediterranean Sea? In what part of Asia is the river Euphrates? 1. What of Asia? Where is Asia? How can you go to it? Point your finger toward Asia? 2. Climate of Southern Asia? What nations live in Southern Asia? Productions? 3. Birds? Fruits? Flowers? 4. Mountains? What of Northern Asia? 5. Inhabitants? 6. Animals of Asia? 7. Southern parts of Asia? 8. For what is Asia very remarkable as to its geography? 9. For what is Asia very remarkable as to its geography?

CHAP. VII.—ASIA continued.

ABOUT THE CREATION. THE DELUGE.

- 1. The first portion of the world inhabited by mankind was Asia; the next was Africa; the next was Europe; and the last was America. How long it is since the latter country was first peopled by the Indians, we do not know; but the first white people went there about three hundred and seventy years since.
- 2. Let us now go back to the creation of the world. This wonderful event took place about six thousand years ago. The story of it is beautifully told in the first chapter of Genesis.
- 3. Adam and Eve were created in Asia, and were placed in the garden of Eden, not far from the river Euphrates, in the western part of Asia. But after they had fallen from innocence, by sinning against God, they were sent away from that happy place.
- 4. Adam and Eve were for a time the only human beings on this vast globe. Yet they did not feel alone, for God was with them. At length they had children, and in the course of years their descendants were very numerous.
- 5. These dwelt in the neighbourhood of the Euphrates, and there they built towns, cities, and villages. But they became very wicked. They forgot to worship God, and were unjust and cruel.
- 6. The Creator, therefore, determined to cut off the whole

human family, with the exception of Noah and his children, both as a punishment to the disobedient, and as a warning to all future nations that evil must follow sin.

- 7. Noah was told of the coming destruction, and therefore built an ark, a kind of huge ship, into which he gathered his family, and also the various kinds of land animals in pairs. It then began to rain until all countries of the earth were covered with a flood of water.
- 8. Thus all the nations were cut off, and the world once more had but a single human family upon it. This event occurred about sixteen hundred and fifty-six years after the creation.

QUESTIONS.—1. Which quarter of the globe was first inhabited? Which quarter was next inhabited? Which next? Which quarter was inhabited last? When was America first peopled by the Indians? When by white people? 2. How long is it since the world was created? Tell the story of the creation as related in the first chapter of Genesis. 3. Where did Adam and Eve live? Why were they sent away from there? Where is the river Euphrates? 5. Where did the descendants of Adam and Eve dwell? What did they do? What did God determine to do? Why did God determine to destroy mankind? 7. What of Noah? Describe the deluge. 8. What was the effect of the deluge? When did the deluge take place?

.. CHAP. VIII.—ASIA continued.

HOW WOAH AND HIS FAMILY CAME OUT OF THE ARK. HOW THE PROPLE SETTLED IN THE LAND OF SHINAR. ABOUT BABEL.

1. The people who lived before the flood are called antediluvians. We know nothing about them except what is told in the Bible. It is probable that they extended over but a small part of Asia, and that no human beings dwelt either in Africa, Europe, or America, before the flood.

- 2. The deluge is supposed to have commenced in November, and the rain is thought to have ceased in March. After a while the waters subsided, and Noah's ark rested upon the top of a tall mountain in Armenia, called Ararat, which is still to be seen.
- 3. Noah and his family and animals now came out of the ark, and from them the world was again peopled. The animals spread themselves abroad, and after many centuries they were extended into all countries.
- 4. Noah had three sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth. These, with their families, proceeded to the country of Shinar, which lies to the south of Mount Ararat, and near the great rivers Euphrates and Tigris, as you will see marked in the map.
- 5. Here they settled themselves on the borders of the river Euphrates, probably the same country that had been inhabited by the antediluviaus. It is in this region that the first nations were formed.
- 6. The people increased very rapidly, and at the end of a hundred years from the deluge they were quite numerous. Most of Noah's family at this time were alive. They had told their descendants how the world had been overflowed with water, which destroyed all the animals, and all the people except those that were in the ark.

17

- 7. All who remembered the deluge, or had heard of it, were afraid that the wickedness of mankind would again be punished in a similar way. They therefore resolved to build a tower, that they might mount upon it, and save themselves from destruction.
- 8. Accordingly they laid the foundation of the edifice on the eastern bank of the river Euphrates. Perhaps they expected to rear the tower so high that its top would touch the blue sky, and enable them to climb into heaven.
- 9. Their building materials were bricks that had been baked in the sun. Instead of mortar, they cemented the bricks together with a sort of slime or pitch.
- 10. The workmen laboured very diligently, and piled one layer of bricks upon another, till the earth was a considerable distance beneath them. But the blue sky, and the sun, and the stars, seemed as far off as when they first began.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of those who lived before the flood? 2. When did the deluge begin and end? What of Mount Ararat? 3. What of the people that came out of the ark? The animals? 4. What three sons had Noah? What did the descendants of Noah do? 5. Where did they settle? Where was the land of Shinar? 6. What of the people? 7. Why did they resolve to build the Tower of Babel? 3. Describe the building of the tower.

CHAP. IX.—ASIA continued.

MORE ABOUT BABEL.

- 1. One day, while these foolish people were at their labour, a very wonderful thing took place. They were talking together as usual, but, all of a sudden, they found it impossible to understand what each other said.
- 2. If any of the workmen called for bricks, their companions at the bottom of the tower would mistake their meaning, and bring them pitch. If they asked for one sort of tool, another sort was given them. Their words appeared to be mere sounds without any sense, like the babble of a little child before it has been taught to speak.
- 3. This event caused such confusion that they could not go on building the tower. They therefore gave up the idea of climbing to heaven, and resolved to wander to different parts of the earth.
- 4. It is likely that they formed themselves into several parties, consisting of all who could talk intelligibly together. They set forth on their journey in various directions.
- 5. As each company departed, they probably threw a sad glance behind them at the tower of Babel. The sun was perhaps shining on its loftiest summit, as it seemed to rise into the very midst of the sky; and we may believe that it was long remembered by these exiles from their country.
- 6. The descendants of Shem are supposed to have distributed

themselves over the country near to the Euphrates. The lescendants of Ham took a westerly direction, and proceeded to Africa. They settled in Egypt, and laid the foundation of a great nation there. The descendants of Japheth proceeded to Greece, and thus laid the foundation of several European nations.

7. Some travellers in modern times have discovered a large nillock on the shore of the Euphrates. It is composed of unburnt bricks cemented together with pitch. They believe this hillock to be the ruins of the tower of Babel, which was built more than four thousand years ago.

QUESTIONS.—1. Describe the confusion of languages. 3. What was the consequence of this confusion of languages? 6. What of the descendants of Shem? Of Ham? Of Japheth? 7. What have some travellers discovered? What is the hillock supposed to be?

CHAP. X .- ASIA continued.

ABOUT THE GREAT ASSYRIAN EMPIRE, AND REIGN OF QUEEN SEMIRAMIS.

- 1. When the rest of mankind were scattered into different parts of the earth, there were a number of people who remained near the tower of Babel. They continued to inhabit the land of Shinar, which was a warm country, and very fertile. In course of time they extended over a much larger tract of country, and built towns and cities.
- 2. This region received the name of Assyria. It was the first of the natious of the earth. Its boundaries varied at

different times; but its place on the map may be seen in the vicinity of the two rivers Tigris and Euphrates, northward of the Persian Gulf.

- 3. Ashur, the grandson of Noah, was the first ruler of Assyria. About the year 2229 B.C. he built the city of Nineveh, and surrounded it with walls a hundred feet high. It was likewise defended by fifteen hundred towers, each two hundred feet in height. The city was said to be so large that a person would have travelled a hundred miles merely in walking round it; and many beautiful sculptures have been brought to England by some travellers who dug them out of the ruins of this great city.
- 4. But the city of Babylon, which was built a short time afterwards, was superior to Nineveh both in size and beauty. It was situated on the river Euphrates. The walls were so very thick that six chariots drawn by horses could be driven abreast upon the top, without danger of falling off on either side. In this country we do not surround our cities with walls; but in ancient times walls were necessary to protect the people from their enemies.
- 5. In this city there were magnificent gardens, belonging to the royal palace. They were constructed in such a manner that they appeared to be hanging in the air without resting on the earth. They contained large trees, and all kinds of fruits and flowers.
- 6. There was also a splendid temple dedicated to Belus, Bel, or Baal, who was the chief idol of the Assyrians. This

was six hundred and sixty feet high, and it contained en image of Belus forty feet in height.

The city of Babylon, which I have been describing, rst built by Nimrod, that mighty hunter of whom the tells us. But the person who made all the beautiful is and palaces, and who set up the golden image of was a woman named Semiramis.

She had been the wife of Ninus, king of Assyria; but king Ninus died, queen Semiramis became sole ruler empire. She was an ambitious woman, and could not t herself to live quietly in Babylon, although she had so much pains to make it a beautiful city.

She was tormented with a wicked desire to conquer all tions of the earth. So she collected an immense army arched against the rich and powerful king of the Indies, ved in what we now call Hindoostan, a country lying south-east of Assyria.

TIONS.—1. Did all the people leave the land of Shinar after the on of languages? Did the people of the land of Shinar increase? lid they do? 2. What name did the country around Shinar? What was the first empire or great nation of the earth? In lirection was Assyria from the Persian Gulf? Which way from literranean Sea? Which way from Egypt? 3. Who was the er of Assyria? What city did he build? Describe the city of 1. 4. Where was the city of Babylon? Describe this wonderful hy did the ancients surround their cities with walls? 5. What hanging gardens? 6. The temple of Belus? 7. Who built 1? Who made the hanging gardens, the image of Belus, &c.? It of Semiramis? Was she content with Babylon? 9. What

foolish and wicked desire had she? What did she do? Where did the king of the Indies live? In which direction was India from Assyria?

CHAP. XI.—ASIA continued.

QUEEN SEMIRAMIS SETS FORTH TO CONQUER THE WORLD, BUT IS DEFEATED BY THE KING OF THE INDIES.

- 1. When the king of the Indies, who was very rich and powerful, heard that Semiramis was coming to invade his dominions, he mustered a vast number of men to defend them. Besides his soldiers, he had a great many elephants.
- 2. Each of these enormous beasts was worth a whole regiment of soldiers. They were taught to rush into the battle and toss the enemy about with their trunks, and trample them down with their huge feet.
- 3. Now, queen Semiramis had no elephants, and therefore she was afraid that the king of the Indies would overcome her. She endeavoured to prevent this misfortune by a very curious contrivance. In the first place, she ordered three thousand brown oxen to be killed.
- 4. The hides of the dead oxen were stripped off, and sewed together in the shape of elephants. These were placed upon camels, and, when the camels were drawn up in battle array, they looked pretty much like a troop of great brown elephants. Doubtless the king of the Indies wondered where queen Semiramis had caught them.
- 5. When the battle was to be fought, the king of the Indies, with his real elephants, marched forward on one side. and

queen Semiramis, with her camels and ox-hides, came boldly against him on the other.

- 6. But when the Indian army had marched close to the host of the Assyrians, the former perceived that there was no such thing as an elephant among them. They therefore laid aside all fear, and rushed furiously upon queen Semiramis and her soldiers.
- 7. The real elephants put the camels to flight; and then in a great rage they ran about, tossing the Assyrians into the air, and trampling them down by hundreds. Thus the Assyrian army was routed, and the king of the Indies gained a complete victory.
- 8. Queen Semiramis was sorely wounded; but she got into a chariot, and drove away at full speed from the battle-field. She finally escaped to her own kingdom, but in a very sad condition.
- 9. She then took up her residence in the palace at Babylon. But she did not long enjoy herself in the beautiful gardens which she had suspended in the air. It is said that her own son, whose name was Ninyas, put his mother to death, that he might get possession of the throne, and reign over the people.
- 10. Such was the melancholy end of the mighty queen Semiramis. How foolish and wicked it was for her to spend her life in trying to conquer other nations, instead of making her own people happy! But she had not learned that golden rule—" Do to another as you would have another do to you."

QUESTIONS.—1. What did the king of the Indies do when he heard that Semiramis was going to make war upon his kingdom? What sort of an army had he? 2. What of the elephants? 3. By what contrivance did Semiramis endeavour to match the elephants of the king of India? 5. Describe the battle. What was the result of the battle? 8. What of Semiramis? 9. What became of her? 10. Was the conduct of Semiramis good or wise? Do you think she was happy? Do you think any person can be happy who does not try to make others so?

CHAP. XII.—ASIA continued.

ABOUT NINYAS. REIGN OF SARDANAPALUS AND RUIN OF THE ASSYRIAN EMPIRE.

- 1. After Ninyas had wickedly murdered his mother, he became king of Assyria. His reign began about the year 2000 B.C., or about three hundred and fifty years after the deluge.
- 2. Ninyas was not only a very wicked man, but a very slothful one. He did not set out to conquer kingdoms like his mother, but shut himself up in his palace, and thought of nothing but how to enjoy himself.
- 3. He knew that his people hated him; and therefore he kept guards in his palace; but he was afraid to trust even his guards. Whether he was murdered at last, or whether he died quietly in his bed, is more than I can tell, for history does not inform us.
- 4. After the reign of Ninyas there was an interval of aight hundred years, during which it is impossible to say what happened in the kingdom of Assyria. It is probable

that most of the kings were like Ninyas; that they wasted their time in idle pleasures, and never did any thing worthy of remembrance.

- 5. When Pul was king of Assyria he conquered the Israelites, and forced them to pay him tribute. He is supposed to have been the king of Nineveh to whom the prophet Jonah was sent to preach repentance, about eight hundred and sixty years before Christ.
- 6. Some years afterwards, there was a king upon the throne of Assyria whose name was Sardanapalus. He is said to have been a beautiful young man; but he was slothful, and took no care of his kingdom, and made no attempt to promote the welfare of the people.
- 7. He never went outside of his palace, but lived all the time among the women; and, in order to make himself more fit for their company, he painted his face, and sometimes put on a woman's dress. In this ridiculous guise, the great king Sardanapalus used to sit down with the women, and help them to spin.
- 8. But while Sardanapalus was feasting and dancing, and painting his face, and dressing himself like a woman, and helping the women to spin, a terrible destruction was impending over his head.
- 9. Arbaces, governor of the Medes, made war against this unworthy monarch, and besieged him in the city of Babylon. Sardanapalus saw that he could not escape, and that, if he lived any longer, he should probably become a slave.

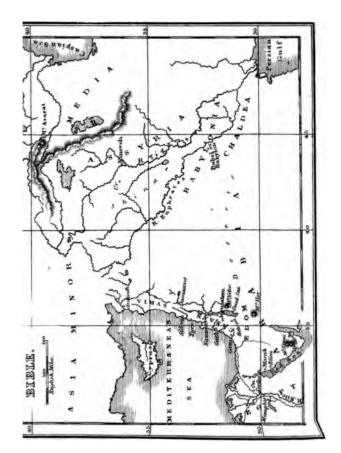
10. So, rather than be a slave, he resolved to die. He therefore collected his treasures, and heaped them into one great pile in a splendid hall in his palace, and then set fire to the pile. The palace was speedily in a blaze, and Sardanapalus, with his favourite officers, and a multitude of beautiful women, were burnt to death in the flames. Thus ended the great Assyrian monarchy, the country being conquered by Arbaces.

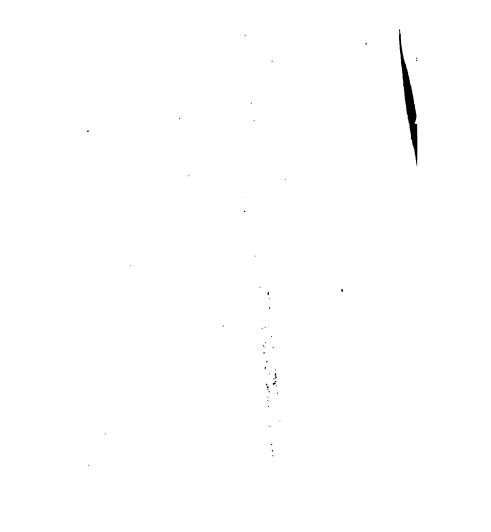
Questions.—1. What of Ninyas? When did his reign begin?
2. What was his character? What did he do? 3. What else of Ninyas?
4. What of Assyria for eight hundred years after Ninyas? 5. What of Pul? About what time did Jonah go to preach repentance to the Ninevites? 6. What of Sardanapalus? 7. How did he live? 9. What of Arbaces? 10. What did Sardanapalus do? What was the end of the Assyrian empire? Do you think it was right for Sardanapalus to live only for his own pleasure, and not to try to make his people happy? Does not this story show that even a king cannot be idle without bringing destruction upon his people, and misery upon himself?

CHAP. XIII.—ASIA continued.

ABOUT THE HEBREWS OR JEWS. ORIGIN OF THE HEBREWS. THE REMOVAL OF JACOB AND HIS CHILDREN TO EGYPT.

- 1. THE founder of the Hebrew nation was Abraham, the son of Terah. He was born about two hundred years after the deluge. The country of his birth was Chaldea, which formed the southern part of the Assyrian empire.
- 2. The rest of the inhabitants of Chaldea were idolaters,





and worshipped the sun, moon, and stars; but Abraham worshipped the true God whom we worship. In the early part of his life he was a shepherd on the Chaldean plains. When his father was dead, God commanded him to leave his native country, and travel westward to the land of Canaan.

- 3. This region was afterwards called Palestine. It lies north of Arabia, and is on the eastern border of the Mediterranean Sea. It was a rich and fertile country, and God promised Abraham that his descendants should dwell there.
- 4. Many years of Abraham's life were spent in wandering to and fro. His wife Sarah went with him, and they were followed by a large number of male and female servants, and by numerous flocks and herds. They dwelt in tents, and had no settled home.
- 5. Abraham and Sarah had one son, named Isaac. His father loved him fondly; but when God commanded him to sacrifice the child, he prepared to obey. But an angel came down from heaven, and told him not to slay his son.
- 6. The life of Abraham was full of interesting events, but I have not room to relate them all here. He lived to be a hundred and seventy-five years old, and then died at Hebron in Canaan. His burial-place was in a cave at Machpelah, where Sarah had been buried many years before.
- 7. The Jews and the Arabians are descended from this ancient patriarch. They have always called him father Abraham. It is said that to this day they show the place where Abraham and Sarah lie buried, and that they consider

- it a holy spot. Many travellers at the present day go to see it.
- 8. Isaac, the son of Abraham, left two children, Esan and Jacob. The younger, Jacob, persuaded his brother to sell his birthright for a mess of pottage. He likewise obtained a blessing which his father intended to bestow on Esau.
- 9. Jacob had twelve sons, whose names were Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Dan, Judah, Naphtali, Gad, Ashur, Issachar, Zebulon, Joseph, and Benjamin. The posterity of each of these twelve afterwards became a separate tribe among the Hebrews.
- 10. My young reader must look into the Bible for the beautiful story of Joseph and his brethren. I can merely tell him that Joseph was sold into captivity and carried into the land of Egypt, and that there he was the means of preserving his aged father and all his brothers from death by famine. He died 1635 R.C.
- 11. Jacob and his twelve children removed to Egypt, and took up their residence there. It was in that country that the Hebrews first began to be a nation; so that their history may be said to commence from this period. Jacob died 1689 B.C.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of Abraham? When was he born? How long ago? Ans. Nearly four thousand years. What was the native country of Abraham? 2. What of the worship of the Chaldeans? Of Abraham? What of the early life of Abraham? What did God command Abraham to do? Which way was Canaan from Chaldea? How far was Obaldea from Canaan? Ans. About five hundred miles. 3. Where us

the land of Canaan? What is it now called? Which way is it from where you live? How would you go to the land of Canaan or Palestine? Ans. In a ship, across the Atlantic Ocean and the Mediterranean Sea. 4. What of the life of Abraham? Who went with him from Chaldea to Canaan? 5. What of Isaac? 6. What else of Abraham? 7. What of the Jews? 8. What of Isaac? What did Esau do? What is meant by birthright? Ans. The eldest son in ancient times enjoyed many privileges over his younger brothers. These Esau sold to Jacob for a single meal of victuals. Thus Jacob became the head of the Jewish people. 9. Who were the twelve sons of Jacob? What of the descendants of these twelve sons of Jacob? 10. Can you tell the story of Joseph as related in Genesis, chap. xxxvii. &c.? 11. Where did Jacob go with his family? Which way was Egypt from Canaan? How far? Ans. About two hundred miles.

CHAP. XIV .- ASIA continued.

THE BONDAGE IN EGYPT. FLIGHT OF THE HEBREWS, AND DESTRUCTION OF PHARAOH AND HIS HOST.

- 1. EGYPT, you know, is in Africa. It has many cities, and a famous river called the Nile runs through the country. But this land is less populous now than in the time of Joseph. It was then full of people, and they were the most learned and civilized of all the nations of the earth. There are many ruins to be seen in Egypt, which show that the palaces and cities of ancient times were very splendid.
- 2. But I must tell you of the Hebrews. Pharaoh, the good king of Egypt died, and Joseph likewise. Another king then ascended the throne, who hated the Hebrews, and did all in his power to oppress them.

- 3. The Egyptians treated them like slaves. All the hardest labour was performed by the Hebrews. It is thought by some writers that the immense piles of stone called the Pyramids were built by them. These vast edifices are still standing on the banks of the Nile.
- 4. The cruel king of Egypt was named Pharaoh, like his predecessor. One of the most wicked injuries that he inflicted on the Hebrews was the following:—
- 5. He commanded that every male child should be thrown into the river Nile the instant he was born. The reason of this horrible cruelty was, that the Hebrews might not become more numerous than the Egyptians, and conquer the whole country.
- 6. One of the Hebrew women, however, could not make up her mind to throw her son into the Nile. If she had positively disobeyed the king's order, she would have been put to death. She therefore very privately made a little ark or boat of bulrushes, placed the child in it, and laid it among the flags that grew by the river's side.
- 7. In a little while the king's daughter came down to the river to bathe. Perceiving the ark of bulrushes, she went with her maids to fetch it. When they looked in it, they found a little Hebrew boy there.
- 8. The heart of the princess was moved with compassion, and she resolved to save his life. She hired his own mother to nurse him. She gave him the name of Moses, and when be grew old enough to be put to school, she caused him to be

instructed in all the learning of the Egyptians. At that period they were the most learned people on earth.

- 9. But though he himself was so well treated, Moses did not forget the sufferings of the other Hebrews. He remembered that they were his brethren, and he resolved to rescue them from their oppressors.
- 10. He and his brother Aaron received power from God to perform many wonderful things, in order to induce Pharaoh to let the Hebrews depart out of Egypt. Ten great plagues were inflicted on the Egyptians, and these were so terrible that at last Pharaoh gave the Hebrews leave to go.
- 11. But scarcely were they gone when the king was sorry that he had not still kept them in Egypt, that he might oppress them, and compel them to labour for him as before. He, therefore, mustered his warriors, and rode swiftly after the fugitives.
- 12. When he came in sight of them, they were crossing the Red Sea, which lies between Egypt and Arabia. The Lord had caused the waters to roll back, and form a wall on each side. Thus there was a path of glistening sand for the Hebrews through the very depths of the sea.
- 13. Pharach and his army rode onward, and by the time that the fugitives had reached the opposite shore, the Egyptians were in the midst of this wonderful passage.
- 14. As the Hebrews fled, they looked behind them. There was the proud array of the Egyptian king, with his chariota

and horsemen, and all his innumerable army, and Pharaoh himself riding haughtily in the midst.

- 15. The affrighted Hebrews looked behind them again, and lo! the two walls of waters had rolled together. They were dashing against the chariots, and sweeping the soldiers off their feet. The waves were crested with foam, and came roaring against the proud and wicked king. In a little time the sea rolled calmly over Pharaoh and his host, and thus they all perished, leaving the Jews to proceed on their journey.
- 16. This was a terrible event, but Pharaoh had been very cruel; he therefore deserved his fate. This story may teach us, that not only wicked rulers, but those who follow them, have reason to fear the judgments of heaven.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of Egypt? Which way does it lie from you? Which way does the Nile flow? In which of the four quarters of the globe is Egypt? In which part of Africa is Egypt? What of Egypt in the time of Joseph? 2. How were the Hebrews treated after the death of Joseph? What of the pyramids? How high is the tallest of the Egyptian pyramids? Ans. About five hundred feet. 4. What cruelty did Pharaoh inflict upon the Hebrews? 6. What did one of the Hebrew women do? 7. What of Pharaoh's daughter? 8. What of Moses? 9. What did he resolve to do? 10. What of Moses and Aaron? To what did Pharaoh consent? 11. Did he change his mind? What did he do? Which way was the Red Sea from Egypt? 12. What miracle did God perform? How did the Hebrews cross the Red Sea? 15. What became of Pharaoh and his army?

CHAP. XV.—ASIA continued.

ABOUT THE WANDERINGS OF THE ISRAELITES IN THE WILDERNESS.

- 1. It was now two hundred and fifteen years since Jacob had come to settle in Egypt. His descendants had multiplied so rapidly, that, at the time of their departure, the Hebrew nation are supposed to have amounted to at least two millions of people. Moses, their leader, was eighty years old, but his step was steady; and, though of meek and humble manners, he was a man of great wisdom and firmness of character.
- 2. The Hebrews intended to go directly from Egypt to the land of Canaan. This latter country is now called Palestine. Before reaching it, the children of Israel were to pass through a part of Arabia.
- 3. In order that they might not go astray, a vast pillar of mist or cloud moved before them all day long, and at night the pillar of cloud was changed to a pillar of fire, which threw a radiance over the regions through which they journeyed.
- 4. The country was desolate and barren, and often destitute of water, but the Lord fed the people with manna and with quails; and, when they were thirsty, Moses smote upon a rock, and the water gushed out abundantly. This was a great relief, for the climate there was exceedingly hot. Beside all this, the Hebrews received divine assistance.

against the Amalekites, and were enabled to conquer them in battle.

- 5. But, in spite of these various mercies, the Israelites were an ungrateful and rebellious people. They often turned from the worship of the true God, and became idolaters.
- 6. At the very time when the Lord was revealing himself to Moses on the summit of Mount Sinai, the people compelled Aaron to make a golden calf. They worshipped this poor image instead of Jehovah, who had brought them out of Egypt.
- 7. On account of their numerous sins, the Lord often inflicted severe punishments upon them. Many were slain by pestilence, and some were swallowed up in the earth. The remainder were compelled to wander forty years in the deserts of Arabia, though the whole distance in a direct line from Egypt to Canaan was but two hundred and fifty miles.
- 8. Before they came to the land of Canaan, most of those who had fled out of Egypt were dead. Their children inherited the promised land, but they themselves were buried in the sands of the desert. Even Moses was permitted merely to gaze at the land of Canaan from the top of Mount Pisgah. Here he died, at the age of one hundred and twenty years.
- 9. After the death of Moses, Joshua, the son of Nun, became leader of the Israelites. Under his guidance they entered the promised land, and subdued the people who inhabited it. The territory of Canaan was then divided among the twelve tribes of Israel.

QUESTIONS.—1. How long was it from the time that Jacob settled in Egypt to the departure of the Israelites? What was the number of the Israelites at this time? How old was Moses? What was his character? 2. In which direction is Canaan from Egypt? What country lies between Cansan and Egypt? In what country did the Hebrews wander? 3. How were the Hebrews guided? 4. What sort of country did they travel through? How were they fed? When they could find no spring or river, how were they supplied with water? Why was the supply of water necessary? What other divine assistance was rendered to the Hebrews? 5. Were the Hebrews grateful for all the mercies bestowed upon them? 6. What did they do when Moses was on Mount Sinai? Were not the Hebrews very foolish and wicked to worship the image of a calf rather than to worship God? When children disobey their parents, and seek their own pleasure rather than do their duty, are they not like the Hebrews in this instance? 7. What evil resulted from the disobedience of the Hebrews? Do you not know that evil always follows disobedience? How long did the Hebrews wander? What is the distance in a straight line from Egypt to 8. Did most of the Hebrews who left Egypt reach anaan? What of Moses? Where is Mount Pisgah? 9. Who came leader after the death of Moses? How was the land of maan divided? What part was given to the tribe of Ashur? To tribe of Naphtali? Of Zebulon? Issachar? Why are the names Ephraim and Manasseh among the tribes? Ans. Because they were s of Joseph, and their descendants formed two tribes. Where was tribe of Manasseh placed? Ephraim? In what part was the of Gad? Dan? Benjamin? Reuben? Simeon? Judah? t portion was given to the tribe of Levi? Ans. The Levites, priests, had towns assigned them among the other tribes.

CHAP. XVI.—ASIA continued.

OVERTHROW OF THE MIDIANITES. SAMSON, JUDGE OF ISRAEL

- 1. AFTER their settlement in Canaan, the Israelites lived under the authority of judges. These were their rulers in times of peace, and their generals in war. Some of them were very remarkable personages, and did many things worthy of remembrance.
- 2. The name of one of the judges was Gideon. While he ruled Israel, an army of Midianites invaded the country, and oppressed the people for seven years. But the Lord instructed Gideon how to rescue the Israelites from their power.
- 3. Gideon chose three hundred men, and caused each of them to take an earthen pitcher, and put a lamp within it. With this small band he entered the camp of the Midianites by night. There was an immense army of them, sleeping in their tents, without apprehending any danger from the conquered Israelites.
- 4. But their destruction was at hand. Gideon gave a signal, and all his three hundred men broke their pitchers, at the same time blowing a loud blast upon trumpets which they had brought. This terrible clamour started the Midian-Ites from their sleep.
- 5. Amid the clangour of the trumpets they heard the Israelites shouting, "The sword of the Lord and of Gideon."

A great panic seized upon the Midianites. They doubtless imagined that all the Hebrew army had broken into their camp.

- 6. Each man mistook his neighbour for an enemy; so that more of the Midianites were slain by their own swords than by the swords of the men of Israel. Thus God wrought a great deliverance for his people.
- 7. The most famous of all the judges of Israel was named Samson. He was the strongest man in the world; and it was a wonderful circumstance, that his great strength depended upon the hair of his head.
- 8. While he continued to wear his hair long, and curling down his neck, he had more strength than a hundred men put together. But if his hair were to be cut off, he would be no stronger than any single man.
- 9. In the days of Samson the Philistines had conquered the Israelites. Samson hated them on account of the injuries which they inflicted upon his countrymen. He made use of his great strength to do them all the harm in his power.

QUESTIONS.—1. How were the Hebrews governed after their settlement in Canaan? What of the judges? 2. What of Gideon? 3. Tell how Gideon contrived to overcome the Midianites. 7. What of Samson? In what did his strength lie? 9. What of the Philis times? Why did Samson dislike them?

CHAP. XVII.—ASIA continued.

SAMSON'S EXPLOITS AND DEATH.

- 1. On one occasion Samson slew a thousand of the Philis tines, although he had no better weapon than the jaw-bone of an ass. At another time, when they had shut him up in the city of Gaza, he took the gates of the city upon his shoulders, and carried them to the top of a distant hill.
- 2. But, though Samson hated the Philistines, and was always doing them mischief, there was a woman among them whom he loved. Her name was Delilah. She pretended to love Samson in return; but her only object was to ruin him
- 3. This woman used many persuasions to induce Samsor to tell her what it was that made him so much stronger that other men. At first Samson deceived her. He said that i he were bound with seven green withes, his strength would depart; or, that if he were tied with new ropes, he should be as weak as an ordinary man.
- 4. So Delilah bound him first with seven green withes and afterwards with new ropes. But Samson snapped the withes like burnt tow, and the ropes like thread. At length, however, Delilah prevailed upon him to tell her the real cause of his great strength.
- 5. When she had found out the secret, she cut off the hair of his head while he was sleeping, and then delivered him to her countrymen, the Philistines. These put out his eyes, and

und him with fetters of brass, and he was forced to labour e a brute beast in the prison.

- 6. Samson was able to work very hard, for pretty soon his ir began to grow, and so his wonderful vigour returned. us he became the strongest man in the world again.
- 7. One day the Philistines were offering a great sacrifice their idol, whose name was Dagon. They feasted, and air hearts were merry. When their mirth was at its ight, they sent for poor blind Samson, that he might amuse am, by showing specimens of his wonderful strength.
- 8. Samson was accordingly brought from prison and led to Dagon's temple. His brazen fetters clanked at every pp. He was a woful object with his blinded eyes. But a hair had grown again, and was curling upon his brawny oulders.
- 9. When Samson had done many wonderful feats of rength, he asked leave to rest himself against the two main llars of the temple. The floor and galleries were all owded with Philistines. They gazed upon this man of ighty strength, and they triumphed and rejoiced, because ey imagined he could do them no more harm.
- 10. But while they gazed, the strong man threw his arms and the two pillars of the temple. The edifice trembled as ith an earthquake. Then Samson bowed himself with all is might, and down came the temple with a crash like nunder, overwhelming the whole multitude of the Philismes in its rains.

11. Samson was likewise crushed, but in his death it appears that he triumphed over his enemies, and lay buried beneath the dead bodies of lords and mighty men.

QUESTIONS.—1. With what weapon did Samson kill a thousand Philistines? What of the gates of Gaza? 2. What of Delilah? 3. How did Samson deceive her? 5. How did Delilah deprive Samson of his strength? What did the Philistines do to Samson? 6. What happened when Samson's hair grew again? 7. Tell how Samson destroyed the Philistine temple.

CHAP. XVIII.—ASIA continued.

BEGINNING OF THE REIGN OF SAUL.

- 1. Many other judges ruled over Israel in the space of about four hundred years from the time that Moses led the Hebrews out of Egypt. But at length they became dissatisfied with this mode of government, and demanded that a king should be placed over them.
- 2. Samuel was then the judge of Israel. He was an old man, and a wise one; and besides the wisdom that he had collected in the course of a long life, he possessed wisdom from on high.
- 3. When the people demanded a king, Samuel endeavoured to convince them that they were much better off without one. He described the tyrannical acts which kings have often been in the habit of committing, when they have had the power to do so.
 - 4. But the Israelites would not hearken to this wise and

good old man. They still wished for a king. They imagined that none but a king would govern them well in time of peace or fight successfully against their enemies in war.

- 5. Samuel therefore consulted the Lord, and was directed to find out a king for the Israelites. The person who was fixed upon was a young man named Saul, the son of Kish. He possessed great beauty, and was a head taller than any other man among the Israelites. Samuel anointed his head with oil, and gave him to the Israelites as their king.
- 6. For a considerable time king Saul behaved like a wise and righteous monarch. But, at length, he began to disobey the Lord, and seldom took the advice of Samuel, although that good old priest would have been willing to direct him in every action of his life.
- 7. In the course of Saul's reign, the Israelites were often at war with the neighbouring nations. At one time, when the Philistines had invaded the country, there was a great giant in their host, whose name was Goliath, of Gath.
- 8. He was at least ten or twelve feet high, and was clothed from head to foot in brazen armour. He carried an enormous spear, the iron head of which weighed as many as thirty pounds.
- 9. Every day did this frightful giant stride forth from the camp of the Philistines, and defy the Israelites to produce a champion who would stand against him in single combat. But, instead of doing this, the whole host of Israel stood aloof from him, as a flock of sheep from a lion.

QUESTIONS.—1. For how long a time were the Hebrews governed by judges? 2. What of Samuel? 3. What did he do when the people demanded a king? 4. What did the Israelites think? 5. What of Saul? 6. What did Saul do? 7. What of Goliath?

CHAP. XIX.—ASIA continued.

COMBAT OF DAVID AND GOLIATH.

- 1. At last a young shepherd, of the name of David, happened to come to the camp of the Israelites, and heard the terrible voice of Goliath as he thundered forth his challenge.
- 2. Young as he was, David had already slain a lion and a bear; and, with the help of the Lord, he thought himself able to slay this gigantic Philistine. He therefore obtained leave of king Saul to accept the challenge.
- 3. But, instead of wearing the king's armour, which Saul would willingly have lent him, David went to the battle in his shepherd's garb. He did not even buckle on a sword.
- 4. When the two combatants came into the field, there was the youthful David on the side of the Israelites, with a staff in one hand and a sling in the other, carrying five smooth stones in a shepherd's scrip or pouch.
- 5. On the side of the Philistines forth strode the mighty Goliath. He glistened in his brazen armour, and brandished his great iron-headed spear till it quivered like a reed. When the giant spoke, his voice growled almost like thunder rolling overhead.
- 6. He looked scornfully at David, and hardly thought it

orth his while to lift up his spear against him. "Come ither," quoth the giant, "and I will feed the fowls with my flesh!"

- 7. But little David was not at all abashed. He made a old answer, and told Goliath that he would cut off his head, and give his enormous carcase to the beasts of the field. his threat so enraged the giant, that he put himself in action to slay David.
- 8. The young man ran forward to meet Goliath, and as e ran he took a smooth stone from his scrip, and placed it i his sling. When at a proper distance, he whirled the ing, and let the stone fly. It went whizzing through the r, and hit Goliath right in the centre of the forehead.
 - 9. The stone penetrated to the brain; and down the giant lat full length upon the field, with his brazen armour nging around him. David then cut off Goliath's head h his own sword. The Philistines were affrighted at r champion's overthrow, and fled.
 - The men of Israel pursued them, and made a prodigious ther. David returned from the battle, carrying the grim grisly head of Goliath by the hair. The Hebrew women forth to meet him, danced around him, and sang triumanthems in his praise.
 - TIONS.—1. Who was David? What did he do? 2. What had lone? What did he think? 3. Tell the story of David and
 - 9. What effect had the death of Goliath upon the Philis10. What honours were paid to David?

CHAP. XX.—ASIA continued.

THE REIGN OF DAVID. WISDOM OF SOLOMON.

- 1. DAVID had won so much renown by his victory over Goliath, that Saul became envious of him, and often endeavoured to kill him. But Jonathan, the son of Saul, loved David better than a brother.
- 2. During the lifetime of Saul, David was forced to live in exile. But, after a reign of about twenty-four years, king Saul was slain on the mountains of Gilboa, in a disastrous battle with the Philistines. Jonathan was likewise killed.
- 3. When David heard of these sad events, he expressed his sorrow by weeping and rending his garments. Yet he gained a kingdom by the death of Saul and Jonathan; for the men of Judah first elected him to reign over them, and afterwards the whole people of Israel chose him for their king.
- 4. A great part of David's life was spent in war. He gained many victories, and enjoyed high renown as a gallant leader. He conquered many of the surrounding nations, and raised his kingdom to a higher pitch of power than it ever enjoyed before or afterwards. But he also won a peaceful kind of fame, which will last while the world endures, and be remembered through eternity.
- 5. He won it by his heavenly poesy; for king David was the sweet Psalmist of Israel; and, in all the ages since he

- ived, his psalms have been sung to the praise of the Lord. It is now about three thousand years since David died, yet to this hour every pious heart loves to commune with God in the beautiful words of this inspired man.
- 6. In the latter part of his life David was much grieved by the rebellious conduct of his son Absalom. But it grieved him more when Absalom was slain by Joab, who found him ranging by his long hair on the branches of an oak, and hierced his body with three darts.
- 7. When David had reigned forty years, and was grown very old man, he died in his palace in Jerusalem. The cingdom was inherited by his son Solomon. This prince was very young when he ascended the throne, but he was wiser n his youth than in his riper years.
- 8. Not long after he became king, two women came into his presence, bringing a little child. Each of the women laimed the child as her own, and they quarrelled violently, is if they would have torn the poor babe asunder. It seemed impossible to find out whose the child really was.
- 9. "Bring hither a sword," said king Solomon; and imnediately one of the attendants brought a sharp sword. 'Now," continued Solomon, "that I may not wrong either of these women, the thing in dispute shall be equally divided between them. Cut the child in twain, and let each take saif"
- 10. But when the real mother saw the keen sword glitterng over her poor babe, she gave a scream of agony. "Do

not slay the child!" she cried. "Give it to this wicked woman. Only let it live, and she may be its mother!"

11. But the other woman showed no pity for the child. "I ask no more than my just rights," she said. "Cut the child in two! I will be content with half." Now, Solomon had watched the conduct of the two women, and he knew the true mother by her tenderness for the poor babe. "Give the child alive to her who would not have it slain," he said. "She is its mother."

QUESTIONS.—1. Why was Saul envious of David? What did Saul do? What of Jonathan? 2. How was David obliged to live? What of Saul? Jonathan? 3. What effect had these events upon David? Who became king of Israel after the death of Saul? 4. How was a great part of David's life spent? To what condition did he bring the Hebrew nation? What better fame did he acquire than that of a conqueror? 5. Who was the author of the Psalms? What can you say of the Psalms? How long since David lived? 6. What of Absalom? 7. How long did David reign? Who succeeded him? What of Solomon? 8. Tell the story of the child.

CHAP. XXI.—ASIA continued.

BUILDING OF THE TEMPLE. VISIT OF THE QUEEN OF SHEBA.

1. King David, as I before told you, had increased the power and wealth of the Hebrew nation, so that it was now a great kingdom. Silver and gold were very abundant in the country, and king David had made preparation for the building of a splendid temple, to be dedicated to the worship of the true God.

- 2. The chief event of Solomon's life was the building of his temple. This was done by the special command of the Lord. It was now four hundred and eighty years since the saraelites had come out of Egypt; and in all that time there had been no edifice erected to the worship of God.
- 3. Solomon made an agreement with Hiram, king of Tyre, hat he would give him a yearly supply of wheat and oil, in exchange for cedar and fir. Tyre was a great commercial city on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, to the northward of Jerusalem. It belonged to Phænicia, a country which has the credit of having first engaged in commerce.
- 4. With the timber which he procured from Tyre, and with a large quantity of hewn stone, Solomon began to build the temple. The front of this building was one hundred and twenty feet long, thirty-five feet broad, and forty-five feet high, with a porch or entrance of much greater height. It extended around a large square, and, with the various buildings attached to it, covered twenty acres of ground.
- 5. But no pen can describe the richness and admirable splendour of this sacred edifice. The interior was constructed of the most costly kinds of wood; and the walls were carved with figures of cherubim, and other beautiful devices. The walls and floors were partly overlaid with gold.
- 6. The temple was furnished with altars, and tables, and candlesticks, and innumerable other articles, all of the purest gold. The whole edifice must have shone almost as if it had been built entirely of that precious metal.

- 7. Seven years were employed in building this temple. It was just about three thousand years from the creation that it was finished, and one thousand years before the birth of Christ. When it was finished, Solomon assembled all the chiefs, and elders, and great men of Israel, in order to dedicate it. The priests brought the ark, containing the two tables of stone which God had given to Moses more than four centuries before.
- 8. The ark was now placed in the holiest part of the temple. It rested beneath the broad wings of two cherubims that were overlaid with gold. No sooner was the ark set in its place than a cloud issued forth and filled the temple. This was a token that the Lord was there.
- 9. After the building of the temple, Solomon became so renowned for his wisdom and magnificence, that the queen of Sheba came from her own dominions to visit him. Her country is supposed to have been in Arabia, to the south-east of Palestine.
- 10. She travelled with a great multitude of attendants; and she had likewise a train of camels, laden with gold and precious stones, and abundance of spices. The sweet perfume of the spices scented the deserts through which she passed.
- 11. When she came to Jerusalem, she beheld Solomon seated on a great throne of ivory overlaid with pure gold. His feet rested on a golden footstool. There were lions of gold about the throne. The king had a majestic look, and the queen of Sheba was astonished at his grandeur: but

nen they had talked together she admired his wisdom even ore than his magnificence. She acknowledged that the half his greatness had not been told her.

- 12. If the queen of Sheba could have seen Solomon a few ars afterwards, she would have beheld a lamentable change. e turned from the true God, and became an idolater. This se and righteous king, who had built the sacred temple, w grew so wicked that he built high places for the worship heathen deities.
- 13. For this reason God determined to take away the chief rt of the kingdom from his descendants. Accordingly, ien Solomon was dead, ten of the tribes of Israel revolted ainst his son Rehoboam.

QUESTIONS.—1. What had David done? What of silver and gold ong the Hebrews? 2. What was the chief event of Solomon's gn? By whose command was the temple built? 3. What agreent did Solomon make with Hiram, king of Tyre? What of Phœia? In what part of Canaan was Jerusalem? How far from the diterranean Sea? Ans. About forty-five miles. Where was Tyre? which direction from Jerusalem? What of Tyre? In which ection is Jerusalem from Babylon? From Egypt? 4. With what Solomon begin to build the temple? Where was the temple of lomon built? Ans. On a hill in Jerusalem called Mount Moriah. scribe the extent of the temple. 5. Describe the interior of the ple. 6. With what was the temple furnished? 7. How long re they in building the temple? How long after the creation s the temple finished? How long before Christ? How long ago? scribe the dedication of the temple. 9. What of the queen of ba? Where is it supposed she came from? 10. Describe her visit to Solomon. 12. What change took place in Solomon? 18. What evil followed the idolatry of Solomon?

CHAP. XXII.—Asia continued.

THE DECLINE OF THE JEWISH NATION.

- 1. In consequence of the revolt of the ten tribes, Rehoboam reigned over only the two tribes of Judah and Benjamin. these being called the kingdom of Judah. Beside the loss of so large a part of his kingdom, he suffered other misfortunes. Shishak, king of Egypt, made war against him, and took Jerusalem. He carried away the treasures of the temple and of the palace.
- 2. The other ten tribes of Israel, which had revolted from Rehoboam, were thenceforward governed by kings of their own, the country being called the kingdom of Israel. Most of these kings were wicked men and idolaters. Their palace and seat of government was in the city of Samaria.
- 3. When the kingdom of Israel had been separated from that of Judah about two hundred and fifty years, it was conquered by Salmaneser, king of Assyria. He made slaves of the Israelites, and carried them to his own country, and most of them never returned to the land of Canaan.
- 4. The people of the two tribes of Judah and Benjamin continued to reside in Canaan. They were now called Jews. The royal palace and seat of government was at Jerusalem. Some of the Jewish kings were pious men, but most of them offended God by their sinfulness and idolatry.

- . The whole nation of the Jews were perverse, and unwent many severe inflictions from the wrath of God. rut the year 600 B. c. Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, t Jerusalem. He plundered the temple, and carried the cipal people captive to Babylon.
- . In 588 B.C., when Zedekiah was king, Jerusalem was n taken by Nebuchadnezzar. His general broke down walls of the city, and left nothing standing that could be royed. The Jews remained captive in Babylon seventy is.
- . When Babylon was taken by Cyrus, king of Persia, Jews were permitted to return to their own country. y rebuilt the temple, and resumed their ancient manner worship. Till the time of Alexander the Great, about B.C., the nation was dependent on the kings of Persia.
- . It is said that Alexander the Great intended to take isalem. But, as he advanced with his army, the high st came forth to meet him in his robes of office, at the i of a long train of Levites and the people. Alexander so struck with their appearance that he agreed to spare city.
- . In the course of the two next centuries, the Egyptians used the Jewish kingdom, and afterwards the Syrians used the inhabitants to bondage. They suffered great mities from the tyranny of these conquerors.
- 0. But, in the year 166 before the Christian era, Judea ccabeaus, a valiant Jewish leader, drove the Syrians ou

of the country. When the king of Syria heard of it, he took an eath that he would destroy the whole Jewish nation. But, as he was hastening to Jerusalem, he was killed by a fall from his chariot.

- 11. The descendants of Judas Maccabæus afterwards assumed royal authority and became kings of the Jews. In less than a century, however, the country was subdued by Pompey, a celebrated Roman general. He conferred the government on Antipater, a native of Edom.
- 12. In the year 37 before the Christian era, the Roman senate decreed that Herod, the son of Antipater, should be king of the Jews. It was this Herod who afterwards commanded that all the little boys of Bethlehem should be slain, in order that the infant Jesus might not survive. The period of that blessed infant's birth was now at hand.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was Rehoboam? Into what two kingdoms was the Hebrew nation divided during his reign? What name was given to the ten tribes which revolted? What name was given to the two tribes? What of Shishak? 2. How was the kingdom of Israel governed? In which part of Canaan were the ten tribes? In which part was the kingdom of Judah? What of the kings of Israel? Where did these kings dwell? Where was Samaria? How far from Jerusalem? Ans. Forty miles. 3. What of Salmaneser? 4. What were the people of Judah now called? Where was the seat of government? What of the kings of Judah? 5. What of the Jewish nation? What of Nebuchadnessar? 6. How long did the Jews remain captive in Babylon? 7. What of Cyrus? What did the Jews do on their return from captivity? How long was the nation dependent upon Persia? 8. What of Alexander the Great? 9. What happened after the time of Alexander? 10. What of Judas Maccabeus? What of the king of Syria? In which

tion was Syria from Canaan? 11. What of the descendants of s Maccabeus? What of Pompey? Whom did he appoint to rn Judah? 12. When did the Roman senate appoint Herod the of the Jews? What of Herod?

CHAP. XXIII.—ASIA continued.

THE HERREW PROPHETS.

I MUST now glance backward, and say a few words ecting a class of men who appeared at various times ng the Hebrews. These men were called prophets. They intercourse with God, and he gave them the know-s of things that were to happen in future years.

One of the most remarkable of the prophets was named th. Many wonderful things are told of him. While he dwelling in a solitary place the ravens brought him. He restored the son of a poor widow from death to

He denounced God's vengeance against the wicked king b, and foretold that the dogs should eat the painted bel, his queen. All this, afterwards, came to pass. He ed fire to come down from heaven, and consume two ains, with their soldiers. He divided the river Jordan miting it with his mantle, and passed over on dry ground.

At last, when his mission on earth was ended, there a chariot of fire, and horses of fire, and carried Elijah whirlwind up to heaven.

Elijah's mantle fell from the fiery chariot. It was

caught up by his companion, Elisha, who likewise became a very celebrated prophet. He cursed some little children because they laughed at his bald head; and soon afterwards two she-bears tore forty and two of them in pieces.

- 6. When Elisha was dead, and had lain many months in his sepulchre, another dead man happened to be let down into the same darksome place. But when the corpse touched the hallowed bones of the prophet Elisha, it immediately revived, and became a living man again.
- 7. Jonah was another prophet. A whale swallowed him, and kept him three days in the depths of ocean, and then vomited him safely on dry land. Isaiah was also a prophet. He foretold many terrible calamities that were to befall Israel and Judah, and the surrounding nations, as did also Ezekiel; and Jeremiah bewailed, in plaintive accents, the sins and misfortunes of God's people.
- 8. The prophet Dauiel foretold the downfall of Belshazzar, king of Babylon. He was afterwards cast into a den of lions in Babylon, at the command of king Darius. The next morning the king looked down into the den, and there was. Daniel alive and well!
- 9. King Darius then ordered Daniel to be drawn out of the den, and his false accusers to be thrown into it. The moment that these wicked persons touched the bottom, the lions sprang forward and tore them limb from limb.
- 10. Numerous other prophets appeared at various times, and most of them performed such wonderful works that there

ould be no doubt of their possessing power from on high. low it was remarked that all these prophets, or nearly all, poke of a king, or ruler, or other illustrious personage, who ras to appear among the Jews.

- 11. Although they foretold the most dreadful calamities to he people, still there was this one thing to comfort them:—
 L descendant of king David was to renew the glory of the ewish race, and establish his sway over the whole world.
- 12. This great event was expected to happen in about fteen hundred years after Moses led the Israelites out of laypt. And it did then happen. When the appointed eriod had elapsed, there appeared a star in a certain quarter f the heavens.
- 13. Three wise men from the east beheld the star, and rere guided by it to a stable in the little village of Bethehem. It was about five miles from Jerusalem. There, in manger, lay the infant Jesus!

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the prophets? 2. What is told of Elijah? What of Elisha? 7. What of Jonah? Isaiah? Ezekiel? Jereiiah? 8. What of Daniel? 10. What can you say of the prophets? If what did the prophets all speak? 11. What cheering prospect did the prophets hold out to the Jews? 12. About how long after Moses id Christ appear? What of the star in the east? 13. What of Bethhem? Whom did the wise men find in a stable?

CHAP. XXIV.—ASIA continued.

CRUCIFIXION OF THE SAVIOUR. DESTRUCTION OF JERUSALEM.

- 1. The greatest event, not only in the history of the Jews, but in the history of the world, had now taken place. This was the coming of the Saviour. But my readers must not expect me to relate the whole story of this divine personage in the little book which I am now writing.
- 2. The Jews rejected him. They had been long looking for an earthly potentate; and when they beheld the meek and lowly Jesus, they despised and hated him. From the time that he proclaimed himself the Messiah, they sought to take his life.
- 3. They brought him before the judgment-seat of Pontius Pilate, who was then the Roman governor of Judes. Pilate sentenced him to death, and the Saviour of the world was crucified between two thieves. He, however, rose from the dead, after being buried three days, and ascended into heaven.
- 4. Such is the brief story of Jesus Christ. After his death, his apostles proceeded to preach the gospel throughout the land of Canaan and other countries. Of all the apostles, Paul was the most active and successful.
- 5. He visited various parts of Palestine, Syria, Asia Minor, and Greece. At length he was sent as a prisoner to Rome, to be tried by the emperor. He went with other

soners in a small vessel, nearly the whole length of the editerranean Sea.

- 6. In the course of the voyage, the vessel was wrecked on the island of Malta during a terrible gale. After this vessel proceeded on its voyage, and Paul reached Rome ty-three years after Christ. Here he remained in prison ong time; but many persons came to visit him, and he sached to them all the doctrines of Christianity. Paul s at length beheaded by order of the emperor Nero.
- 7. The apostles had now sown the seeds of the gospel in my countries, and the fruits began to appear. Nearly all a civilized world were worshippers of the Roman gods; but is heathen faith gradually gave way before the gospel, and, process of time, Christianity was diffused over nearly the sole of Europe.
- 8. Long before the crucifixion of Christ, the Jews had come completely subject to the Roman power. But, about ty years after his death, they rebelled against their sters.
- 9. Titus, the Roman general, immediately marched to siege Jerusalem. A most dreadful war ensued. The inbitants were shut up in the city, and soon were greatly in not of food. Hunger impelled one of the Jewish women to vour her own child. When Titus heard of it, he was so ocked that he vowed the destruction of the whole Jewish ce; and more than a hundred thousand persons perished uring this frightful siege!

- 10. At length the city was taken in the night-time, and set on fire. The flames caught the temple. The hills on which Jerusalem is situated were all blazing like so many volcanoes. The blood of the slaughtered inhabitants hissed upon the burning brands.
- 11. Ninety-seven thousand Jews were taken prisoners. Some were sold as slaves. The conquerors exposed others to be torn in pieces by wild beasts. A few people remained in Jerusalem, and partly rebuilt the city. But it was again destroyed by a Roman emperor, named Adrian. He levelled the walls and houses with the earth, and sowed the ground with salt.
- 12. The Jews were scattered all over the world. This catastrophe had long been prophesied. There are now between three and four millions of them in different parts of the earth. They still keep their religion, and many of their old customs. Jerusalem has been partially restored, but it is now very different from what it was in the time of our Saviour.

QUESTIONS.—1. What is the greatest event that has occurred on the globe? How long is it since Christ was born? How long after the creation did Christ appear? Ans. Four thousand and four years. How long after the flood? 2. How did the Jews receive Christ? 3. What of Pilate? The crucifixion? 4. What did Christ's apostles do after his death? What of Paul? 5. What countries did Paul visit? Where was helength sent? 6. Where was Paul's vessel wrecked? When did he arrive at Rome? To whom did he preach Christianity? What is supposed to have been his fate? 7. What had the apostles done? What of the worship of the heathen deities? What of Christianity? 8. To whom

the Jews been long subject? What occurred forty years after the th of Christ? 9. What of Titus? Describe the siege of Jerusalem. What of Adrian? 12. What became of the Jews? What event been foretold by the prophets? What of Jerusalem?

CHAP. XXV.—ASIA continued.

CYRUS CONQUERS BABYLON. HIS DEATH.

- 1. In a former part of this book I have told the story of syria, the first great empire of ancient times. It was sated, as you remember, in the land watered by the rivers ris and Euphrates. Its place is shown on the map which here given. In this region the climate is warm, and the exceedingly fruitful. Here the human race seemed to ltiply in the most wonderful manner.
- 2. Thus many nations soon sprang up and increased, till whole surrounding country was filled with multitudes people. Assyria, at one time, extended its dominion over st of these nations; but at length Persia became a power-monarchy, and not only Assyria, but a great many other ions became subject to it.
- 3. The first inhabitants of Persia were descended from un, the eldest son of Shem. They were therefore called unites. Very little is known of their history till about hteen centuries after the deluge. Cyrus, a great constror, then ascended the throne of Persia. Some historians we spoken of Cyrus as a wise and excellent monarch, but

it appears probable that he was no better than most othe conquerors.

- 4. Cyrus continued to extend his empire in all direction Media, Parthia, Mesopotamia, Armenia, Syria, Canaan, ar parts of Arabia, were subdued, and made portions of h kingdom. One of his chief exploits was the taking of tl city of Babylon, the capital of Assyria. The walls of th great city were so thick and high, that it would have be impossible for any enemy either to break them down, or climb over them. It was, therefore a very difficult matt to take this strong place.
- 5. Now, the channel of the river Euphrates ran direct through the centre of Babylon. Cyrus caused deep ditch to be dug around the city, so that he could draw off t water of the river, and leave the channel dry. When t ditches were completed, he waited for a proper time to drs off the river.
- 6. On a certain night, Belshazzar, king of Babylon, ma a great festival. His guards, and nearly all the inhabitan were eating and drinking, thoughtless of the enemy on t outside of their walls. The Persians seized this opportuni to throw open the dams of the ditches.
- 7. The whole water of the Euphrates immediately flow into them. Cyrus put himself at the head of the Persi army; and, where the mighty river had so lately rush along, there were now the trampling footsteps of an innum rable host. Thus the Persian troops entered the city.

blood was mingled with the wine of the festival. bylon was taken, and Assyria became a part of

us afterwards marched against the Scythians, a tion, who dwelt in the north-east of the Caspian t Tomyris, their queen, collected an army, and bloody battle with the Persians. Cyrus was and taken prisoner. The son of the Scythian queen killed in the battle, and she resolved to avenge his she ordered her attendants to kill Cyrus, which was horrible manner.

NS.—1. What was the first great empire of the world?

Assyria situated? Climate of this region? Soil? The

Ref. 2. Increase of mankind? What of Assyria? Persia?

Was Persia from Canaan? Arabia? Caspian Sea?

lies south of Persia? 3. What of the first inhabitants of At what time did Cyrus ascend the throne of Persia?

CHAP. XXVI.—ASIA continued.

REIGN OF CAMBYSES.

- 1. Cambyses, the son of Cyrus, seems to have been a worse man than his father. He was addicted to drinking wine; and Prexaspes, a favourite courtier, hinted to him that he injured his health and faculties by this practice. When Prexaspes had done speaking, Cambyses called for wine, and drank off several large goblets. "Now we shall see," said he, "whether the wine has dimmed my sight, or rendered my hand unsteady!"
- 2. He then called for a bow and arrow, and ordered the son of Prexaspes to stand at the further end of the hall. The boy did so; and, while his father looked on, the cruel Cambyses took aim at the poor child, and shot an arrow directly through his heart.
- 3. I am very sorry, my dear young reader, to tell you such horrible stories as these. I would not tell them but that they are true, and they may teach us good and useful lessons: they may show us how wicked and miserable even kings may be.
- 4. They may also make us rejoice that we live in an age when such things do not happen. You must recollect that I am telling you of what took place many ages since. The people were then thought to be merely the playthings of their kings, and only made to serve them. Since that time,

Thrist has come and told us that it is the will of God that ach man should do to another as he would be done by.

- 5. It is true that in many countries, particularly in Asia, he divine laws of Christ are not known; but in most places he kings are better than they were in the time of Cambyses.
- 6. But I must go on with my story. Cambyses made war gainst the Egyptians. At the siege of one of their cities, he ontrived a very cunning method to take the place. The Egyptians believed that cats and dogs were sacred, and they rorshipped them as gods. This foolish superstition induced lambyses to collect all the cats and dogs in the country, and lace them in front of his army.
- 7. The Egyptians were afraid to discharge their arrows, est they should kill some of these divine animals. The Persians therefore marched onward, with the dogs barking and the cats mewing before them, and the city was taken without the slightest resistance.
- 8. The chief deity of the Egyptians was a great bull, to rhom they had given the name of Apis. Cambyses killed his holy bull, and bestowed the flesh on some of his soldiers or dinner. Soon afterwards, to the great joy of the Egyptians, he killed himself accidentally with his own sword.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of Cambyses? 2. What story can you tell fhim? 3. What lessons may we learn from these painful tales of ncient kings? 4. What was thought of the people in these ancient imes? What has Christ since told us? 5. Where are the laws of kings now? 6. How did Cambyses

capture an Egyptian city? 8. What of the Egyptian god Apis? I was Cambyses slain?

CHAP. XXVII.—ASIA continued.

EXPRDITION OF XERXES INTO GREECE.

- 1. Another king of the Persians was named Dar He was likewise a cruel tyrant. When he was going on expedition against the Scythians, he compelled an old mathree sons to join his army. These were all the child the old man had. He came into the king's presence, earnestly entreated that one of his sons might be left home.
- 2. "I am very poor and infirm," said the old man. am unable to work. If you take away all my three childs I shall starve to death!" "Indeed!" answered king Dar in a very compassionate tone, "then they shall all th remain with you." Immediately he ordered the three you men to be slain, and gave their dead bodies to their poor father.
- 3. While Darius was preparing to make war on Grehe fell sick and died. His successor was his son Xer: This monarch invaded Greece with nearly two millions men on land, and more than half a million on board fleet.
- 4. You may well believe that a king who could collect large an army had great wealth and power. At this ti

r in abundance, he had precious stones more than count; he was indeed surrounded with pomp and more, but all these could not bring contentment. till desirous of conquering other nations; and for wose he collected the greatest army of which history any account.

nen Xerxes arrived in Greece, it so happened that a suntain, called Mount Athos, stood directly in the he wished his ships to sail. He therefore wrote a the mountain, commanding it to get out of his way; nt Athos would not stir one step.

order to bring his land forces from Asia into Greece, unit a bridge of boats across a part of the sea called espont. But the waves broke the bridge to pieces, sees commanded the sea to be whipped for its disliconduct.

e greater part of the cities of Greece submitted to

thousand Persians were slain in attempting to break through the pass.

- 10. At last, Leonidas found that the Persians could not be kept back any longer. He therefore sent away all but three hundred men, and with these he remained at the pass of Thermopylæ. The immense host of the Persians came onward like a flood; and only one soldier of the three hundred escaped to Sparta to tell the rest were slain.
- 11. But Xerxes did not long continue to triumph in Greece. His fleet was defeated at Salamis, and his army at Platea. In escaping, he was forced to cross the Hellespont in a little fishing vessel; for the sea, in spite of its being whipped, had again broken his bridge of boats.
- 12. Not long after his return to Persia, the proud Xerxes was murdered in his bed. This event happened about the year 465 B.C. His son, Artaxerxes, made peace with the Greeks.
- 13. The story of Xerxes may teach us the folly of ambition. Had he been content with staying at home and governing his people so as to make them happy, he might have been happy himself. But, having too much, he still strove to acquire more, and thus brought misery upon himself and millions of his fellow-men.
- 14. Let us be content in more humble situations, for we see that happiness is not always associated with wealth and power. Let us remember, too, that pride and vanity made even Xerxes ridiculous with all his magnificence.

rsia? Ans. North-west. What of the Persian empire in the Cerxes? What of Persepolis? In which direction was it from? Jerusalem? 5. What of the wealth and magnificence of Which was the greatest army ever known? 6. What of thos? 7. What of the Hellespont? 8. What of Greece? of Thermopylæ? 10. What of Leonidas? 11. What of? Platæa? How did Xerxes return? 12. Death of Xerxes? id this event happen? Who succeeded Xerxes? 13. What story of Xerxes teach us? How might he have been happy? he bring misery upon himself and others? 14. Why should natent? What should we remember?

CHAP. XXVIII.—ASIA continued.

AFFAIRS OF PERSIA TILL THE SARACEN CONQUEST.

ETWEEN one and two centuries after the death of , that is, about three hundred and thirty years before Persia was invaded by Alexander the Great, king of

- 3. After this time Persia became subject to the Parthians, whose country had formerly been a province of the Persian empire. It continued under the government of the Parthian kings nearly five hundred years. About the year 230 after the Christian era, a Persian, named Artaxares, excited a rebellion, and made himself king.
- 4. His descendants occupied the throne for many generations. One of the most distinguished was Chosroes the Great, who lived about six hundred years after Christ. He made war against the Romans, and ravaged their provinces in Asia.
- 5. One of his successors was likewise named Chosroes. This hateful monster caused his own father to be beaten to death. But Heaven punished him by the wickedness of his eldest son, whose name was Siroes. He dethroned his father, and murdered all his brothers in his presence.
- 6. Siroes then ordered his father to be thrown into a dungeon. Here, instead of killing the old king at once, he tormented him for a long time by pricking him with the points of arrows! Chosroes died at last in great agony.
- 7. These things may seem too shocking to tell, but it is perhaps necessary that my young readers should know how very cruel men may become when given up to the influence of passion. Let us be thankful that the religion of Christ has taught us to look upon such crimes as were often practised by the Persian kings with horror and disgust.
 - 8. Isdigertes, who ascended the throne in the year 630 of

the Christian era, was the last of this dynasty of Persian kings. During his reign, the Saracens, a warlike people of Arabia, invaded Persia, and conquered it. Isdigertes was killed in battle.

- 9. Persia then became a part of the Saracen empire. It was ruled by the caliphs who resided at Bagdad, a splendid city which was built on the river Tigris.
- 10. This celebrated place was founded in 672, and once contained two millions of inhabitants. It was then filled with costly buildings, but it is now in ruins. The modern city is poorly built, and comparatively insignificant.

Questions.—1. When was Persia invaded by Alexander the Great? Who was then king of Persia? What happened to Darius? 2. How was he killed? 3. To whom did Persia become subject after the death of Darius? How long did it continue under the government of Parthia? Which way is Parthia from Persia? When did Artaxares make himself king? 4. What of his descendants? 5. Chosroes the Great? When did he live? What did he do? What of the successor of Chosroes the Great? 6. What wickedness did Siroes commit? 7. How may men become very cruel? For what should we be thankful? 3. When did Isdigertes ascend the throne? What of him? What did the Saracens do during his reign? How was Isdigertes killed? 9. Of what empire did Persia become a part? How was it ruled? Where did the caliphs live? 10. What of Bagdad?

CHAP. XXIX.—ASIA continued.

MODERN HISTORY OF PERSIA.

- 1. In the year 1258 of the Christian era, the empire of the Saracens was subverted by the Tartars. Persia was governed by them for a considerable time. It was afterwards ruled by monarchs called Sophis, or Shahs. The first of these was named Ismael, a man of Saracen descent. He took possession of the throne by violence, and reigned twenty-three years.
- 2. The greatest of these monarchs was named Shah Abbas. He ascended the throne in 1589. Abbas fought against the Turks, and gained many splendid victories. He also deprived the Portuguese of the island of Ormuz at the entrance of the Persian Gulf.
- 3. But the best of all the kings of this family was Shah Husseyn; and he was also the last, and the most unfortunate. He began to reign in the year 1694. Husseyn and his subjects met with many disasters; and he was, at length, compelled to surrender his throne to a rival.
- 4. But before he took off the crown from his head, Husseyn went on foot through the principal streets of Ispahan, which was then the capital. The people thronged around him with tears and lamentations. The excellent and kindhearted monarch endeavoured to comfort them.
- 5. He told them that the new king, whose name was Mahmoud, would not love them better than he himself had.

but that he would know better how to govern them, and how to conquer their enemies. So the good Husseyn took off his crown, which had been only a trouble to him, and bade his people farewell.

- 6. In 1730, Kouli Khan took possession of the throne of Persia. He called himself Nadir Shah. He was a famous conqueror and tyrant, and was assassinated in his tent after a reign of about seventeen years.
- 7. The Royal Palace of Persia is in the city of Teheran, the capital. But there is another beautiful palace at Ispahan, called the Palace of Forty Pillars. Each of the forty pillars is supported by four lions of white marble. The whole edifice looks as if it were built of pearl, and silver, and gold, and precious stones.
- 8. The present ruler of Persia, Nasiru'd-din (son of the late king Mohammed Shah, who died September 4, 1848), is a more enlightened monarch than any of his predecessors. He has founded colleges for the study of the sciences, and in December, 1863, gave his consent to the introduction of the Electric Telegraph into his dominions.
- 9. There is great ground, therefore, to hope that these adjuncts to civilization will have their due effect on this beautiful but hitherto neglected country, and that the religion of Jesus Christ will, in God's own appointed time, prevail over that of the false prophet, Mahomet.
- 10. The climate of Persia is mild, and the country abounds in beautiful and fragrant trees, shrubs, and flowers. The

people are less warlike than in former times. The kingdom is small compared with the vast empire of Xerxes. Persepolis, the ancient capital, is now a heap of ruins. Teheran and Ispahan, the two principal cities, are of comparatively modern date.

11. From what I have told you, you will not like the Persian character; yet it is not altogether bad. The people are very fond of reading and telling instructive stories. They have also a taste for poetry, and appear to be fond of the beauties of nature. The present population of Persia is about fourteen millions.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the empire of the Saracens in the year 1258? How was Persia governed? What of Ismael? 2. Who was Shah Abbas? When did he ascend the throne? What did he do? 3. What of Shah Husseyn? 4. Describe the manner in which he surrendered his crown. 6. When did Kouli Khan come to the throne? What other name had he? What of him? 7. Where does the monarch of Persia reside? Describe the palace. 8. What of the present king of Persia? His disposition? What improvements has he sanctioned? 9. What effects may be hoped for from their introduction? 10. What of the climate of Persia? The soil? People? How does the extent of the country compare with what it was in the time of Xerxes? What of Persepolis? Teheran? Ispahan? 11. What of the Persian character? What of the population?

CHINA. 73

CHAP. XXX.—ASIA continued.

MARLY HISTORY OF CHINA.

- 1. THE territory of the Chinese empire is nearly the same at the present day that it has been from the earliest records. It is bounded on the north by Asiatic Russia, on the east by the Pacific Ocean, and on the south by the Chinese Sea and Farther India. On the west there are mountains and sandy deserts, which divide it from Thibet and Tartary.
- 2. This empire is very ancient, and has continued longer than any other that has ever existed. Its history goes back four thousand years from the present time. The name of its founder was Fohi, whom some writers suppose to have been the same as Noah.
- 3. There have been twenty-two dynasties, or separate families of emperors, who have successively ruled over China. If their history were to be particularly related, it would fill at least twenty-two great books. Yet few of the emperors did any thing that was worthy of remembrance.
- 4. Before the time of Fohi, the Chinese believe that men lived pretty much like brutes; that they had no settled homes, but wandered up and down in the forests, seeking for food; and when they caught any animals or birds, that they drank the blood, and devoured even the hair and feathers.

- 5. We find nothing very remarkable about the Chinese emperors till the reign of Chaus, who lived about a thousand years before the Christian era. He was extremely fond of hunting, and used to gallop into the midst of the rice-fields in pursuit of game. In this manner he did so much mischief, that his subjects resolved to destroy him.
- 6. There was a large river, which the emperor was often in the habit of crossing. On the shore of this river the people placed a boat, as if for the accommodation of Chaus. The next time that the emperor returned from hunting, he and his attendants got on board the boat, and set sail for the opposite shore.
- 7. But the boat had been contrived on purpose for his destruction. In the middle of the river it fell to pieces, and all on board were drowned. Thus, to the great joy of his subjects, the emperor Chaus went down among the fishes, and never again came a-hunting in the rice-fields.
- 8. The emperor Ching, who reigned about two thousand years ago, built a great wall, in order to protect his dominions against the Tartars. This wall still remains. It is forty-five feet high, and eighteen feet thick, and it extends over mountains and valleys, a distance of fifteen hundred miles.
- 9. When Ching had completed the wall, he thought himself so very great an emperor, that none of his predecessors were worth remembering. He therefore ordered all the historical writings and public records to be burnt. He also

CHINA. 75

aused four hundred learned men, who were accustomed to writing histories, to be buried alive.

10. If the emperor Ching could have caught poor old Peter Parley, he certainly would have buried him likewise, with its four hundred learned brethren; and so the world would have lost this Universal History!

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the Chinese empire? Boundaries? What divides it from Thibet and Tartary? Which way is China from Persia? Hindostan? Siberia? The Birman empire? 2. What of the antiquity and duration of the Chinese empire? How far back does its history extend? Who was its founder? What do some writers suppose? 3. What of the dynasties or families that have ruled over China? 4. What do the Chinese suppose was the state of China before the time of Fohi? 5. When did Chaus live? What of him? 6. Relate the manner in which the people destroyed him. 8. When did the emperor Ching live? Describe the great wall. Does it still remain? 9. What orders did Ching give respecting historical books, records, and learned men?

CHAP. XXXI.—ASIA continued.

ANECDOTES OF THE CHINESE EMPERORS.

1. The emperor Vati lived about the time of the Christian era. This emperor was desirous of reigning till the world should come to an end, and perhaps longer. He therefore spent his time in endeavouring to brew a liquor that would make him immortal. But, unfortunately, before the liquor was fit to drink, the emperor died.

- 2. Another emperor, instead of attending to the affairs of the nation, applied himself wholly to study. His priming minister took advantage of his negligence, and raised rebellion against him. When the emperor heard the shout of the rebels, he shut his book, and put on his armour. But on ascending the ramparts of the city, he saw that it was to late to resist. He then returned to his library, which contained one hundred and forty thousand volumes.
- 3. The emperor knew that these books had been the mean of his losing the vast empire of China, by withdrawing his attention from the government. He therefore set fire them with his own hands, and the whole library was consumed. The rebels afterwards put him to death.
- 4. The emperor Si-gu-en began to reign in the year 61' after the Christian era. He dwelt in a magnificent palace After the emperor's death, his son came to the palace, and was astonished at its splendour and beauty. "Such a residence is good for nothing but to corrupt a monarch, and render him proud!" exclaimed he. Accordingly he commanded this great and costly edifice to be burnt to the ground.
- 5. Chwang-tsong, who had been a brave soldier, was made emperor about eight hundred years ago. He was a person of very frugal habits. It was one of his singularities that he never slept in a bed, but always on the bare ground, with a bell fastened to his neck. If he turned over in his sleep, the

iging of the bell would awaken him; and he then considered time to get up.

- 6. In the year 1209, Genghis Khan invaded China with immense army of Tartars. He and his descendants concered the whole empire, and governed it during many years.
- 7. The emperor Ching-tsa ascended the throne three or ar centuries ago. A mine was discovered during his reign, d precious stones of great value were dug out of it. Some them were brought to the emperor, but he looked scornlly at them.
- 8. "Do you call these precious stones?" cried he. "What e they good for? They can neither clothe the people, nor tisfy their hunger." So saying, he ordered the mine to be seed up, and the miners to be employed in some more useful nd of labour.
- 9. About a hundred years ago, in the reign of Yong-tching, ere was the most terrible earthquake that had ever been lown. It shook down nearly all the houses in the city of ekin, and buried one hundred thousand people. A still eater number perished in the surrounding country.
- 10. The Chinese have always been very unwilling to admit reigners, and we have had many disputes and even wars ith them in consequence; but ambassadors are now received the court of the emperor, and we cannot doubt that the hinese will soon find out the advantage to themselves of is change, in the increase of commerce and the spread of odern civilization.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the emperor Vati? How did he spend time? 2. Tell the story of a very learned emperor. 4. When did gu-en begin to reign? Where did he dwell? What did his son a 5. What of Chwang-tsong? What curious fact is related of his 6. When did Genghis Khan invade China? What of him and descendants? 7. What of the emperor Ching-tsa? Relate the st of the mine. What happened in the reign of Yong-tching? 10. When changes have taken place in China with regard to the admission foreigners? What effect will this change probably have?

CHAP. XXXII.—Asia continued.

CITIES OF CHINA. MANNERS OF THE CHINESE.

- 1. I MUST now give you a short account of the cities a people of China as they are at this day. Nankin v formerly the capital of China. Pekin, which contains t millions of inhabitants, is now the capital. The emper palace stands in a part of Pekin called the Tartar city.
- 2. The walls of Pekin are built of brick, and are nea one hundred feet high, so that they hide the whole ci They are so thick that sentinels on horseback ride round city on the top of the walls. There are nine gates, wh have marble arches, and are prodigiously high.
- 3. The people of China have an olive complexion, we black hair and small black eyes. The chief part of the dress is a long loose robe, which is fastened round the best with a silken girdle. In this girdle they carry a knife a two sticks for eating, instead of a knife and fork.

CHINA. 79

The Chinese are great fibbers, and are very much adi to cheating. There are some horrible customs among

For instance, if parents have a greater number of en than they can conveniently support, they are perd to throw them into a river!

The people are not nice about what they eat. Dead y-dogs are publicly sold in the streets for food. Rats nice are frequently eaten. There is a sort of bird's nest, the from some of the Indian islands, which is made into y, and is considered a great delicacy.

The Chinese ladies are chiefly remarkable for their feet. A grown woman in China is able to wear smaller than a young child in Europe. But their feet are kept ly for show, and are almost good for nothing to walk

Religion among the Chinese is in a very sad condition, people are given up to idolatry. Almost all religions olerated, although but little reverence is paid to any, e are more temples than can be easily numbered.

When a Chinese wishes to be married, he buys a wife r parents, but he is not permitted to see her till she is home. The young lady is brought to her husband's door palankeen. He puts aside the curtains of the palankeen, peeps in at his new wife. If he does not like her looks, ands her back again.

In China there are some very singular punishments. etimes a wooden frame, weighing two hundred pounds.

is put round a man's neck. He is compelled to carry it about with him wherever he goes; and, so long as he wears it, he can neither feed himself nor lie down.

- 10. One of the most curious customs of China is that of excluding all foreigners from the country. Till lately, only a few European and American merchants were permitted to reside at Canton, but they were obliged to leave their wives at Macao. No other strangers were permitted in the kingdom. But there are now five ports at which foreigners are allowed to carry on their commerce. The people think that their manners and customs are the best in the world, and they do not wish foreigners to come and introduce new notions. They are the oldest nation that exists, and they appear to wish nothing more than to continue as they have been.
- 11. China has a great many large cities, and these are filled with countless numbers of inhabitants. They have many ingenious arts and manufactures; they till the earth with great skill, and their gardens are managed with special care.
- 12. Tea is brought to us from this country, with a great variety of other articles. The name of the present emperor is Ki-tsiang: he ascended the throne on the death of his father, Hien-fung, Aug. 22, 1861. The population of China is about three hundred and sixty millions.

QUESTIONS —1. What city was formerly the capital of China? What is now? How many inhabitants does Pekin contain? Where is the emperor's palace? 2. What of the walls of Pekin? The gates? 3. What

wives of merchants reside? Why do not the Chinese wish ers to come among them? Which is the oldest empire in the 11. What of the cities of China? Manufactures? Do the understand agriculture? 13. Where do we get our tea? What population of China?

CHAP. XXXIII.—ASIA continued.

ORIGIN OF THE ARABS. RISE OF MAHOMET.

THE Arabs are descended from Ishmael, a son of Abra-It was foretold of him, that "his hand should be st every man, and every man's hand against him." In es this prophecy has been fulfilled among his posterity; ey appear to have been enemies to the rest of mankind, nankind enemies to them.

Arabia consists of several separate states or nations.

imperfectly known. The first event that is worth recording is the birth of Mahomet. This took place at Mecca, a city on the borders of the Red Sea, in the year 570 of the Christian era.

- 4. Till the age of twenty-five, Mahomet was a camel-driver in the desert. He afterwards spent much of his time in solitude. His dwelling was a lonesome cave, where he pretended to be employed in prayer and meditation. When he was forty years old, he set up for a prophet.
- 5. He publicly proclaimed that God had sent him to convert the world to a new religion. The people of Mecca would not, at first, believe Mahomet. He was born among them, and they knew that he had been a camel-driver, and was no holier than themselves. Beside, he pretended that he had ridden up to heaven on an ass, in company with the angel Gabriel; and many of his stories were as ridiculous as this.
- 6. So the men of Mecca threatened to slay Mahomet, and he was therefore forced to flee to Medina, another city of Arabia. This flight was called by the Arabs, the Hegira. At Medina, in the course of two or three years, he made a great number of converts. He told his disciples that they must compel others to adopt his religion by force, if they refused to do so by fair means.
- 7. This conduct brought on a war between the disciples of Mahomet and all the other Arabians. Mahomet won many rictories, and soon made himself master of the whole country, and of Syria besides.

- 8. Mahomet was now not only a pretended prophet, but a eal king. He was a very terrible man, even to his own ollowers; for, whenever he was angry, a vein between his yebrows used to swell, and turn black. This gave him a rim and frightful aspect.
- 6. His power continued to increase; but he died suddenly t the age of sixty-three. He was buried at Medina. It is aid that his coffin may be seen there in a mosque to this day, and some have absurdly believed that it is suspended in the ur by a loadstone. Many pilgrims go every year to visit the place.
- 10. The religion of Mahomet was diffused over nearly all Asia and Africa, and is still believed by many millions of people. Its precepts are contained in a book called the Koran. Mahomet affirmed that the angel Gabriel brought him from heaven the doctrines contained in this book.
- 11. But after his death his followers became divided as to who was his proper successor; one party, which now live in Turkey, believe that the Caliph Omar is the right one, and they are called Sunees. The other branch, or those which live in Persia, believe that the Caliph Ali is the right successor, and they pay reverence to his tomb at Meshed Ali, near to the river Euphrates. They are called Sheeahs, and each of these sects hate each other very much.

QUESTIONS.—1. From whom are the Arabs descended? What was prophesied of Ishmael? Has the prophecy been fulfilled? 2. Of what does Arabis consist? How is it bounded? 3. How have the

Arabs always lived? What of their early history? When and where was Mahomet born? 4. Of what profession was Mahomet? How did he live before he was forty years old? 5. What did he then do? What of the people of Mecca? What did Mahomet pretend? 6. Why did Mahomet flee to Medina? What was the flight of Mahomet called by the Arabs? What means did he take to make converts in Medina? 7. What was the effect of this conduct? What victories did Mahomet win? 8. Describe Mahomet? 9. When did he die? Where was he buried? What is said of his coffin? 10. Where is the religion of Mahomet followed? What is the Koran? What did Mahomet affirm? Where is Mecca? Medina? 11. Who were Mahomet's successors? What are the followers of Omar called? What are the believers in Ali called, and where was he buried?

CHAP. XXXIV.—ASIA continued.

SEQUEL OF THE HISTORY OF THE SARACENS.

- 1. Those of the Arabians who followed Mahomet were called Saracens. After their leader's death, they conquered the whole of Turkey in Asia, and many other countries. The capital of their empire was the city of Bagdad, on the river Tigris, which I have already mentioned.
- 2. One of the successors of Mahomet, which I have mentioned before, was Ali, his son-in-law. He was opposed by Ayesha, Mahomet's widow. This woman was suspected of having murdered her husband.
- 3. She raised an army, and led them to battle against Ali.

 During the conflict, Ayesha sat in a sort of cage or litter, on
 the back of a camel. The camel's rein was held by one of

er soldiers; and it is said that seventy soldiers were killed, ne after another, while holding the rein. Finally Ali was ictorious, and confirmed his sway over all the disciples of fahomet, and over the countries which they had won.

- 4. The Saracen empire was thus established. The kings vere called caliphs. They reigned at Bagdad for the space f six hundred and twenty years. One of the most distinuished of them was Mahmud of Gazni. He was a great onqueror, and added a part of India to his dominions.
- 5. A poor man once complained to Mahmud of Gazni that soldier had turned him and his family out of doors, and had tept possession of his house all night. When the caliph, Mahmud of Gazni, heard this, he suspected that the soldier was his own son. "If he ill treats you again, let me know," aid he.
- 6. Accordingly, a few nights afterwards, the poor man told the caliph that the same soldier had turned him out of his house again. The caliph took his cimeter, and went to the house; but before entering, he caused all the lights to be extinguished, so that his heart might not be softened by the eight of the offender.
- 7. When all was darkness, he entered the house, and struck the soldier dead with his eimeter. "Now bring a light," tied the caliph. His attendants did so. Mahmud of Gazni held a torch over the bloody corpse of the soldier, but found that his suspicions were not correct. He had not killed his two son!

- 8. The last of the caliphs was named Mostasem. He was so proud and vain-glorious that he considered his subjects unworthy to behold his face. He therefore never appeared in public without wearing a veil of golden tissue. Whenever he rode through the streets, thousands would flock to get a glimpse of his golden veil.
- 9. But at length Hulaku, chief of the Tartars, took the city of Bagdad. He stripped off the golden veil of the caliph Mostasem, and put him alive into a leathern bag. The bag, with the poor caliph in it, was dragged by horses through the same streets where he had formerly ridden in triumph.
- 10. Thus perished the caliph Mostasem, being bruised to death on the pavements. With him ended the empire of the Saracens, in the year 1258 of the Christian era.
- 11. But the termination of this empire did not put an end to the religion of Mahomet. This continued to flourish, and finally extended over nearly all the countries of Asia and Africa.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who were the Saracens? What of them? What city was the capital of their empire? 2. Who was Ali? Who opposed him? Who was Ayesha? 3. Describe the conflict between Ali and Ayesha. Who was victorious? 4. Who were the caliphs? Where did they reign? What of Mahmud of Gazni? 5. Relate the story of the poor man and Mahmud of Gazni. 8. Who was Mostasem? What can you say of him? 9. How did he die? 10. When did the empire of the Saracens end? 11. What of the religion of Mahmut?

CHAP. XXXV.—ASIA continued.

ABOUT SYRIA, PHŒNICIA, AND ASIA MINOR.

- 1. I WILL now give you a short account of Syria, which s north of Palestine. It is bounded on the north by Asia inor, on the east by the river Euphrates and Arabia, on the uth by Palestine and a part of Arabia, and west by the editerranean Sea.
- 2. Syria is frequently mentioned in the Bible. The people ere engaged in almost constant wars with the Jews, from a time of David nearly to the time of Christ, when it came a Roman Province.
- 3. At this period its capital was Antioch, which was one the most splendid cities in the world. This was the native ace of St. Luke, and here both St. Peter and St. Paul lived r some time. Here, too, the followers of Christ were first lled Christians.
- 4. Damascus, another city of Syria, one hundred and irty-six miles northward of Jerusalem, appears to have en known ever since the time of Abraham. It is frequently entioned in the Bible, and here St. Paul was miraculously nverted to the Christian faith.
- 5. This city was famous in later times for making the best rords, sabres, and other cutlery; but the art which the sople once possessed is now lost. The inhabitants of this ty were also celebrated for manufacturing beautiful silks, to

which the name of damask was given, from the place where they were made.

- 6. Another place in Syria mentioned in the Bible was Tadmor, sometimes called "Tadmore in the desert;" this was built by Solomon for the convenience of his traders; it was ten miles in extent, but it is now in ruins. The splendid remains of this place, consisting of columns and other things beautifully sculptured in stone, show that it must have been a rich and powerful city. In modern times it is called Palmyra.
- 7. At the distance of thirty-seven miles north-west of Damascus are the remains of Balbec, a very splendid city in the time of the apostles, and then called Heliopolis, or the City of the Sun. It is now in ruins, and contains searcely more than a thousand inhabitants.
- 8. I must not forget to mention Phoenice, or Phoenicia, which lay along the border of the Mediterranean Sea; it contained the cities of Tyre, Sidon, Ptolemais, and other celebrated places. In very early times, the Phoenicians were famous for taking the lead in commerce, navigation, and other arts. They were then an independent nation, but in after times their country became a province of Syria.
- 9. Syria is at the present day governed by the Turks, and like every other country under their sway, is stamped with an aspect of desolation and decay. The term Syria is now applied, not only to what anciently bore that name, but to Pulestine also.

- Asia Minor, or Natolia, as it is now called, lies at the h-eastern corner of the Mediterranean Sea; it is a kind aninsula, bounded on the north by the Euxine or Black; on the west by the Ægean Sea; and on the east by a, Mesopotamia, and Armenia.
- 1. It is about six hundred miles in length, from east to, and four hundred in breadth. It is at present under government of Turkey, and its inhabitants are mostly evers in Mahomet. The chief city now is Smyrna, to the many vessels go from this country, and bring back dates, and other things.
- 2. Asia Minor appears to have been settled in very early s. Several kingdoms have arisen and flourished here at rent periods, but it has never been the seat of any great ire. The kingdom of Lydia, in Asia Minor, existed as y as eight hundred years before Christ. Ardys, who ned six hundred and ninety-seven years before Christ, ears to have been one of its earliest kings.
- 5. The last king of Lydia was Crossus, who was so famous his great riches that to this day we say, "As rich as sus." But, in spite of his wealth, he was conquered by us, king of Persia, 548 B.C.
- 4. From this period, Lydia, with a great part of Asia 10r, continued subject to the Persian empire till the time Alexander, about 330 B.C., when it was conquered by famous leader.
- 15. Three hundred years before Christ, Pontus, which had

once been a part of Lydia, became an independent country. It continued to flourish for many years, and Mithridates VII. successfully maintained a war with the Romans for a long time.

- 16. By his skill and courage he baffled the best generals of the empire. But at length, in the year 64 B.C., he was conquered, and his kingdom, with the rest of Asia Minor, was subjected to the Roman dominion.
- 17. Notwithstanding the wars in Asia Minor, the country became filled with people, and superb cities rose up in various parts of it. Ephesus, situated in Lydia, was a splendid place, and it had a temple so magnificent that it was called one of the seven wonders of the world.
- 18. This temple was one hundred and twenty years in building; but a man named Erostratus, wishing to make himself remembered, set it on fire, and it was burnt to the ground.
- 19. There were also many other fine cities in Asia Minor, several of which are mentioned in the New Testament Among these was Tarsus, the birth-place of Paul; also Pergamos, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia, and Laodicea, which are spoken of in the book of Revelation.
- 20. Through the labours of Paul, Barnabas, Silas, Timothy, Luke, and perhaps others, Christianity was early planted in nearly all the divisions of Asia Minor.

QUESTIONS.—1. Where was Syria situated? How was it bounded?

2. What of the people of Syria? 3. Capital of Syria? What great

ents took place at Antioch? 4. What of Damascus? What took ce there? 5. What was Damascus celebrated for in ancient times? What of Tadmor? 7. What of the ruins of Balbec? 8. What of cenicia? What did it contain? What of the Phoenicians? 9. nat of Syria? To what is this name now applied? 10. Situation 1 boundaries of Asia Minor? 11. Its extent? Government? Initants? What of Smyrna? 12. What of Asia Minor? What of Lydia? whom was it conquered? 15. What of Pontus? Mithridates VII.? By whom was Mithridates conquered? 17. What of Ephesus? 18. mple of Diana? How was it destroyed? 19. What other cities were re in Asia Minor? 20. Who planted Christianity in Asia Minor?

CHAP. XXXVI.—ASIA continued.

A BRIEF VIEW OF SEVERAL NATIONS.

- 1. I HAVE now related the history of the most celebrated untries of Asia. But there are several other territories, d some of them very extensive, of which I can say only a w words in this little book.
- 2. In ancient times the Scythians inhabited the northern rts of Asia. They were a warlike and savage people, and ry expert with the bow and arrow. Many of the Asiatic d European kings endeavoured to subdue them, but were merally defeated.
- 3. At different times, vast numbers of the Scythians used overrun the more civilized countries that lay south of 1em. A tribe of Scythians founded the powerful empire of

Parthia, which afterwards extended its sway over Persia and other countries. This empire began in the year 250 B.C. and continued five hundred years.

- 4. In more modern times, the regions inhabited by the Scythians have been called Tartary. The people are not much more civilized than they formerly were. More than one celebrated conqueror has arisen among the Tartars.
- 5. India, which we call the East Indies, was very little known to the people who lived westward of it in ancient times. Semiramis invaded it, and likewise Alexander the Great, and several other conquerors. The Hindoos of the present day are an interesting people, but addicted to idolatry.
- 6. India consists of Hindostan, and of an extensive region to the eastward of it. Within the last hundred years, the English have gained great power in this part of the world. They made war against the native rulers, and reduced them to subjection.
- 7. The Turks, or Ottomans, are a people who had their origin in Asia. But as they have been settled in Europe during several centuries, it will be more proper and convenient to speak of them in the history of that quarter of the globe.
- 8. Japan is an extensive empire, containing twenty-six millions of inhabitants. These live to the east of Chins, upon several islands, of which Niphon is the largest. The people live crowded together in large cities, and resemble the Chinese in their religion, manners, and customs.

- 9. It is uncertain whether the ancient nations knew any ng of this empire, and its early history is quite unknown. has probably remained with little change for thousands years. Its existence was first ascertained by the Euroms about the year 1400; but, as strangers have only retly been permitted to reside in the country, our knowledge it is only limited. The people are idolaters.
- 10. There are several other kingdoms of Asia, of which history is little known, or quite uninteresting. Among see are Siam, Cochin China, Birman empire, Cabul, loochistan, and some others. Besides these, the northern rions of Asia are occupied by various tribes of Tartars, o appear to have wandered over these regions for ages, ving no story behind them. The emperor of Russia rules or these vast dominions.

QUESTIONS.—2. What of the Scythians? Where did they live? What of Parthia? 4. What is the name given to the countries merly inhabited by the Scythians, Parthians, &c.? Do the Tartars sain nearly the same as the ancient Scythians, Parthians, &c.? What of India or Hindostan? How is it bounded? Which way is from China? From Persia? From Palestine? What of the glish in Hindostan? 7. What of the Turks or Ottomans? 8. What Japan? Direction of the Japanese isles from Hindostan? Persia? settine? 10. What other nations of Asia are there, of which the tory is little known? What of the northern portions of Asia?

CHAP. XXXVII.—ASIA continued.

REVIEW OF THE HISTORY OF ASIA.

- 1. Let us now go back and review the history of Asia. In this quarter of the globe, the most wonderful events in the history of mankind have happened. Here, Adam and Eve were created; and on the banks of the Euphrates all the people dwelt who lived before the flood.
- 2. It was in Asia that the Ark of Noah rested; and here again the people began to build cities, and establish nations. Here the first great empire arose. Here the Jewish nation had its origin; and nearly all the events related in the Old Testament took place here.
- 3. It was in Asia that the religion which teaches us that there is one only living and true God had its origin; and here Jesus Christ appeared to establish his religion, and seal the truth of revelation with his blood.
- 4. It was in Asia that Mahomet commenced and established his religion, which is now believed by more than half the human race. Several other religions had their origin in Asia.
- 5. In Asia some of the greatest empires have existed, of which history gives us any account. The Assyrian empire, as I have before said, is the first on record. This was followed by the Persian empire, which seemed to swallow up all the surrounding nations. China, the most populous empire on the globe, has endured longer than any other.

ASIA. 95

- 5. The Saracens, who extended their dominion over many intries, had their origin in Asia. The Turks, who have gned over Palestine, Mesopotamia, Syria, Asia Minor, a rt of Europe, and a part of Africa, for nearly eight hundred irs, had their origin in Asia.
- 7. There is one portion of Asia which is, perhaps, more full historical interest than any other on the face of the globe. is that which lies between the Mediterranean on the west, menia on the north, Persia on the east, and Arabia on the 1th. Here is the spot on which the first inhabitants dwelt; re was the place where the first nations were formed; here e miracles recorded in the Bible took place; here the proets dwelt; here Jesus Christ lived, preached, and died.
- 8. But although Asia was peopled before any other part the world, and though the inhabitants have been favoured miracles and the presence of a divine teacher, they are behind the nations of Europe and America in the knowlge of religion, and the various arts which make life comtable and happy.
- 9. In all parts of Asia, there are many people who are full superstition, and there are very few who worship God in cerity and truth. Jesus Christ is hardly known among a four hundred millions of people in Asia; and though me of the rich men, kings, and princes, live in gorgeous laces and are decked with gold and jewels, yet the mass of tople live as they have done for ages, ignorant, poor, and traded.

- 10. The most remarkable feature in the history of Asia is, that while the country has seen many revolutions and changes, the condition of the people remains nearly the same. In Europe, and in the United States of America, there is a constant improvement: every year brings some new art, invention, or institution for the benefit of society.
- 11. But in Asia it is not so. Whoever is king, the people are but slaves. Education makes no progress, liberty is unknown, truth is little valued, virtue is not prized, and that thing which we call comfort, and which makes our homes so dear to us, is not to be found in this vast country, so favoured by Providence, and so richly endowed by nature.
- 12. It would seem that the real difficulty in Asia is, that, while they are destitute of the knowledge of the Gospel, they have many false religions. Mahometanism prevails over a great part of this portion of the globe; and it is remarkable that no country, the people of which believe in this false religion, has ever been happy or well governed.
- 13. The Hindoos believe in Brahmanism, which teaches them that there is one principal deity, called Brahma, and several other inferior deities, called Vishnu, Siva, &c. They make strange images of these and worship them. The priess are called Brahmins, and instruct the people in many ide ceremonies and cruel superstitions.
- 14. Besides these religions, there is the worship of the Grand Lame, to whom a Temple is erected in Tartary.

believe in Boodh, and other nations believe in other

hus, nearly the whole of Asia is involved in darkness e character of God and the destiny of man; and thus that the conduct of mankind is such as might be I where ignorance and error prevail.

ions.-1, 2, 3, 4. What remarkable events have occurred in i. Which is the first empire recorded in history? What of an empire? What of China? 6. What of the Saracens? the Turks? 7. What portion of Asia is the most interesting clobe? Why is this portion of country thus interesting? las Asia been particularly favoured? In what respects are bitants of Asia behind those of Europe and America? is the state of the people in Asia? 10. What is remarkable istory of Asia? What is said of this country and of Europe? does Asia differ from Europe and America? 12. What is ition of Asia? What of Mahometanism? What is a remark-13. In what religion do the Hindoos believe? What does ism teach? What of the Brahmins? 14. Where is the f the Grand Lama? In what deity do the Chinese believe? other nations? 15. In what error is nearly the whole of alved? What do we see as respects the conduct of mankind;

ht be well for the teacher now to require the pupil to go over the Asia a second time, or at least to go back and see that he is able the most material questions of the preceding chapters.

CHAP. XXXVIII.—ASIA continued.

CHRONOLOGY OF ASIA.

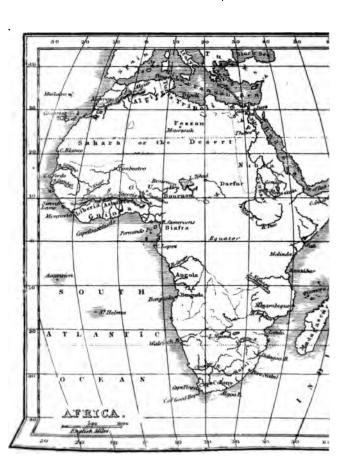
- 1. Chronology is a record of the dates when hist events happened. By studying chronology, you then learn the time at which the creation took place, when ham went from Chaldea to Canaan, when Christ was and other things.
- 2. Now, in order to have a clear view of the progr history, it is very important to place before us a tal chronology; and if we wish to remember history for a time, it is well to fix this table in the memory.
- 3. I will now give you a brief view of the chronolc Asia. By this you will notice some curious things. will see that Solomon and Chaus of China lived at the time: that Solomon began the temple exactly three thou years after the creation, &c.

Creation of the world	١.		•		•	•		
Deluge	•	•	•			•	•	
Confusion of tongues		•				•	•	
Ashur founds the em	pire (of As	syria				•	
Ninyas, King of Assy	ria,	began	to re	ign		•	٠	
Abraham born	•	•		•	•		•	
Abraham sets out fro	m C	halde	a to g	o to (Canas	ın .	•	
Jacob removes with					•	•		
Death of Jacob .		•		•	•		-	
Death of Joseph .			•	•	•		•	
loses born		•	•	•		•	•	•
Parture of the Tare	alita	a from	n Eg	tar				

•			AISA	,					99
									B.C.
of Moses .	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	1447
of Joshua	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	1426
roclaimed kir	ng of Is	rael	•	•	•	•	•	•	1100
David born	• •	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	1085
on began to r		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	1015
e of Solomon		. •	•	•	•	•	•	•	1004
emperor of		begar	ı to re	eign	•	•	•	•	1000
of Sardanapa		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	820
the prophet						te s	•	•	806
s, first king							•	•	797
neser conqu				of Is	rael,	and o	earrie	d the	
ief inhabitan			vit y	•	•	•	•	•	721
tes made kin			•	•	•	•	•	•	630
arried captiv		•		•	•	•	•	•	606
conquered by			of P	ersia	•	•	•	•	548
in empire ov			•	•	•	•	•	•	538
turn from B	•		•		·	•	•	•	536
empire esta	blished	by C	yrus 1	he G	reat	•	•	•	536
of Cyrus .		•	•				•		529
ses succeeds	his fath	ier Cy	yrus		•				529
began to rei	go.	•				•	•	•	522
defeats Leo	nidas a	The:	rmop	ylæ				•	480
of Xerxes .		• .						•	465
der invades	Persia								330
m of Syria fo	unded	by Se	eleuct	LS.				•	312
becomes ind	epende	nt un	der M	lithri	dates	II.			300
of Parthia f			•					•	250
res made kin	g of Pe	ersia	•						230
Maccabæus d			rians	out o	f the	Jewis	h ki	gdom	166
emperor of			•	•				•	67
with other p		Asia	Mino	r. con	auer	ed bv	the l	Roman	
nd Canaan c						<i>-</i> -			67
king of the				-va		•	•	•	37
mneror of Chi		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	31

Jesus Christ was bor called the Christian era								
date from the birth of								
after Christ; A.D. stand								
Lord. Thus we say A.								
Lord, or from the birth							your	0. 0.
Doru, or from the british	0. 0	, -	004,00					B.
Jesus Christ born		•	•	•	•	•	•	
Christ crucified		•	•	•	•	•	•	3
Paul arrives at Rome			•	•	•	•	•	6
Destruction of Jerusale	m.by ?	Litus.		•	•	•	•	7
Birth of Mahomet		•	•	•	•	•	•	57
Mahomet obliged to fly	from :	his en	emies	•	•	•	•	62
This is called the He			he era	from	whiel	h the	Turk	s. date
as we do from the birth	of Ch	rist					•	
Death of Mahomet	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	63
Saracen empire establis		•	•	•	•	•	•	63
Bagdad, the seat of the				•	•	•	•	67
Chosroes the Great, kin					ign.	•	•	660
Si-gu-en, emperor of Cl	hi na, b	egan 1	to reign	ı.	•	•	•	617
Chwang-tsong ascended	the tl	rone	of Chir	18	•	•	•	103
Genghis Khan invaded	China	•						120
Saracen empire overtur	ned by	the I	Turks			•	•	12!
Japan discovered by Eu	ropear	18						14
Shah Abbas ascended to	he thre	one of	Persia			•		15
Shah Husseyn ascended	the t	hrone	of Per	sia				10
Kouli Khan made king	of Per	sia .	•		•			1
Yong-tching came to th			China					1
Taou-kwang ascended t	he thr	one of	China					1
War between China and								
Canton and other Cities	taker	by th	e Engl	ish				
Peace. The Chinese to					s of d	تعالما		
Holy Scriptures present	ed to l	cing o	f Persis					
Emperor of China legal					Opium	١.	-	
Wan visited by eight E	rench	ships						





Al Al	RIC	A.					101
of the King of Ava							A.D. 1853
lestroyed by Fire .						•	1858
d Amoy taken by Chi	nese	Insur	gehti	٠.	•		1863
ion of Peace with Bur		•	•	•	•		1853
arthquakes in Japan							1854
troyed by an Earthqu	ake						1855
mbarded by British F	eet						·1 8 56
er Persians by Genera	ıl Ou	tram				•	1856
veen Great Britain and	d Per	sia					1856
ner Yeh taken prisone	er at	Canto	n				1857
he Peiho river capture	d by	Engli	sh a	nd Fr	ench	•	1858
Tietsin between Great	Brit	ain ar	d C	hina			1858
th Emperor of Japan a	t Jeé	ldo		•			1858
nd French send a new	Expe	dition	to (China			1860
h China						•	1860
ons.—1. What is chron by placing before us a of fixing a chronologings do we learn from	chr gical	onolo _i table	gical in t h	table e mer	? V	What ? 3.	is the
The teacher may now pr	roosed	l to as	k suc	h ques	tions	as he	
regard to the several eve						•	
he pages where the det a	ıils a	re giv	en re	specti	ng the	even	ts, and
the pupil upon them.							
s like the following may							
that of Moves ! From	that	of Mo	ses te	that o	f Da	vid ?	From
en to the end of the San	2002	emnine	2 2	•	_		

CHAP. XXXIX.—AFRICA.

OUT THE GEOGRAPHY OF AFRICA. THE INHABITANTS.

RICA is one of the six parts of the globe. It is an
extent of country, and includes nearly one-fourth

of all the land on the earth. It is separated from Europe by the Mediterranean, and from America by the Atlantic Ocean; the nearest part to America is about three thousand miles from New York or Boston, but at the Strait of Gibraltar it approaches very near to Europe.

- 2. It is divided from Asia by the Red Sea. It is, however, attached to Asia by a narrow neck of land, called the Isthmus of Suez.
- 3. Africa is less known than any other portion of the globe. Many parts of the interior have never been visited by Europeans; for the greater part of the inhabitants are negroes, of which there are many tribes. Some of these are intelligent, and live tolerably well, but the greater part are either in a savage or a barbarous state.
- 4. The climate being warm they need little shelter or clothing. Their houses are therefore poor huts, or slight tenements made of leaves or branches of trees. Their dress is often but a single piece of cloth tied around the waist. They are, however, a cheerful race, and spend much of their time in various amusements.
- 5. Beside the negroes, there are several other races of Africans. The inhabitants from Egypt to Abyssinia appear to consist of the original Egyptian people, mixed with Turks, Arabs, and others. The people of the Barbary states are the descendants of the ancient Carthaginians, mingled with the Saracens who conquered the country, together with Turks and Arabs.

The immense desert of Sahara, with all the adjacent s, appears to be occupied by wandering tribes of Arabs, nove from place to place with their horses and camels, ne people of Arabia, for pasturage or plunder.

Africa may be considered as, on the whole, the least ad portion of the earth. The people are mostly Mahos, and one half of them are nearly in a savage state at are in a barbarous condition.

The central parts of Africa abound in wild animals, is lions, panthers, leopards, elephants, rhinoceroses, and quaggas. The woods are filled with chattering ys, the thickets are infested with monstrous serpents, es roam over the deserts, various kinds of antelopes and I vast herds graze upon the plains, hippopotami are I the lakes and rivers, and crocodiles abound in the nt waters. Wild birds of every hue meet the eye of I weller in nearly all the parts of the country.

TIONS.—How is Africa bounded on the north? East? South? What is the most southern point? The most eastern? The stern? The most northern? In what part is Egypt? Barbary Desert of Sahara? Which way does the Nile run? Into what run? 1. What of Africa? How is it separated from Europe serica? How far is the nearest point from New York or Boston? is it divided from Asia? What neck of land joins it to Asia? frica well known? What of the inhabitants? 4. What of the? Houses? Dress? What of the negroes? 5. What of other Describe them? 7. How may Africa be considered? State cople? 8. What of animals in Central Africa?

CHAP. XL.—AFRICA continued.

EARLY SOVEREIGNS OF BGYRT.

- 1. The natives of Africa are supposed to be descended from Noah's son Ham, who went thither and settled in Egypt after the building of the tower of Babel, this country being near the land of Shinar. The kingdom of Egypt is very ancient, and was founded by Menes, one of the children of Ham, 2118 R.c. In the Bible he is called Misraim.
- 2. Egypt is bounded north by the Mediterranean Sea, east by the Red Sea, south by Nubia, and west by the desert. The Nile runs through the midst of Egypt from the south to the north. This river overflows once a year, and thus fertilizes the country, for it very seldom rains in Egypt.
- 3. Menes, or Misraim, the first king of Egypt, turned aside the Nile from its original channel, and built the city of Memphis where the river had formerly flowed. He was so great a monarch that the people worshipped him as a god after his death.
- 4. The history of Egypt is very obscure during a considerable time after the reign of Menes. From the year 2084 to the year 1825 before the Christian era, it was governed by rulers who led the lives of shepherds, and were therefore called shepherd kings. These kings were afterwards driven from Egypt. An Ethiopian woman named Nitocris, became queen of this country in the year 1678 before the Christian

Her brother had been murdered by the Egyptians, and resolved to avenge him.

- i. For this purpose queen Nitocris built a palace under und, and invited the murderers of her brother to a ban-
- t. The subterranean hall where the banquet was prepared brilliantly illuminated with torches. The guests were principal men in the kingdom.
- table. But suddenly a rushing and roaring sound was rd overhead, and a deluge of water burst into the hall. sen Nitocris had caused a river to flow through a secret sage, and it extinguished the torches, and drowned all the rpany at the banquet.
- The most renowned monarch that ever reigned over ypt was Sesostris. The date of his reign is not precisely wn; but there is a carving in stone, lately found in ypt among the ruins of an ancient city, which is more a three thousand years old, and supposed to be a portrait him. It is doubtless the oldest portrait in existence is king formed the design of conquering the world, and set from Egypt with more than half a million of foot liers, twenty-four thousand horsemen, and twenty-seven usend armed chariots.
- this ambitious projects were partially successful. He de great conquests, and wherever he went he caused the pillars to be erected, and inscriptions to be engraved them, so that future ages might not forget his recover.

- 9. The following was the inscription on most of the pillars:—Sesostris, king of kings, has conquered this territory by his arms. But the marble pillars have long ago crumbled into dust, or been buried under the earth; and the history of Sesostris is so obscure, that some writers have even doubted whether he ever made any conquests at all.
- 10. But other writers assure us that he returned to Egypt after his wars, bringing with him a multitude of captives, and long trains of camels laden with treasure, and that he then built magnificent temples, and constructed canals and causeways.
- 11. When Sesostris went to worship in the temple, he rode in a chariot which was drawn by captive kings. They were harnessed like horses, four abreast; and their royal robes trailed in the dust as they tugged the heavy chariot along. But at length the proud Sesostris grew old and blind. He could no longer look around him and see captive kings drawing his chariot, or kneeling at his footstool. He then became utterly miserable, and committed suicide.

QUESTIONS.—1. From whom are the natives of Africa descended? By whom and when was the kingdom of Egypt founded? What of Menes? 2. How is Egypt bounded? What of the Nile? Does it often rain in Egypt? 3. Where and by whom was Memphis built? What was thought of Menes? 4. What of the history of Egypt? What of the shepherd kings? What of Nitocris? 5. How did are revenge her brother's death? 7. What can you tell of Secostris? What of his army? 9. What inscription was engraved on the marble pillars raised by Sesostris? Are the pillars still standing? What de

EGYPT. 107

some writers doubt? 10. What do others say? 11. How was the chariot of Sesostris drawn? What was the fate of this despotic king?

CHAP. XLI.—AFRICA continued.

EGYPTIAN ARCHITECTURE AND SCULPTURE.

- 1. THE ancient history of Egypt is so obscure, and yet so full of wonderful tales, that we might doubt it altogether, and believe it but the marvellous invention of fanciful story-tellers, were it not for the vast ruins and stupendous monuments still to be found in different parts of the country. These show that many ages since, between three and four thousand years ago, this country was filled with millions of people, and that there were cities here of the most wonderful magnificence.
- 2. Thebes appear to have been more magnificent than any other city either in ancient or modern times. It was called the city of a hundred gates; and such was the immense population, that through each of these gates, in time of war, marched two hundred armed chariots, and two thousand soldiers.
- 3. Thebes was ruined in the time of Cambyses, king of Persia, who lived about twenty-four hundred years ago. Yet the remains of the city are still visible, scattered over a space of twenty-seven miles on each side of the Nile. Some of the pillars of the temple are eleven feet in diameter.

- 4. One of the Egyptian kings caused his subjects to dig a great lake forty-live miles in circumference, and very deep Another king constructed a labyrinth of marble containing three thousand chambers, fifteen hundred feet of which were under ground.
- 5. In the upper chambers of this labyrinth were kept the sacred crocodiles and all the other animals which the Egyptians worshipped. In the subterranean chambers lay the dead kings of Egypt.
- 6. The catacombs are likewise very wonderful. They are galleries hewn out of the rook, and extend a great way beneath the ground. The dead bodies of persons who died thousands of years ago are found in these catacombs, and they are nearly as well preserved now as when they were first buried. These are called mummies; and some, supposed to be three thousand years old, have been brought to this country.
- 7. Every body has heard of the pyramids of Egypt. These immense edifices are still standing on the banks of the Nila. The largest is five hundred feet high, and covers eleven seres of ground.
- 8. The pyramids are so old that it is impossible to tall when they were erected or by whom. It is generally supposed that the ancient kings of Egypt intended them as their sepulchres, thinking that thus they should be famous for ever. But, though the pyramids have not decayed, the means of those kings are forgotten.

- 9. On a plain near Thebes are two enormous stone statues, mething like a man and woman. These are fifty feet high. o one can look upon them but with wonder.
- 10. The sphynx is one of the most curious among the gyptian antiquities. It was originally the gigantic head of woman on the body of a lion; but the lower part is now ried in the sand. The part which remains above ground the head and neck. These are twenty-seven feet high, and e made of solid rock. At a distance it looks as if a great tr-nosed woman were rising out of the sand.
- 11. The ruins of Luxor, near ancient Thebes, are so grand to strike the beholder with awe. The remains of one the temples are perhaps the most remarkable relics of ntiquity.
- 12. At the time when they constructed these marvellous orks, the ancient Egyptians possessed more learning and inner than any other people. Their superior knowledge used them to be looked upon as magicians by the people of their countries.
- 13. Still the Egyptians had many absurd superstitions. heir chief deity was Isis, and another was Osiris her husband. If these they made strange images, and worshipped them. is was greatly reverenced, and the people dedicated many plendid temples to her worship.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the ancient history of Egypt? What of ruins ad monuments? What do they prove? What of Thebes? Its populaion? 3. Who descriped Thebes? Remains? Pillars?: 4. Describe

the works of some of the kings. What of the labyrinth? 5. What were kept in the labyrinth? 6. Describe the catacombs. What are mummies? 8. What of the pyramids? What was probably the cause of their erection? 9. What of statues near Thebes? Describe the sphynx. 11. What of the ruins of Luxor? 12. What of the Egyptians at the time we are speaking of? How were they looked upon by people of other countries? 13. What of the superstitions of the Egyptians? Isis and Osiris?

CHAP. XLII.—AFRICA continued.

THE PTOLEMIES AND QUEEN CLEOPATRA.

- 1. In the history of the Jews I have told of their bondage in Egypt, and of their miraculous escape. A long while afterwards, an Egyptian king named Shishak took Jerusalem, and robbed Solomon's temple of its treasures.
- 2. A very famous king of Egypt was named Amenophia. He is supposed to be the same with Memnon, in honour of whom a temple with a gigantic statue was erected, of which some remains are still to be seen at Thebes. This statue was said to utter a joyful sound at sunrise, and a mournful sound when the sun set. Some modern travellers imagine that they have heard it.
- 3. In the year 525 before the Christian era, Egypt was conquered by Cambyses, king of Persia. He compelled Psammenitus, who was then king of Egypt, to drink balls, blood. It operated as a poison, and caused his death.
 - 4. Three hundred and thirty-two years before the Chris-

e word. Due one ancient city is in ruins, and modern andria is far inferior to it.

Alexander was buried at Alexandria, and his famous is still the second city in Egypt, and the principal place mmerce.

Alexander appointed Ptolemy, one of his generals, to der of the country. From Ptolemy were descended a of kings, all of whom were likewise called Ptolemy. reigned over Egypt two hundred and ninety-four years. last of these kings was Ptolemy Dionysius, whose own made war against him. A battle was fought, in which my Dionysius was defeated. He attempted to escape, was drowned in the Nile. His wife, whose name was patra, then became sole ruler of Egypt.

She was one of the most beautiful women that ever, and her talents and accomplishments were equal to personal beauty. But she was very wicked. Among

Cleopatra to come to Cilicia, on the north-eastern coast of the Mediterranean. He intended to punish her for having assisted Brutus.

- 9. As soon as Cleopatra received the summons, she hastened to obey. She went on board a splendid vessel, which was richly adorned with gold. The sails were made of the costliest silk. Instead of rough sunburnt sailors, the crew consisted of lovely girls, who rowed with silver cars; and their strokes kept time to melodious music.
- 10. Queen Cleopatra reclined on the deck, beneath a silken awning. In this manner she went gliding along the river Cydnus. Her vessel was so magnificent, and she herself so lovely, that the whole spectacle appeared like a vision.
- 11. Mark Antony was first warned of her approach by the smell of delicious perfumes, which the wind wafted from the silken sails of the vessel. He next heard the distant strains of music, and saw the gleaming of the silver oars.
- 12. But when he beheld the beauty of the Egyptian queen, he thought of nothing else. Till Mark Antony met Cleopatra, he had been an ambitious man and a valiant warrior. But from that day forward he was nothing but her slave.
- 13. Owing to Cleopatra's misconduct and his own, Antony was defeated by Octavius, another Roman general, at Actium, in Greece. He then killed himself by falling on his award. Greepatra knew that if Octavius took her alive, he would

h is mortal, but not painful. Cleopatra applied one of reptiles to her bosom. In a little while her body grew mbed, and her heart ceased to beat; and thus died the tiful and wicked queen of Egypt. This event occurred y years before Christ.

The story of Queen Cleopatra is very instructive. It is that a person on whom Heaven has bestowed the st gifts may use them to cause mischief and misery to round.

ESTIONS.—I. Who was Shishak? What did he do? 2. Who was nophis? What of the statue of Memnon? 3. When and by was Egypt conquered? Fate of Psammenitus? 4. When did ander conquer Egypt? 6. What of Ptolemy and his descended? How long did they reign in Egypt? Who was Ptolemy ysius? His wife? 7. What of Cleopatra? What cruelty did ommit? What made Cleopatra irresistible? 8. Who was Mark my? Why did he wish to punish Cleopatra? Give an account a arrival of Cleopatra at Cilicia. 12. What was the character of

CHAP. XLIII.—A FRICA continued.

SEQUEL OF THE EGYPTIAN HISTORY.

- 1. After the death of Cleopatra, Egypt became a province of the Roman empire; and it continued to belong to that, and the portion of it called the Eastern empire, till the year 640, after the Christian era. It was then conquered by the Saracens. It remained under their government upwards of six centuries.
- 2. The Saracen sovereigns were dethroned by the Mamelukes, whom they had trained up to be their guards. The Mamelukes ruled Egypt till the year 1517, when they were conquered by the Turks. The latter kept possession of Egypt till the year 1798. It was then invaded by Napoleon Buonaparte with an army of forty thousand Frenchmen.
- 3. The Turks, ever since their conquest of Egypt, had kept a body of Mamelukes in their service; these made a desperate resistance. A battle was fought near the pyramids, in which many of them were slain, and others were drowned in the Nile. Not long after this victory, Buonaparte went back to France, and left General Kleber in command of the French army.
- 4. General Kleber was a brave man, but a severe one, and his severity cost him his life. He had ordered an old Musculman, named the Sheik Sada, to be bastinadoed on the soles of his feet. Shortly afterwards, when the general was

- a mosque, a fierce Arab rushed upon him, and killed him ith a dagger.
- 5. In 1801, the English sent Sir Ralph Abercromby with army to drive the French out of Egypt. General Menou as then the French commander. Sir Ralph Abercromby at him at the battle of Aboukir, but was himself mortally ounded.
- 6. In the course of the same year, the French army capidated, and sailed from Egypt back to France. The inhabints lamented their departure, for the French generals had ded them with more justice and moderation than their old asters, the Turks. Egypt is now governed by a Pasha, ho bears the title of Viceroy; but the country is scarcely unsidered a part of the Turkish empire, though its ruler tys tribute to the sultan.
- 7. The present capital of Egypt is Grand Cairo. It is such inferior to what it was in former times, but still consins about three hundred thousand inhabitants. Alexandria, wilt by Alexander the Great, as I have before said, is now such reduced, but the ruins around it show that it was once splendid city. There is no part of the world that seems sore gloomy to a traveller than Egypt. The present aspect f the towns and cities is that of poverty in the midst of sins which speak of wealth and splendour that have long ince departed.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the state of Egypt from Cleopatra's death its subjugation by the Mamelukes? 2. How long did the Mamelukes?

lukes govern Egypt? When and how long did the Turks govern K What happened in 1798? 3. What battle was fought? WI Buonaparte after the victory? 4. What of General Kleber? 5. took place in 1801? 6. What happened in the same year? were the Egyptians sorry to have the French leave them? E Egypt now governed? How is the country considered? 7. WI the capital of Egypt? What of Grand Cairo? Population? of Alexandria? How does Egypt appear to a traveller?

CHAP. XLIV.—Africa continued. SUMMARY OF ETHIOPIAN MATTERS.

- 1. ALL the interior parts of Africa were anciently a Æthiopia. But, properly speaking, Æthiopia comprised the countries now called Nubia and Abyssinia. This r lies south of Egypt, and extends along the shore of the Sea. The first inhabitants of Æthiopia are supposed to emigrated from Arabia the Happy, a part of Arabia. early history is almost unknown.
- 2. Æthiopia, or at least a portion of it, was formerly. Sheba; and from thence it is supposed that the que Sheba went to visit Solomon. About thirty years ago said that one of her descendants was king of Abyssinia.
- 3. It used to be the custom to confine the Æthi princes on a high mountain, which was named Geshen was very high and steep, and looked like an enormous of stone. No person could ascend this mountain, or down from it, unless he were raised or lowered by measures.

- 4. The princes lived on the summit of the mountain, in miserable huts. The greater part of them never came down till their dying day. But whenever the king died, one of the princes was summoned to the throne. Perhaps, however, he found himself no happier in the royal palace, than in his hut on the summit of Mount Geshen.
- 5. The Æthiopians were believers in the Jewish religion till the middle of the fourth century after the Christian era. Candace, the queen of the country, was then converted to Christianity, and her subjects followed her example.
- 6. The inhabitants of Æthiopia, or Abyssinia, are still called Christians, but their mode of worship is mixed up with many Jewish practices. They also worship the Virgin Mary and the saints, like the Roman Catholics.
- 7. The people of this part of Africa are not generally negroes. They are of an olive complexion, and have long hair and agreeable features. But in the north-eastern parts of Abyssinia, there is a race of negroes called Shangallas.
- 8. These negroes have been described as having faces resembling apes, and as being little more intelligent than the monkey tribe. They had no houses, but slept under the trees, and sometimes burrowed in caves. The Abyssinians used to hunt them as they would wild beasts. But, in consequence of the dissensions among the Abyssinians, the Gallas have become powerful, and have conquered a considerable part of the country.

Questions.—1. What was anciently called Æthiopia? In which

A STATE OF THE STA

direction is it from Egypt? Where was Æthiopia, properly speaking, situated? Who were the first inhabitants of Æthiopia? 2. What was Æthiopia formerly called? What of the queen of Sheba? 3. What was once the custom? 4. How did the princes live? What happened when the king died? 5. Till what time did the Æthiopians believe in the Jewish religion? What of Candace? 6. What of the worship of the people of Æthiopia at the present time? 7. What of their personal appearance? What of the Shangallas? Describe them.

CHAP. XLV.—AFRICA continued.

ORIGIN' OF THE BARBARY STATES, AND THEIR PIRACIES ON THE CHRISTIANS.

- 1. THE Barbary states are Morocco, Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli. They are bounded north by the Mediterranean Sea, east and south by the desert, and west by the Atlantic Ocean. These countries were inhabited in the time of the Romans Morocco was called Mauritania; and Algiers, Numidia. These regions were first settled by colonies from Phoenicia, Greece, and other countries.
- 2. In this region stood the celebrated city of Carthage in ancient times. Its site was about ten miles north-east of the city of Tunis. It was founded by some Phænicians, eight hundred and sixty-nine years before the Christian era. The Phænicians, as I have told you, were the first people who engaged in commerce, and founded colonies for the purpose of carrying on trade.

- 3. In the history of Rome I shall tell you how Carthage as destroyed. The Romans erected a new city where it ad formerly stood. This was conquered and destroyed by he Saracens, who then built the city of Tunis. In the ear 1574, Tunis was seized by the Turks.
- 4. The city of Algiers was built by the Saracens, in the ear 944. The government, called the regency of Algiers, was founded in 1518 by two Turks, named Horuc and Kairddyn or Hariadan. They were brothers, and both bore the same of Barbarossa, or Red-Beard.
- 5. The country now called Morocco was conquered by the laracens, about the same time with the other Barbary states. So also was Tripoli. All these states, except Morocco, afterwards fell into the hands of the Turks.
- 6. During a long period, the Barbary states were in the sabit of fitting out vessels to cruise against the ships of every sation. Their prisoners were sold as slaves, and never resurned to their own country, unless a high ransom were paid or them.
- 7. The Americans were the first who made any considerable resistance to these outrages. In the year 1803, Commodore Preble sailed to the Mediterranean Sea with a small American fleet. He intended to attack Tripoli; but one of is frigates, the Philadelphia, got aground in the harbour.
- 8. The Turks took possession of the Philadelphia. But me night Lieutenant Decatur entered the harbour of Tripoli, and rowed toward the captured vessel, with only twenty men.

k

He leaped on board, followed by his crew, and killed all the Turks, or drove them overboard. The Philadelphia was then set on fire.

- 9. After this exploit, Commander Preble obtained some gun-boats from the king of Naples, and with these and the American vessels he made an attack on the fortifications of Tripoli. The bashaw of Tripoli was forced to give up his prisoners.
- 10. In the year 1815, Commodore Decatur (the same who had burnt the Philadelphia) was sent with a fleet against Algiers. He captured their largest vessels, and compelled the Algerines, and the Tripolitans also, to agree never more to make slaves of Americans.
- 11. In 1816, Algiers was battered by an English fleet under the command of Lord Exmouth. This was the severest chastisement that the Algerines had ever received at that period. But in 1830, the French sent a large naval and military force against Algiers, commanded by Marshal Bourmont. The fortifications were battered down, and the city was taken. Algiers may now be considered a province of France; but it is a most expensive acquisition.

QUESTIONS.—1. Which are the Barbary states? How are they bounded? 2. Where did ancient Carthage stand? Who founded it?

3. Who erected a new city? What did the Saracens do? When was Tunis seized by the Turks? 4. When and by whom was Algiers built? What was done in 1518? Who were called Barbarossa? 5. What of Morocco and Tripoli? Which of the Barbary states fell afterwards into the hands of the Turks? 6. What were these states in the habit

of doing? 7. What was done in 1803? What of Commodore Preble? 8. What of the Philadelphia? What did Decatur do? 9. What attack was made upon Tripoli? What of the bashaw? 10. What was done in the year 1815? What agreement did the Tripolitans and Algerines make? 11. When was Algiers battered? What took place in 1830? How may Algiers now be considered?

CHAP. XLVI.—AFRICA continued.

FABLES AND FACTS ABOUT AFRICA.

- 1. Most of the other regions of Africa can hardly be said to have any history. The inhabitants possess no written records, and cannot tell what events happened to their forefathers.
- 2. The ancients had very curious notions about Africa; for they had visited only the northern parts, and contented themselves with telling incredible stories about the remainder. They supposed that towards the eastern shore of the continent there were people without noses, and others who had three or four eyes apiece.
- 3. In other parts of Africa there were said to be men without heads, but who had eyes in their breasts. Old writers speak also of a nation whose king had a head like a dog. There was likewise said to be a race of giants, twice as tall as common men and women.
- 4. But the prettiest of all these fables is the story of the Pigmies. These little people were said to be about a foot high, and were believed to dwell near the source of the river Nils. Their houses were built something like birds' nests,

and their building materials were clay, feathers, and eggshells.

- 5. These Pigmies used to wage terrible wars with the cranes. An immense army of them would set out on an expedition, some mounted on rams and goats, and others on foot.
- 6 When an army of the Pigmies encountered an army of the cranes, great valour was displayed on both sides. The rranes would rush forward to the charge flapping their wings, and sometimes one of them would snatch up a Pigmy in his beak, and carry him away captive.
- 7. But the Pigmies brandished their little swords and spears, and generally succeeded in putting the enemy to flight. Whenever they had a chance, they would break the eggs of the cranes, and killed the unfledged young ones without mercy.
- 8. Until within a few years, the moderns have not known much more about the interior of Africa than the ancients did. They have now, through Dr. Livingstone's discoveries, acquired considerable knowledge respecting it; but the subject belongs rather to geography than history. Nearly the whole of the central part of Africa, through which the river Niger flows, is called Nigritia, or Negro-land. It is inhabited by several different nations.
- 9. The principal city in Nigritia is called Timbuctoo. No white people have ever visited it, except one Englishman, one American, and one Frenchman. The name of the latter was

- M. Caillié. He was there in 1827, and describes the city as built in the shape of a triangle, and situated eight miles from the Niger. The whole course of the Niger was discovered by the brothers Lander, in 1830.
- 10. The houses of Timbuctoo are only one story high, and are built of round bricks baked in the sun. The poor people and slaves dwell in huts of straw, shaped something like beenives. All around the city, there is an immense plain of vellowish white sand.
- 11. There are English and French settlements on the western coast of Africa. There was formerly a Dutch settlement at the southern extremity of the continent, but the English have had possession of it since the year 1806. This is called Cape Town, and is situated at the Cape of Good Hope.
- QUESTIONS.—1. What of the inhabitants of most parts of Africa?

 2. What were the ideas of the ancients concerning Africa?

 4. What is the prettiest of all these fabulous stories? Give some account of the Pigmies.

 8. What knowledge have the moderns of the interior of Africa? Where is Nigritia? What of the inhabitants?

 9. What of Timbuctoo? Who have visited it? What does M. Caillié say of it?

 Describe it. 11. What of settlements? What of Cape Town? How long have the English had possession of it?

CHAP. XLVII.—AFRICA continued.

1. The most painful part of the history of Africa is that which belongs to the slave trade. From the earliest ages

when human society was yet in a rude state, it was the custom to make slaves of those who were taken in war. This practice was continued in after times, and thus, for thousands of years, slavery was established in nearly all the nations of the earth.

- 2. In 1482 the Portuguese began the horrid traffic, and the English followed in 1563. But, in the year 1833, the parliament of Great Britain passed an act for the total abolition of slavery, and paid twenty millions sterling as compensation to slaveholders, and for other matters connected therewith, and thus abolished slavery in her colonies for ever.
- 3. For at least two hundred years this traffic was carried on to a great extent. The custom was for vessels to go to the western coast of Africa, and purchase of the African princes such prisoners as they had for sale. Sometimes, however, the captains of the vessels would rob the people of their children, or they would go on shore with a body o armed men, and carry away the inhabitants of a who' village.
- 4. The poor negroes thus taken from their homes, a separated for ever from all they held dear, were crowded closely as possible into the vessels, where they were of half-starved, and where they generally suffered from foul disease, or unkind treatment. Such was frequently t distress, that they would jump into the sea, or beat out own brains in despair.

5. Millions of these poor negroes were taken from their homes, and probably more than half of those who entered the ships, from the beginning of the trade to this day, perished before they reached the countries to which they were bound. It is by this cruel trade that slavery has been introduced into various parts of America, and the West Indies.

QUESTIONS.—1. What is painful in the history of Africa? What was the custom in the earliest ages? How was slavery established?

2. When did the Portuguese engage in the slave trade? The English? What compensation did England pay?

3. How long was the traffic carried on? What was the custom? What was done by captains of vessels?

4. Describe the state of the poor negroes.

5. How has slavery been introduced into America and the West Indies?

CHAP. XLVIII.—AFRICA continued.

CHRONOLOGY OF AFRICA.

THE following table exhibits the dates of the most remarkable events in the history of Africa. It may be well to compare this with the chronology of Asia, by which you may see what was doing in that quarter, while these events were tappening in Africa.

					B.C.
Egypt settled by Misraim	•	•			2188
Nitocris reigned queen of Egypt			•		1678
Departure of the Israelites from E	TP	t		٠.	1491

as he may deem proper.

Cambyses conquers Egypt	•	•	•	•		•	• '		
Cambyses destroys Thebes	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
Alexander conquers Egypt	•	•		•	•	•	•		
5									
Death of Cleopatra .	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
Egypt conquered by the San	racen	8	•	•	•	•	•		
Algiers built	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
Mamelukes came into powe		•	•		•	•			
The Portuguese began to tr	affic :	in sla	ves		•		•		
Egypt conquered by the Tu	rks	•	•	•	•	•			
A government founded at A	Algier	s, cal	led th	ie reg	ency	of Al	giers		
The English begin to traffic	in sl	aves		•	•	•	•		
Tunis seized by the Turks				•		•			
Napoleon invades Egypt									
Sir Ralph Abercromby driv	es th	e Fre	nch o	ut of	Egyp	t			
Tripoli attacked by Commo				•	- 67 1				
The English take Cape Tox				tch	•	-			
Commodore Decatur batter					•	•	•		
Lord Exmouth attacks Alg	•	,1013	•	•	•	•	•		
Caillié, a Frenchman, goes		mhna	too	•	•	•	•		
Algiers taken by Marshal I				•	•	•	•		
•					•	•	•		
The Niger explored by Richard and John Lander Abbas Pasha undertakes to expedite the English mails in Egypt									
				igusn	maiu	in E	gypt		
Abd-el-kader set at liberty				•	• .	•	•		
The Caffre chiefs Macom, S		lli, an	d Kr	eili s t	irrend	le r	•		
Revolt of the Arabs of Trip		•	•	•	•	•	•		
Sabbajee, in Gambia, razed				•	•	•	•		
Dr. Livingstone, the travel	•				frica	•			
The Livingstone exploring	expe	dition	saile	d	•	•			
Dr. Livingstone continuing	his u	seful	missi	on	•	•			
The teacher will here add	such	questi	ions v	pon (his sa	ble o	1		



CHAP. XLIX.—EUROPE.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS ON ITS GEOGRAPHY AND OTHER MATTERS.

- 1. EUROPE is considered the third quarter of the globe. It is the smallest in extent, being about one-quarter as large as Asia, one-third as large as Africa, and about one-third larger than the whole United States. It is a part of the eastern continent, and is only separated from Asia by the Ural Mountains. It is separated from Africa by the Mediterranean Sea. At the Strait of Gibraltar, the distance from Europe to Africa is but twenty-one miles.
- 2. But although Europe is the smallest of the four quarters of the globe, it has nearly two hundred and sixty millions of inhabitants, and is much superior to Asia, Africa, and most parts of America in civilization. It abounds in fine cities, fine roads, good houses, useful manufactures, and most other things that are necessary to the comfort and happiness of markind.
- 3. In all parts of Europe, except Turkey, the religion of Jesus Christ prevails. If you were to travel in Asia or Africa, you would meet with no churches, or only now and then one, where the true God is worshipped. But you would see a great many mosques dedicated to the false religion of Mahomet, and a great many temples where the people bow down to idols of wood, stone, or metal.
 - 4. But in Europe the traveller everywhere meets with

churches, and these show that the people are Christians. In Europe, also, there are many colleges, academies, and schools which prove that the people set a high value upon education. It is a fact which I wish you to remember, that in those part of the world where you find churches, you will find that the people are more or less advanced in civilization and the art which render mankind happy.

- 5. This shows us that the Christian religion tends to make people wiser and happier; which is rendered still more clear by the fact, that in all those countries where the Christian religion is unknown, the greater part of the people are ignorant, degraded, and miserable. All false religions tend to injure mankind; the true religion tends to the improvement of mankind. How important is it, then, the every individual should be a real Christian!
- 6. As Europe is the smallest of the four quarters of t'earth, so it was behind Asia and Africa in being settled a civilized. Long after the Assyrian empire had risen to gr power and splendour; long after Babylon and Nineveh flourished on the banks of the Euphrates; long after E had become a mighty kingdom; long after Thebes, Mem and other magnificent cities, had risen upon the bords the Nile;—Europe continued to be inhabited onl wandering tribes of savages.
- 7. Greece was the first portion of Europe that was s

 About the time that Moses led the Israelites out of

 the Greeks began to build houses, found cities, and

from the savage into a more civilised state. By degrees they advanced in knowledge and refinement, and at length became the most polished people in the world.

- 8. Afterwards Rome, situated in Italy, became a mighty city, and the Roman people extended their empire over the greater part of Europe, and the most civilized portions of Asia and Africa. Carthage, Egypt, Greece, Asia Minor, Palestine, Syria, and other Asiatic countries, bowed to the Roman yoke.
- 9. Rome was the most splendid empire that the world has ever seen. But as it crushed other kingdoms beneath its foot, so, in turn, imperial Rome was itself trampled down by the northern nations of Europe. Great ignorance followed this event, and the different nations and tribes of Europe seemed like broken and crushed limbs and members of the great empire, almost without life.
- 10. But the separate fragments of the human family grew up in due time to be separate nations, and these advanced in knowledge until they reached the condition in which we now find them.
- 11. Europe may be divided into two parts, the northern and southern. In the former, the climate is about as cold as it is in the middle and eastern states of America. In the latter, it is about as warm as in the southern states. The Pincipal kingdoms in the northern section of Europe are Russia, Norway, Sweden, Prussia, several German states, Denmark, Holland, Belgium, Switzerland, France, and Great Britain.

- 12. Among the southern kingdoms of Europe are Portuga Spain, Italy, Greece, and Turkey. In these latter countrie the soil is generally fertile, and here grapes, olives, oranges lemons, melons, and other delicious fruits, are abundant.
- 13. Here, too, all the wants of man for food are easily sup plied, and so warm and genial is the climate, that the people do not find it necessary to build tight houses, and put of thick clothing, and provide stores against the winter; yet is remarkable, that where nature has done so much, the people think it hardly necessary to do any thing, and consequently they are less industrious, less comfortable, and less happy than in more cold and severe climates.
- 14. In the northern parts of Europe, the people find is necessary to cultivate the soil with care, and lay up is summer a store of provisions against the long, cold winter They build themselves good houses, they furnish them with many convenient articles, and thus, by their industry as care, they live more happily than those who inhabit the gentler climes of the south.
- 15. The wild animals of Europe resemble those of American states, though they are in some respects differ. The trees, plants, shrubs, and flowers, are also simils those found in America, though not exactly the same.
- 16. If you were to go to America, you would every feel that you were in a strange land, but still many would remind you of your own dear home in Europe if you were to go to Asia or Africa the houses, the fee

ress of the people, and all their manners and customs, would npress you with the idea that you were in a strange land, ery far from your native country.

QUESTIONS.—1. Which is the third quarter of the globe? The smallst? How large is Europe compared with Asia? Africa? The Inited States? How is it separated from Asia? From Africa? How er is the nearest point of Europe from Africa? Boundaries of Europe? direction of Europe from Africa? Asia? Boston? New York? From ou? What ocean lies between Europe and America? Distance from Imerica to Europe? Ans. Three thousand miles. 2. What of Europe? n what does it abound? 3. What of religion in Europe? What of Asia nd Africa? What of churches? Mosques? Temples? 4. What oes the traveller meet with in Europe? What do churches show? Vhat do colleges, schools, &c., show? What do you find where there re churches? 5. What effect has the Christian religion? What of untries where the Christian religion is unknown? What effect have 'se religions? What of the true religion? Why should every person a real Christian? 6. What of Europe? What was the condition of rope until after the empires of Asia and Egypt had long flourished? What part of Europe was first inhabited? About what time did the eks begin to emerge from the savage to the civilized state? Progress e Greeks? 8. What of Rome? What countries became subject to e? 9. What was Rome? What happened to the empire? What red the destruction of the Roman empire? 10. What of the sevetions of Europe? 11. How may Europe be divided? Climate in rn Europe? Southern Europe? Principal nations of northern ?? Direction of each of these from England? 12. The southern ns of Europe? Direction of each of these from England? 13. in southern Europe? Effect of the climate upon the people? it of the northern parts of Europe? Condition of the people? l animals of Europe? Vegetation? 16. What if you were to nerics? Asis? Africa?

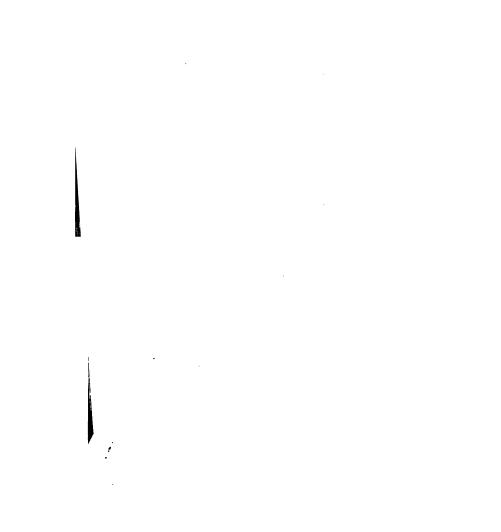
A

CHAP. L.—EUROPE continued.

ABOUT GREECE; WHERE IT IS SITUATED; APPEARANCE OF THE COUNTRY; CLIMATE.

- 1. GREECE is a small strip of land extending into the Mediterranean Sea. It is nearly an equal distance from Asia Minor on the east, and Italy on the west.
- 2. Greece is bounded on the north by Macedonia, which is now a part of Turkey; on every other side it is bounded by the sea. To the south and east of it are a great number of islands, some of which are extremely beautiful.
- 3. Several of them have towns and cities upon them, and one, called Antiparos, is remarkable for a grotto beneath the earth, which, when lighted up with lamps, seems a vast hall, with a thousand pillars and ornaments, which shine like silver.
- 4. Some of the islands of Greece have been thrown up from the sea, and others which formerly existed have disappeared. These strange things have been caused by volcanic fire under the sea. Nothing can be more wonderful than the scenes which have sometimes been exhibited by these convulsions of nature.
- 5. In the southern part of Greece, and among the islands, the climate is as mild as in Virginia in America, and here the country abounds in all sorts of delicious fruits. In the northern part, the climate is somewhat colder.
 - 6. If you were to travel through Greece, you would dis-





at it is naturally very beautiful. Along the shores, ald meet with many little bays and harbours, and ld easily believe that the people living there would ted by the placid water to become seamen. You cordingly find a large portion of the inhabitants to ing people.

the interior of the country you would meet with untains, whose tops in winter are covered with snow. ald meet with smiling valleys, bright rapid streams, p hill-sides covered with olive groves, vineyards, and

u would discover that the people of the present day aiserable villages or towns, all wearing an aspect of and decay. But you would often meet with the temples and other edifices built by the ancient Greeks bree thousand years ago.

ese would show you, that, though the modern Greeks o be a degraded people, yet the former inhabitants of stry were among the most remarkable people that d. It is of these I am now going to tell you.

cns.—1. What is Greece? Direction and distance from c? In what direction is it from Asia Minor? From Italy? gland? Russia? France? From you? 2. How is Greece on the north? East? South? West? What of the islands? of Antiparos? 4. What of volcanic islands? 5. Climate in ern part of Greece? Northern? 6. What of the shores of To what pursuits are many of the present Greeks devoted? the interior of Greece? 8. What of the present inhabitant.

of Greece? What of ruins of temples, &c.? 9. What would these ruins prove?

CHAP. LI.—EUROPE continued.

THE EXTENT OF GREECE. FIRST SETTLEMENT OF THE COUNTRY.

- 1. Though Greece is one of the most famous countries on the face of the globe, it is not very extensive; its boundaries varied at different times, but it never exceeded four hundred miles in length, and about one hundred and fifty in width.
- 2. I must now carry you back to the first settlement of this country, which took place more than four thousand years ago. When the human race was scattered from the tower of Babel, it is supposed that the family of Japheth, Noah's youngest son, travelled from Asia into Europe. As Greece lay nearer to the land of Shinar than the other parts of Europe, it was probably settled first.
- 3. The Greeks themselves believed that their ancestors had sprung up out of the earth. The first inhabitants were mere savages. They dwelt in wretched huts, and fed on acorns. Their garments were the skins of wild beasts.
- 4. There are so many fables about the early history of Greece, that I shall pass very briefly over the first three or four centuries. Cecrops, an Egyptian, seems to have been the first who introduced civilization among the Greeks. He with a number of his countrymen, and founded the city.

Athens. This event took place about fifteen hundred and y-six years before the Christian era.

- i. Thirty or forty years afterwards, Cadmus came from cenicia, and built the city of Thebes. He was one of the atest benefactors of the Greeks, for he taught them the tivation of the vine, the manufacture of metals, and the of the alphabet.
- 6. Other parts of Greece were also settled by colonies from eign nations. The country then consisted of a number of all kingdoms, which had little or no connexion with one other. These were frequently at war among themselves.
- 7. Twelve of these little kingdoms, or states, soon united emselves into a confederacy. Their deputies held a meeting ice a-year, in order to consult respecting the welfare of country. They were called the council of the Amphic
 - s. By means of this council, the different states were at peace with each other, and were united against n enemies.

one of the most famous events of Grecian history was the autic expedition. It is said that a prince named Jason, company of his friends, sailed to Colchis, which lay dof the Black Sea. Their object was to find a ful ram with a fleece of gold; but the whole story sed by some to be a fable.

e Trojan war was still more famous than the expessearch of the golden fleece. Troy was a large city static side of the Hellespont, which is a strait now

called the Dardanelles. Paris, the son of the Trojan king, had stolen away the wife of Menelaus, a Greek prince.

- 10. All the Grecian kings combined together to punish this offence. They sailed to Troy in twelve hundred vessels, and took the city after a siege of ten years. This event is supposed to have occurred eleven hundred and eighty-three years before the Christian era.
- 11. But most historians are of opinion that the Trojan war was a much less important affair than Homer has represented it to be. Poets do not always tell the truth; and Homer was the father and chief of poets. He was a blind old man, and used to wander about the country, reciting his verses.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the extent of Greece? Its greatest length? Width? 2. How long since Greece was first settled? Who are supposed to have been the first inhabitants of Greece? In which direction was Greece from the land of Shinar? From Egypt? 3. What did the Greeks believe of their ancestors? What of the first inhabitants of Greece? 4. Who first introduced civilization among the Greeks? What city was founded by Cecrops? When did this take place? In what part of Greece was Athens? Does Athens still exist? Ass. Yes; but the modern town is very mean, compared with ancient Athens. The ruins around it are very splendid. 5. What of Cadmus! In which direction was Thebes from Athens? N.B. You must remember that there was a famous city in Egypt named Thebes. 6. How were other parts of Greece settled? What of Greece at this time? 7. What did twelve of the Grecian states do? What of the Amphictycaic council? What effect had this council? 8. What of the Argonastic expedition? 9. What of the Trojan war? 11. What of Homer?

CHAP. LII.—EUROPE continued.

THE GRECIAN LAWGIVERS.

NE of the principal states of Greece was called Sparta, edsemon. It was founded by Lelex, 1516 B.C. It d a code of laws from Lycurgus, who lived nearly nturies before Christ. He was strict and severe, but ad upright.

yeurgus ordered that all the Spartans should eat toat public tables. The reason of this law was that the izens might not feast luxuriously at home, but that id poor should fare alike. As for the children, they ot allowed any thing to eat, unless they could steal it. icked custom was adopted with the idea that it would up the young Spartans to be cunning in war.

n order that the people might not be avaricious, sus forbade any gold and silver to be coined into. All the money was made of iron. It could not be saily carried in the pocket, for a Spartan dollar weighed the as fifty pounds.

he children were all brought up at the public expense. vere allowed to stand near the dinner-tables and listen wise conversation of their parents. The Spartans were axious that their children should abhor drunkenness. They showed them the disgusting effects of this pernivice, by causing their slaves to drink intoxicating

- liquors. When the children had witnessed the ridiculous conduct of the drunken slaves, they were careful never to reduce themselves to so degraded a condition.
- 6. When Lycurgus had completed his code of laws, he left Sparta. Previous to his departure, he made the people swear that they would violate none of the laws till he should return. But he was resolved never to return.
- 7. He committed suicide by starving himself to death; and his ashes were thrown into the sea by his command, so that the Spartans might not bring back his dead body. Thus, as Lycurgus never could return, the Spartans were bound by their oath to keep his laws for ever.
- 8. They did keep them during five hundred years; and, all that time, the Spartans were a brave, patriotic, and powerful people. Many of their customs, however, belonged rather t a savage than a civilized nation.
- 9. Athens had two celebrated lawgivers, Draco and Solo The laws of Draco were so extremely severe that they we said to be written with blood, instead of ink. He punish even the smallest offences with death. His code was supplished.
- 10. Solon's laws were much milder. Almost all of t were wise and good laws, and would have been advantag to the people. But the Athenians had so much fickle and levity, that they were continually proposing alters them.
 - 11. Athens was at this time a republic; which is

mow, a government of the people; but soon after Solon had nade his laws, the supreme power was usurped by Pisistratus, in ambitious citizen. He and his sons ruled Athens fifty years.

QUESTIONS.—Where was Sparta? Direction of Sparta from Athens? From Thebes? 1. What of Sparta? Laws? When did Lycurgus live? What was his character? 2. Why did Lycurgus wish the Spartans to eat in public? What of the children? Why were they encouraged to steal? 3. What laws were made respecting money? What of a Spartan dollar? 4. How were children brought up? 5. How were they taught to abhor drunkenness? 6. What did Lycurgus make the Spartans swear before he went away? 7. What was the fate of the Spartan lawgiver? 8. How long did the Spartans keep his laws? 9. What of Draco and Solon? The laws of Draco? 10. What of Solon's laws? The Athenians? 11. What was the government of Athens? Who usurped the supreme power? What of the government of Athens for fifty years?

CHAP. LIII.—EUROPE continued.

WAR WITH PERSIA.

- 1. About five centuries before the Christian era, Darius, ing of Persia, made war against Greece. His generals waded the country with a fleet of six hundred vessels, and alf a million of men. There were scarcely any troops to piose them, except ten thousand Athenians.
- 2. Darius felt so certain of conquering Greece, that he ad sent great quantities of marble with his army. He remaided that it should be carved into pillars and triumphal

arches, and other trophies of victory. He had also emanded his generals to send all the Athenians to Persichains.

- 3. The Athenian general was named Miltiades. He his little army against the immense host of the Persians, encountered them at Marathon. This was a small town the sea-shore, about fifteen miles north-east of Athens.
- 4. While their countrymen were fighting, the aged peo the women and children, remained at Athens in the utu anxiety. If Miltiades were to lose the battle, they in that the Persians would chase his routed army into the c and burn it to ashes.
- 5. Suddenly a soldier, covered with blood ran into market-place of the city. He was sorely wounded; but had come all the way from the army to bring the news. was ghastly pale, and the people feared that the Persians! won the day, and the soldier was a fugitive.
- 6. They gathered around him, eagerly asking about I tiades and the army. The soldier leaned heavily upon spear. He seemed too much exhausted to give utterance the news he had brought.
- 7. But, exerting all his strength, he cried out, "Rejo my countrymen! The victory is ours!" And, with t exulting shout, he fell down dead.
- 8. The Athenians showed themselves ungrateful to brave Miltiades. All that he demanded as a reward rescuing his native land from slavery, was a crown of d

ich was esteemed a mark of honour among the But they refused to give him one; and he was a condemned, on some frivolous pretence, to pay a y talents. As Miltiades had not so much money ald he perished in prison.

r the battle of Marathon, the Persians were driven eece, and Darius died while he was preparing to country again. His son Xerxes renewed the war. tory of Persia, I have already told of the invasion by Xerxes, with two millions of men, and of the se which befel him there.

is.—Which way is Persia from Greece? 1. When did Darius gainst Greece? What of the Persian force? The Athenian? marble? What did Darius command? 3. Who was the meral? Where was Marathon? 4. What of those who re-Athens? 5. What messenger was sent from Marathon? is Marathon from Athens? From Sparta? 7. What news senger bring? 8. How did the Athenians treat Miltiades? . What of the Persians after the battle of Marathon? What Xerxes? What may you read in the History of Persia?

CHAP. LIV.—EUROPE continued.

AFFAIRS OF ATHEMS.

ER the Persian war, Cimon, Aristides, and Pericles hree principal men of Athens. Pericles at length e chief person in the republic. Athens was never

more flourishing than while he was at the head government.

- 2. He adorned the city with magnificent edifice rendered it famous for learning, poetry, and beautiful of art, such as temples, statues, and paintings. B Athenians were fickle, and generally ungrateful to public benefactors; and they sometimes ill treated Pe
- 3. In the latter part of his administration, a terrible broke out in Athens. Many of the citizens fell dow died, while passing through the streets. Dead bodies heaps, one upon another.
- 4. The illustrious Pericles was one of the victims pestilence. When he lay at the point of death, his praised him for the glorious deeds which he had ac "It is my greatest glory," replied Pericles, "that of my acts have caused a citizen of Athens to mourning."
- 5. Three years before the death of Pericles, a we commenced between Athens and Sparta. These were the two principal states of Greece, and they had lipealous of each other's greatness. A fierce war followhich all the states of that part of Greece called Penesus, which is now the Morea, were engaged. This strife lasted twenty-eight years.
- 6. In the course of this war, Alcibiades made a conspagure among the Athenians. He was the handsome most agreeable man in Athens. At one period he was

y the people, and possessed almost unlimited power. as ambitious, and destitute of principle.

was the cause of much trouble, not only in his y, but all over Greece. At last, when he had lost will of every body, he retired to a small village in in Asia Minor, and dwelt there with a woman imandra.

enemies sent a party of assassins to murder him. fire to the house in which he lived. Alcibiades we man, and he rushed out sword in hand, to fight sins. But they stood at a distance, and pierced him with javelins. They then went away, leaving to bury him.

Peloponnesian war brought great misfortunes upon nians. The Spartans conquered them, and levelled of the city; and while this work of destruction was ward, the victors caused gay tunes of music to be

e Athenians were now placed under the governthirty Spartan captains. These were called the yrants of Athens; but they held their power only rs. Thrasybulus, a patriotic Athenian, then incited rymen to regain their freedom.

e thirty tyrants were expelled; and Thrasybulus rded with a wreath made of two twigs of an olive :h, as I have before said, was esteemed a great mark

. Athens again became prosperous, and its former

government was restored in the year 403 before the tian era.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who were the three principal men of Athens! of Pericles? 2. What did he do for Athens? What was the character of the Athenians? 3. What of the plague? 4. W Pericles say on his death-bed? 5. What was begun three year the death of Pericles? What of Athens and Sparta? How long Peloponnesian war last? What part of Greece was called Pelopor What states were included in the Peloponnesus? Ass. Arcadıs nia, Messenia, Elis, Argolis, Achaia, Sicyon, and Corinth. 6. V Alcibiades? 7. What happened to him? 8. How did he die? 9 of the Peloponnesian war? Sparta? 10. What of the thirty ty Thrasybulus? 11. How was he rewarded for expelling the tyrants? What took place 403 B.C.

CHAP. LV .- EUROPE continued.

BEGINNING OF THE THEBAN WAR.

- 1. Nor long after this period, Thebes became the distinguished city of Greece. It was the capital c kingdom of Bœotia. A war between Thebes and & originated in the following manner:—Phœbidas, a Sigeneral, had wrongfully taken possession of Cadm fortress belonging to Thebes. The Thebans demande it should be given up; but the Spartans garrisoned it strand resolved to hold it as their own.
- 2. A brave and patriotic young man of Thebes, a Pelopidas, contrived a scheme to get back the fortress.

- i eleven companions put on their breastplates, and girded air swords around them, but clothed themselves in women's ements over their armour. In this garb they went to the te of Cadmæa, and were admitted.
- 3. The magistrates and Spartan officers were assembled at plendid festival. Archias, the Spartan commander, sat at a head of the table. He and his friends were wholly occured with the enjoyment of the banquet. They took scarcely y notice when the twelve figures in female attire entered a hall.
- 4. At the moment when the mirth and festivity of the artans was at its height, the strangers tore off their female rb. Instead of twelve women, there stood twelve young rriors. The light of the festal torches flashed back from eir bright breastplates. Their naked swords were in their nds.
- 5. Pelopidas and his eleven companions immediately acked the Spartan banqueters. Their surprise hindered Spartans from making any effectual resistance. Archias I many others were struck dead almost before they could a from the table.
- 6. Thus the Thebans gained possession of the fortress. t Sparta immediately began a war against Thebes. Many the other states of Greece lent their assistance to the artans. It appeared probable that the Thebans would be ordered and entirely ruined.
- 7. But they had a brave and skilful general named

Epaminondas. With only six thousand Thebans, he encountered twenty-five thousand Spartans, commanded by Cleombrotus, their king. The battle was fought at Leuctra. The Thebans gained a complete victory, and killed Cleombrotus and fourteen hundred of his men.

QUESTIONS.—Direction of Thebes from Sparta? From Marathon?

1. What of Thebes? In what part of Greece was Bootia? How did the war between Thebes and Sparta originate? 2. What of Pelopidas? Describe the scheme of Pelopidas and his companions. 5. Did this bold undertaking succeed? 6. What state made war upon Thebes? Other states? 7. What of Epaminondas? His army? The Spartan force? Who was the Spartan leader? Where is Leuctra? Direction from Thebes? Sparta? Athens? Did the Thebans gain the victory?

CHAP. LVI.—EUROPE continued.

SEQUEL OF THE THEBAN WAR.

- 1. EPAMINONDAS, the Theban general, was one of the best men that lived in ancient times. His private virtues were equal to his patriotism and valour. It is said of him that a falsehood was never known to come from his lips; one of the highest praises that can be bestowed on any man.
- 2. It might be supposed that the Thebans would have felt the utmost gratitude towards Epaminondas, whose valour had saved his country; and it is true that the most virtuous part of the people honoured him according to his merits; but I am

erry to tell you that a great and good man is very apt to ave enemies.

- 3. His virtues and his greatness are a reproach to the icious and the mean, and therefore they hate him, and seek o destroy him. So it happened with Epaminondas, and so thas happened in all ages.
- 4. Epaminondas had many enemies among the Thebans. They at first attempted to have him sentenced to death, because he had kept the command of the army longer than the law permitted. But as his only motive had been to preserve Thebes from ruin, his judges concluded to let him live.
- 5. Nevertheless, in order to disgrace him as much as possible, he was appointed overseer of the scavengers who cleaned the streets of Thebes. Epaminondas was not mortified; for he knew that the Thebans might disgrace themselves by such ingratitude, but could not disgrace him. He would, he said, show them that, if the office sometimes gave dignity to the man, the man could also give dignity to the office. He therefore set about discharging the duties of his new employment, and this great and victorious general was accordingly seen cleaning away the filth from the streets.
- 6. But the war was not yet at an end; and the Thebans soon found that they could not do without Epaminondas. They made him throw away his broom, and take the sword gain. He was placed at the head of the army, with greater ower than he had possessed before.

- 7. So long as Epaminondas was their general, the Thebans were the most powerful people of Greece. The last victory that he gained was at Mantinea. But it cost the Thebans dear; for while Epaminondas was fighting in the thickest of the battle, a Spartan soldier thrust a javelin into his breast.
- 8. The Thebans and Spartans fought around the wounded Epaminondas, the latter wishing to put an end to his life, and the former to bear him from the field. The Spartans were driven back, and some of his soldiers carried Epaminondas in their arms to his tent.
- 9. The javelin remained sticking in the wound, for the surgeons declared that he would die the moment that it should be drawn out. Epaminondas lay in great pain; but he thought little of his own agony, and was anxious only for the success of his countrymen.
- 10. At last a messenger came from the battle-field, and told him that the Spartans were flying, and the Thebash had won a glorious victory. "Then all is well!" said Epaminondas. As he spoke, he drew the javelin out of his wound, and instantly expired.
- 11. This event took place in the year 363 before the Christian era. After the death of Epaminondas, the Thebans were no longer formidable to the rest of the Greeks.

QUESTIONS.—I. Character of Epsminondas? 2. Were the Thebest Erzieful to him? 3. Why do the wicked hate a great and good mas? What did the Thebans attempt? 5. How did they attempt to dispute paminondas? Was he mortified? What did he do? 6. What did the hebans find? What did they do? 7. What of Thebes while Epamiondas was general? Which was his last victory? How was he wounded? There was Mantinea? Direction from Thebes? Sparta? Athens? Iarathon? 8. By whom was he carried from the field? What of the velin? 9. Describe the death of Epaminondas. 10. When did this appen? What of the Thebans after the death of Epaminondas?

CHAP. LVII.—EUROPE continued.

GRECIAN RELIGION OR MYTHOLOGY.

- 1. My history has now reached the period when the glory of Greece was at its height; and I shall soon have to speak of its decline. Before doing so, I think it proper to give a slight account of the religion of the Greeks, and some other interesting particulars.
- 2. The Greeks believed that there were three classes of deities, the Celestial, the Marine, and the Infernal. The first, as they fancied, dwelt in the sky, the second in the sea, and the third in the dreary regions under the earth. Besides these, there were inferior kinds of deities, who haunted the woods, or lived in fountains and streams.
- 3. The deities whose home was in the sky, were Jupiter, Apollo, Mars, Mercury, Bacchus, Vulcan, Juno, Minerva, Venus, Diana, Ceres, and Vesta. The greatest of all the ods was Jupiter. When it thundered and lightened, the breeks supposed that Jupiter was angry, and was flinging is thunderbolts about

- 4. The Olympic games were instituted by the Greeks i honour of Jupiter. These games were celebrated every for years. They consisted of races on foot and on horseback and in chariots, and of leaping, wrestling, and boxing. I was considered a very great honour for a person to gain prize at the Olympic games.
- 5. Apollo was the son of Jupiter. He was supposed to be the driver of the sun, which had four horses harnessed to it and went round the world every day. It was pretty much like a modern stage coach, except that it carried no passenger
- 6. Besides being the coachman of the sun, Apollo wa likewise the god of music and poetry, and of medicine, and all the fine arts. He also presided over the famous oracle a Delphi, whither people used to come from all parts of the world to find out the events of futurity.
- 7. Mars was the god of war, and Mercury the god thieves, and Bacchus the god of drunkards, and Vulcan god of blacksmiths. Vulcan seems to have been one of best and most useful of the heathen deities, for he was excellent blacksmith and worked hard at his anvil.
- 8. Venus was the goddess of beauty. Her statues made in the form of a beautiful woman. She had a named Cupid, who was a mischievous little deity, and to shoot at people with a bow and arrow.
- 9. Neptune was the chief of the marine deities.

 supposed that he had a huge scallop-shell for a charithat his horses had the tails of fishes. Whenever

i

- r the waves, a tribe of sea-monsters, called Tritons, surnded his chariot.
- O. Pluto was the deity who presided in the infernal ions. He used to sit on a throne of brimstone, looking y stern and awful. In one hand he held a sceptre, and the other, two keys. Besides these gods, the Greeks eved in heroes, who were half gods and half men. Of se, Hercules was very famous for his wonderful feats of ngth.
- 1. Unless I were to write a large book on this one sub, it would be impossible for me to tell you all about the ciful gods of ancient Greece, and the strange, foolishings they are said by the Greek poets to have done. The ncipal use of such a book would be, to show how necessary was that the true God should reveal himself to men, since y could contrive no better religion than these absurd, ugh sometimes amusing, fables.
- 2. Ridiculous as their deities were, the Greeks honoured m with magnificent temples. No other edifices ever built mortal hands have been so beautiful. Some of the churches were own country are now built on the plan of the old Gre1 temples.
- 3. The Grecian sculptors carved marble statues of their ties. These images were so grand, and beautiful, and nified, that it seems as if the artists must have seen such wenly creatures somewhere, or else they never could have ved their likenesses.

QUESTIONS.—1. At what period was the glory of Greece at its heigh 2. In what deities did the Greeks believe? What were the three classes Where did each of them dwell? What of inferior deities? 3. Who we the celestial deities? What of Jupiter? 4. What of the Olympic game 5. What of Apollo? His chariot? 6. What more can you tell of Apollo? What of Mars? Mercury? Bacchus? Vulcan? 8. What of Vens Cupid? 9. What of Neptune? Where did he dwell? How is he represented? 10. Who was Pluto? Where did he dwell? What of hin 12. How did the Greeks honour their false gods? What of temples 13. What can you say of the Grecian statues?

CHAP. LVIII.—EUROPE continued.

THE GRECIAN PHILOSOPHERS.

- 1. THE Greek philosophers were men who pretended to b wiser than mankind in general. There were a great many of them, who lived in various ages. I shall speak of some the most remarkable, in this and the following chapters.
- 2. The philosopher Thales was born between six seven hundred years before the Christian era. In his tithere were seven philosophers, who were called the sewise men of Greece; and Thales was considered the woof them all.
- 3. One night, while this great philosopher was tak walk, he looked upward to contemplate the stars.

 much interested in this occupation, he strayed out of hi and tumbled into a ditch. An old woman who lived amily ran and helped him out, all covered with mud.

ales," said she, "I advise you not to have your the stars, while your feet are on the earth!" hink that the old woman was the wiser philotwo.

philosopher was named Pittacus. He was the ce man on record; for, though there were many us wines in his country, he never drank any er.

osopher Bias lived in the year 617 B.C. Some of found a golden wase in the belly of a large vase were engraved these words—"To the was therefore sent to Bias, who was thought to wise as any body.

s did not care for gold or riches. When his is taken by the enemy, all the other inhabitants to hide their most valuable property. Bias is need no trouble. "Riches are but playthings," y only real treasures are my own thoughts." des was a very wonderful philosopher. My not put too much faith in the story which I am hem. It is as follows:—One day when Epioung, his father sent him in search of a sheep

After finding the sheep Epimenides entered a ayside, and sat down, for he was tired, and the hot. In this cave he fell asleep, and slept a ger than he intended.

o less than fifty-seven years before he awoke.

When he closed his eyes he was a young man, but ! old and grey when he opened them again. He le cave and went back to the town where he had fo lived.

9. But his father was long ago dead; his brothe had been a child when he went away, was an old man and the town was full of houses and people that he has seen before. These were certainly very wonderful cl considering that they had all happened while Epin was taking a nap.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who were the Greek philosophers? 2. W Thales? Where was he born? What of the seven wise men was Thales considered? 3. Relate an anecdote of him. 4. V Pittacus? 5. When did Bias live? Tell the story of the vi What did Bias think of riches? 7. Tell the story of Epimenic

CHAP. LIX.—EUROPE continued.

THE GRECIAN PHILOSOPHERS CONTINUED.

- 1. The philosopher Pythagoras believed that when died, their soul migrated or passed into the bodies of s or birds. He affirmed that his own soul had once li the body of a peacock, but my reader will hardly creasertion.
- 2. Heraclitus of Ephesus was called the dark philo because all his sayings were like riddles. He though

was wisdom which could be understood by common

is wise man considered the world as such a wretched at he never could look at any body without shedding He is often called the weeping philosopher. At last d to a cave among the mountains, where he lived on id roots, and was as miserable as his heart could

mocritus, who lived not long after Heraclitus, was lifferent sort of philosopher. He is often called the philosopher. Instead of shedding tears, he laughed nually that his townsmen thought him mad. And, he truth, I think so too.

e philosopher Anaxagoras believed that the sky le of stones, and that the sun was a great mass of iron. This may seem very strange, but in these times the people did not know the shape of the

e philosopher Empedocles went and lived near mount n Sicily. He was a man of very grave and majestic ice, and every body knew him, because he used to crown of laurel on his head. People generally edged him to be a very wise man; but, not content s, he wanted to be thought a god.

disappeared, and was never seen again. The people for granted that he had ascended to heaven. But

shortly afterwards, there was an eruption of Mount Ætna and an old shoe was thrown out of the crater. On examina tion, it was found out that this shoe had belonged to Empedocles. It was now easy to guess at the fate of the foolist old man. He had thrown himself into the crater of the blazing volcano, in order that the people might think him: god, and that he had gone to heaven. Some of my reader will find it hard to believe this.

- 8. Socrates was one of the wisest and best philosophers of Greece. Indeed he was so wise and good that the profligate Athenians could not suffer him to live. They therefore compelled him to drink poison.
- 9. Diogenes was the queerest philosopher of all. He was called Diogenes the Dog—either because he lived like a dog or because he had a currish habit of snarling at every body.
- 10. His doctrine was, that the fewer enjoyments a man had, the happier he was likely to be. This philosopher was about barefoot, dressed in very shabby clothes, and carrying a bag, a jug, and a staff. He afterwards got a great test, which he used to lug about with him all day long, and step in it at night.
- and found him mending his tub. It happened that Alarander stood in such a manner as to shade Diogenes from the sun, and he felt cold. "Diogenes," said Alexander, "yes must have a very hard time of it, living in a tub. Can I is

thing to better your condition?"—" Nothing, except to out of my sunshine," replied Diogenes, who disdained accept any other favour from the greatest monarch in the rld.

What of Democritus? How did he differ from Heraclitus? 5. What Anaxagoras believe? Where did Empedocles live? What did he he to be thought? 7. What means did he take to make the people ik him a god? 8. What of Socrates? His death? 9. What of genes? His doctrines? How did he live? 10. Tell an anecdote Diogenes.

CHAP. LX.—EUROPE continued.

METHING MORE ABOUT PHILOSOPHERS. ABOUT THE GREEK POETS.

- 1. I could tell you much more about the Grecian philophers, but I have not room. I must not forget, however, to ention Plato, who was born 429 years B.C., and was for the years the pupil of Socrates; and Aristotle, who was a spil of Plato, educated Alexander the Great, and founded school of philosophers, who were called Peripatetics, or alking philosophers. They were so called because Aristotle alked about while teaching his doctrines to his pupils.
- 2. This man, Plato, like many other Grecian philosophers, as a sort of schoolmaster, and many young men came to be night by him. He delivered his lectures in a grove near thems, called Academia, from which circumstance the word ademy has since been applied to schools.

- 3. So great was his reputation, that the first ye from various parts of the world came to be his pur had very sublime ideas of religion, virtue and truth delivered these with so much sweetness and eloque his listeners were enchanted. The Greeks spoke of Plato the Divine.
- 4. There were other celebrated philosophers in G. I must leave them now, and tell you of the poets. the best poet of ancient times, perhaps the best that e I have already mentioned. When this great man whow he lived, or where he died, are matters of unce

'Seven noble cities strive for Homer dead, Through which the living Homer begg'd his bread."

- 5. The general opinion is, that he lived about 300 B.C., and was a wandering minstrel, who w from place to place reciting and singing his ve Iliad and Odyssey, his two great poems, were conseparate parts, and, but for the care of Lycurgus, to have had them collected, would doubtless have They were afterwards arranged in their prese Pisistratus. They celebrated the actions of imaginary gods, and are full of the deepest interpretation.
- 6. There were a multitude of other poet some of whom acquired great celebrity. Am Anacreou, who wrote about love and wine composed sublime odes; and Theoritus, washepherds and shepherdesses, who lived:

re were also many poets who wrote pieces for the stage hylus, Sophocles, and Euripides, are the greatest of the ic writers.

You already know that the Greeks were in many rets very ignorant, and entertained many absurd notions. 7 did not know that the earth is a great globe or ball, it turns round every day, and that the sun, moon, and 1, are also great worlds moving about in the sky.

You would not, therefore, expect in their poetry to find useful information about geography or astronomy. Yet lived in a beautiful country, and their mountains, ams, and valleys, were often the subject of their songs.

Their religion, too, though full of absurdity, furnished rials for the poets. They described the gods and gods as dwelling upon the mountains, or skipping along the vs., or gliding amidst the waters. Thus, every object ture derived a new interest from the vivid fancy of the

To this day the verses of these poets are remembered, to places mentioned by them are often visited by trs, who look upon them with emotion, on account of utiful fictions they inspired more than two thousand of

ons.—1. When was Plate born? Whose pupil was he? What e? 2. What else of Plate? 3. What of his ideas and his typessing them? 4. What of Homer? 5. When is it super lived? How did he live? What of his poems? 6. What o? Pindar? Theoritus? Other poets? 7. What did

the Greeks not know? 8. What of the poetry of the ancient Greeks? 9. What use did the Grecian poets make of their mythology? What effect had the poems of the ancient Greeks? Are the poems of the ancient Greeks still remembered? 10. Are the places mentioned is those poems rendered more interesting to travellers of the present time who visit them?

CHAP. LXI.—EUROPE continued.

ABOUT THE MODE OF LIFE AMONG THE ANCIENT GREEKS.

- 1. But we must now leave poets and philosophers, and take a view of the private life of the ancient Greeks. The men wore an inner garment, called a tunic, over which they threw a mantle; their shoes or sandals were bound to their feet by thongs or ropes. In ancient times the Greeks went with their heads uncovered, but afterwards they used hats, which were tied under the chin.
- 2. The women always covered their heads with a veil which came down upon the shoulders. They wore in their hair golden grasshoppers, and ear-rings were suspended from their ears. The rest of their dress consisted of a white tenis fastened with a broad sash, and descending in folds down their heels.
- 3. The Greeks usually made four meals a day: the morning meal, which was taken at the rising of the sun; the set mid-day; the afternoon repast; and the supper, which was the principal meal, as it was taken after the business of the

- 4. In the early ages, the food of the Greeks was the fruits the earth, and their drink, water; the flesh of animals was troduced at a later period. This brought on the luxuries the table, and some of the cities of Greece became renowned r producing excellent cooks. The Spartans, as we have fore mentioned, ate at public tables. Their chief food consted of black broth.
- 5. The poor sometimes fed on grasshoppers, and the stremities of leaves. In general, the Greeks were very fond of flesh. Their usual drink was water, either hot or cold, ut most commonly the latter, which was sometimes cooled with ica. Wines were very generally used, and even pertured wines were introduced at the tables of the rich.
 - 6. Before the Greeks went to an entertainment, they ushed and anointed themselves; when they arrived, the tertainer took them by the hand, or kissed their lips, hands, see, or feet, as they deserved more or less respect. It must observed concerning the guests, that men and women were ar invited together.

They sat at meat either quite upright, or leaning a little ward; but in more degenerate ages, they adopted the rn custom of reclining on beds or couches. As soon as rovisions were set on the table, and before the guests to eat, a part was offered as a sort of first-fruits to the

hey had a custom similar to ours, of drinking healths,

not only to those present, but to their absent friends; every name they poured a little wine on the ground was called a libation.

- 9. The entertainment being ended, a hymn was the gods. After this, the company was amused with dancing, and mimicry, or whatever could tend to excit or cheerfulness.
- 10. The houses of the rich were built of stone, an of them were highly ornamented. The majority of the however, lived in huts made of rough stone laid in cla
- 11. In war, the Greeks fought with various w Some of the soldiers had bows and arrows; some had or spears which they hurled with great force and precaim, and some had slings with which they threw They usually carried shields for warding off the weatheir enemies.
- 12. You must recollect that, in these ancient time powder was not known, and rifles and cannon were fore not in use. In battle the warriors always engalists conflict, foot to foot, and breast to breast. The was therefore very exciting, and the men usually foug furious courage.
- 13. As mankind were very much given to make upon one another, it was the custom in all countries round the cities with high walls, for defence. This p indeed, continued for many ages; and, if you travel, y

that the principal cities of France, Germany, and many er countries, are still secured in this way.

- 4. In modern times, when an army attacks a city, it ters down the walls with cannon shot; or, by undermining m, placing gunpowder beneath, and then setting it on
- . But in the olden times of Greece, the warriors used tering-rams, consisting of heavy beams with ponderous ness at one end. These were driven by main strength inst the walls, and thus, after many efforts, they were nolished.

tuestions.—1. What did the men wear among the ancient Greeks? ir shoes? Head-dress? 2. Head-dress of the women? What aments did they wear? The rest of their dress? 3. The meals of Greeks? 4. What was the food of the Greeks in early ages? t of flesh? Luxuries of the table? What of the Spartans? 5. t of the poor? Were the Greeks fond of meat for food? What eir drink? Wine? 6. What of entertainments? Men and n? 7. How did they sit at table? How do the people of Asia able? Did the Greeks adopt this Asiatic custom? What was efore beginning to eat? 8. Drinking healths? Libation? 9. ollowed the eating? 10. What of the habitations of the rich? poor? 11. What weapons were used by the Greeks in war? at of gunpowder? How did the warriors engage one another t? 13. What was the custom regarding the cities? What seen in Europe? 14. How do the moderns attack a walled ow did the ancients destroy the walls of a city?

CHAP. LXII.—EUROPE continued.

PHILIP OF MACEDON CONQUERS GREECE.

- 1. I SHALL now resume the history of Greece, at the where I left off. The reader will recollect that I has finished speaking of the Theban war.
- 2. Not long after the close of that war, the states of became involved in another, which was generally call Sacred War. The people of Phocis had been sent by the Amphictyonic council, to pay a heavy fire ploughing a field which belonged to the temple of A at Delphi.
- 3. Rather than pay the fine, the Phocians resolved to war. The people of Athens, Sparta, and Achaia s the Phocians. The Thebans, Locrians, and Thessalian the part of the Amphictyonic council, and Philip, & Macedon, was solicited to fight on the same side.
- 4. The kingdom of Macedon is numbered by some rians among the states of Greece; but others conside separate country. Although it was founded about a dred years before this period, it had never been very ful till Philip mounted the throne.
- 5. Philip was ambitious and warlike. No sooner I marched his army into Greece, than he determined to himself ruler of the whole country. The Greeks we now so valiant as they had been; and there was no w

idas, Miltiades, or Epaminondas, to lead them to

e man that gave Philip more trouble than any other, nosthenes, an Athenian. He was one of the most orators that ever lived; and he uttered such terrible against Philip, that the Athenians were incited to m in battle. It is from these orations against the nian king that severe speeches have since been called z.

t the Athenians were beaten at Chæronea, in the before the Christian era. Thenceforward, Philip ed the affairs of Greece till his death. Perhaps, after as a better ruler than the Greeks could have found hemselves.

it he had many vices, and, among the rest, that of to excess. One day, just after he had risen from a he decided a certain law-case unjustly. The losing ried out, "I appeal from Philip drunk, to Philip And, sure enough, when Philip got sober, he the other way.

poor woman, who had some business with Philip, vain to obtain an audience. He put her off from one nother, saying that he had no leisure to attend to her. have no leisure to do justice, you have no right to be said the woman. Philip was struck with the truth the woman said, and he became more attentive to his a king.

- 10. He lived only about two years after he had conquered the Greeks. There was a young nobleman, named Pausanias a captain of the guard, who had been injured by one of Philip's relations. As Philip would not punish the offender, Pausanias resolved that he himself should die.
- 11. On the day of the marriage of Philip's daughter, the king was entering the public theatre, where the nuptial festivities were to be celebrated. At this moment Pausaniar rushed forth, with his sword drawn, and stabbed him to the heart.
- 12. The Athenians greatly rejoiced at the news of Philip's death. They publicly voted that a golden crown should be given to Pausanias, as a reward for having murdered him. All the other states of Greece likewise revolted against the power of Macedon.

QUESTIONS.—2. What of the Sacred war? Cause of it? Which way was Delphi from Athens? Phocis? Thessaly? 3. What states fought on the side of the Phocians? What on the side of the Amphictyonic council? On which side did Philip, king of Macedon, fight?

4. What of Macedon? Where was it situated? When was it founded? Which way did Philip's army march from Macedon to Greece? 5. What of Philip? On what did he determine? What of the Greeks at this time? 6. What of Demosthenes? What effect had his oratory on the Athenians? What is the origin of the word philippic? 7. Where were they beaten? When did the battle take place? Where is Charonea? Direction from Thebes? Athens? Sparta? How long did Philip rale Greece? 8. What of Philip? Relate some anecdotes of him?

10. What of Pausanias? Describe the death of Philip. 12. What did the Athenians do? Other states?

CHAP. LXIII — EUROPE continued.

CONQUESTS OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT.

rt the new king of Macedon, though only twenty years well worthy to sit on his father's throne. He was ler, afterwards surnamed the Great. Young as he had already given proofs of the valour which so soon m conqueror of the world.

exander subdued the Grecian states in the course of paign. He was then declared generalissimo of the and undertook a war against Persia. The army le led against that country consisted of thirty-five 1 men.

crossed the Hellespont, and marched through Asia towards Persia. Before reaching its borders, he was issue by the Persian king, Darius, who had collected ense army. Alexander defeated him, and killed a and ten thousand of his soldiers.

rius soon assembled a mightier army than before, now half a million of men. He advanced to battle la in the midst of his troops, seated on a lofty chariot, esembled a moving throne. Around him were his ls all in splendid armour.

desperate battle took place, and the Persians fought but were at last put to flight. Poor king Darius was at alone on his lofty chariot. He had but just time to get on horseback, and gallop away from the battle. Safterwards, he was slain by two of his own subjects, as told you in the history of Persia.

- 6. After the victory, Alexander marched to Pers which was then the capital of Persia. It was a ric magnificent city. In the royal palace there was a gi statue of Xerxes, but the Macedonian soldiers overthe and tumbled it upon the ground.
- 7. While he remained at Persepolis, Alexander gave self up to drunkenness and licentious pleasures. One at a splendid banquet, an Athenian lady persuaded the queror to set fire to the city. It was accordingly but he ground.
- 8. When Persia was completely subdued, Alex invaded India, now Hindostan. One of the kings of country was named Porus. He is said to have been feet and a half in height. This gigantic king led a army against Alexander.
- 9. Porus was well supplied with elephants, which been trained to rush upon the enemy, and trample down. Alexander had no elephants, but his usual fortune did not desert him. The army of Porus was read he himself was taken prisoner and loaded with cha
- 10. In this degraded condition, the Indian king brought into the victor's tent. Alexander gazed with wat the enormous stature of Porus. Although so great a greator, he was himself only of middle size. "How

at you!" asked Alexander of his prisoner. "Like:
!" said Porus. This answer led Alexander to reflect
he himself should like to be treated had he been in a
ar situation; and he was induced to behave generously
were.

ESTIONS.—I. Who was the new king of Macedon? Of what had ven proofs? 2. After what exploit was Alexander declared alissimo of the Greeks? What of the army which he led against 1? Which way is Persia from Macedon? 3. What sea and ry did the army cross to reach Persia? Who opposed Alexander? many of the army of Darius were killed? 4. Describe the march rius and his half million of troops. 5. What became of Darius? here did Alexander go after his victory? Where was Persepolis? tion from Athens? What of the statue of Xerxes? 7. What ned at Persepolis? 8. What country did Alexander next invade? ion of India from Greece? Persia? What of Porus? 9. What shad Porus in his army? Who conquered? What became of 10. Describe the meeting between Alexander and Porus?

CHAP. LXIV.—EUROPE continued.

SEQUEL OF ALEXANDER'S CAREER.

the early part of his career Alexander had shown cellent and noble traits of character. But he met a great and continued success in all his undertakings, hisposition was ruined by it. He began to consider a equal of the gods.

so far was Alexander from being a god, that some us were unworthy of a man. One of his worst

deeds was the murder of Clitus, an old officer who had fou, under king Philip. He had once saved Alexander's life battle; and on this account he was allowed to speak v freely to him.

- 3. One night, after drinking too much wine, Alexan began to speak of his own exploits; and he spoke more hig of them than old Clitus thought they deserved. According he told Alexander that his father Philip had done mugreater things than ever he had done.
- 4. The monarch was so enraged that he snatched a sp from one of his attendants, and gave Clitus a mortal wou But when he saw the old man's bloody corpse extended the floor, he was seized with horror. He had murdered preserver of his own life!
- 5. Alexander's remorse, however, did not last long. still insisted on being a god, the son of Jupiter Ammon; the was mortally offended with a philosopher named Calthenes, because he refused to worship him. For no ot crime Callisthenes was put into an iron cage, and tormentill he killed himself in despair.
- 6. After Alexander's return from India to Persia, he rewith a great misfortune. It was the loss of his dearest frieth Hephæstion, who died of a disease which he had contract by excessive drinking. For three days afterwards Alexander prostrate on the ground, and would take no food.
- 7. He erected a funeral pile of spices and other precion materials, so that it was as costly as a palace would be

been. The lifeless body of Hephæstion was placed on the summit. Alexander then set fire to the pile, and stood mournfully looking on while the corpse of his friend was consumed to ashes.

- 8. It would have been well if he had taken warning by the fate of Hephæstion. But Alexander the Great was destined to owe his destruction to the wine-cup. While drinking at a banquet in Babylon, he was suddenly taken sick; and death soon conquered the conqueror.
- 9. As to the merits of Alexander, I pretty much agree with a certain pirate, whom the Macedonian soldiers once took prisoner. Alexander demanded of this man by what right he committed his robberies. "I am a robber by the same right that you are a conqueror," was the reply. "The only difference between us is, that I have but a few men, and can do but little mischief; while you have a large army, and can do a great deal."
 - 10. It must be confessed that this is too frequently the thief difference between conquerors and robbers. Yet, when the lexander died, his body was deposited in a splendid coffine the Alexandria, in Egypt, and the Egyptians paid him divine mours, as if he had been the greatest possible benefactor to a world!

visitions.—1. What of Alexander? What ruined his disposition? did he consider himself? 2. What of the actions of Alexander? was Clitus? 3, 4. Give an account of the murder of Clitus. hat did Alexander insist on being called? What of Callisthenes?

6. What of Hephæstion? What was the cause of his death? 7. What did Alexander do with the body of Hephæstion? 8. What caused Alexander's death? Where did he die? Where is Babylon? Direction from Macedon? India? 9. Tell the story of the pirate. 10. What was done when Alexander died?

CHAP. LXV.—EUROPE continued.

GREECE INVADED BY THE GAULS.

- 1. When Alexander lay on his deathbed, his attendants asked to whom he would bequeath the empire, which now extended from Greece to India, including a great many nations. His answer was, "To the most worthy."
- 2. But there appears to have been no very worthy man among those whom he left behind him; and, even if there had been, the unworthy ones would not have consented to yield him the whole power. Alexander's empire was therefore divided among thirty-three of his chief officers.
- 3. But the most powerful of these officers were determined to have more than their share; and, in the year 312 before Christ, four of them had got possession of the whole. Alexander had then been dead eleven years. All his children and relatives had been destroyed by his ambitious officers.
- 4. The Greeks, when they heard of Alexander's death, is attempted to regain their liberty. But their struggles we unsuccessful; and the country was reduced to subjection? Charander, who had been general of Alexander's carely

ander died in a few years. Thenceforward, the history reece tells of nothing but crimes, and revolutions, and ortunes.

In the year 278 before the Christian era, the Gauls or s invaded Greece. They were a barbarous people, who bited the country now called France. Their general's a was Brennus; and their numbers are said to have been ndred and sixty-five thousand men.

Brennus met with hardly any opposition. He marched belphi, intending to take the treasures that were cond in the famous temple of Apollo. "A deity like llo does not want these treasures," said Brennus. "I nly a man, and have great need of them."

Accordingly, he led his barbarians towards the temple. tately marble front of the edifice was seen at a short ce before them. It was considered the holiest spot in . Here was the mysterious oracle, from which so

vonderful prophecies had issued.

wild shout burst from the army of the Gauls, and re on the point of rushing forward to the temple. denly a violent storm arose. The thunder roared, wind blew furiously. At the same moment a arthquake shook the ground beneath the affrighted

and of Greeks had assembled to fight in defence of.

When they saw the disorder of the barbarians,
at them sword in hand. It had grown so dark

that the Gauls could not distinguish friends from foes. I killed one another, and the whole army was destroyed.

10. Such is the story which the old historians tell a this battle; it is doubtless much exaggerated, for some of particulars appear hardly credible. But, at any rate, this the last great victory that the ancient Greeks ever achiover their enemies.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was Alexander asked on his deathbed? reply? 2. How was the empire divided? 3. What took place is year 312 B.C.? What of Alexander's children and relatives? 4. put Greece under subjection? Who was Cassander? What of the tory of Greece after his death? 5. When did the Gauls invade Gre Who was their general? What of their army? 6. Where was Del Direction from Athens? Sparta? Thebes? What famous temple at Delphi? 7. Describe the march towards the temple. What frighted the Gauls? 9. What of the Greeks? How were the Gestroyed? 10. What may be said of this victory over the Gauls

CHAP. LXVI.—EUROPE continued.

END OF GRECIAN INDEPENDENCE.

- 1. THE Greeks had now almost entirely lost their low liberty, as well as the other virtues which had formerly tinguished them. In proof of this, I will relate the stor. Agis, the young king of Sparta.
- 2 King Agis was anxious for the welfare of Sparts, he greatly desired to restore the ancient laws which Ly had enacted. But the Spartans were now visious

lly They hated the very name of Lycurgus, and renot to be governed by the severe laws.

They therefore seized the virtuous young king and d him to prison. He was condemned to death. The ioner shed tears at the moment when he was going to m. "Do not weep for me," said Agis; "I am happier ny murderers."

Little while after Agis had been killed, his mother andmother came to the prison to see him, for they had ard of his death. They were led into his dungeon; e murderers of Agis immediately strangled them both, rew their dead bodies upon his.

called Nabis. He was such a cruel monster that seemed to have made him a king only for the purof the people's wickedness. Nabis had an image alace. It resembled his own wife, and was very ; it was likewise clothed with magnificent garuch as were proper for a queen to wear. But the d arms of the image were stuck full of sharp iron

b), however, were hidden by the rich clothes. When wished to extort money from any person, he into his palace, and led him up to the image. No the stranger within reach, than the image put out squeezed him close to its breast.

v done by means of machinery. The poor man

might struggle as hard as he pleased; but he could no sibly get away from the cruel embrace of the statue. 'he remained, with the iron spikes sticking into his flesh, his agony compelled him to give Nabis as much money asked for.

- 8. When such enormities were committed by the kir Greece, it was time that the country should be governoother masters. My readers will not be sorry to hear that soon happened. One hundred and forty-six years before Christian era, Greece submitted to the authority of Ror
- 9. Thus I have given you a very brief account of an Greece. Its history is full of interest, and full of instruct I hope you will hereafter read the whole story in some lawork.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the Greeks? 2. Who was Agis? did he desire? What of the Spartans? 3. What did they Agis? Describe his death. 4. What of the mother and grandm of Agis? 5. What of Nabis? Describe the image. 6. Wha Nabis do when he wanted to extort money from any one? 8. Was Greece conquered by the Romans? Where was Rome? D tion from Greece? Persia? India?

CHAP. LXVII.—EUROPE continued.

MODERN HISTORY OF GREECE.

1. From this time forward, the history of Greece is conservith that of other nations. The Greeks had no longer power even in their own native country. But they

respected on account of the poets, and historians, a alptors, who appeared among them.

- 2. Between three and four hundred years after the Chri n era, the Roman dominions were divided into the Easter.
- i Western empires. The capital of the Eastern empire
- s Constantinople. The territory of ancient Greece was luded under this government, and it was sometimes called Greek empire.
- 3. About the year 1450, the Turks invaded the Eastern pire of the Romans. Greece then fell beneath their power. ring almost four centuries the Greeks were treated by the rks like slaves.
- t. At last, in the year 1821, they rebelled against the anny of the Turks. A war immediately broke out. It inued a long time, and was carried on with the most king cruelty on both sides.

Many people from other countries went to assist the is. The ancient renown of Greece made friends of all were acquainted with her history. Lord Byron, the ious English poet, lost his life in Greece for the sake of nous land.

he fleets of England, France, and Russia formed a off the coast of Greece. They were all under the d of the English admiral, Sir Edward Codrington. er, 1827, they attacked a Turkish fleet of more than red vessels in the bay of Navarino.

Turks were entirely beaten, and their vessels

were sunk or burned. Greece was therefore free from their tyranny.

- 8. But, as the Greeks were not considered entirely fit to govern themselves, a king was selected for them by England, France, and Russia. The new king was a young man of eighteen, a Bavarian prince, named Otho. He was placed on the throne in the year 1829. Otho, however, did not succeed in governing the kingdom so as to satisfy his subjects, and in the year 1862 he was deposed, and for a short time Greece was governed by a provisional government.
- 9. In the year 1863 the Greeks proceeded to elect a king, and Prince Alfred, second son of the Queen of Great Britain, was elected by an immense majority. The British government did not approve the election, and eventually the second son of the King of Denmark was elected king. He landed in Greece in November, 1863, and ascended the throne as George I. The Ionian Islands, previously under the protection of Great Britain, were now ceded to the Greeks. Let us hope the young monarch may be able to develop the resources of the country, and that unhappy Greece may again take her place among the nations of Europe.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the Greeks? Why were they respected

2. When were the Roman dominions divided? What were the tw
parts called? Where is Constantinople? Direction from Ather
New York? What was the Eastern empire sometimes calle

3. What happened about 1450? Into whose power did the Gree
than fall? How were they treated? 4. What took place in V

GREECE.

assisted the Greeks? Why did Greece find so many frien f Byron? 6. Who commanded the combined fleet of Engla, and Russia? When did they attack the Turks? 7. What rks? Were they obliged to leave Greece? 8. Who chose r the Greeks? What was his name? And country? Who come to the throne? Why was he deposed? 9. How we now governed? Who was first chosen as king? Why disaccept the crown? Upon whom did the choice next fall; was he elected?

CHAP. LXVIII.—EUROPE continued.

CHRONOLOGY OF GREECE.

			•			
						B.C.
•	•	•	•	•	•	1856
•		•	•	•	•	1556
	•	•	•	•	•	1520
•	•			•	•	1516
	•	•		•	•	1500
		•		•		1263
		•	•	•		1257
		•	•			1193
•	•	•				900
•						884
		•				643
d.	•	•	•	•		617
		•	•	•	•	490
		•	•		•	431
	•		•		•	429
Ath	ens	•		•	•	403
					•	371
			•		•	<i>893</i>
						388
n	_	Ť	•	•	•	85
	Ath	Athens	Athens	Athens	Athens	Athens

Death of Alexander the Great .	•	•	•	. •	•
Greece subjected by Cassander .			•	•	•
Division of Alexander's kingdom				•	•
Greece invaded by the Gauls or Kelts		•		•	•
Death of Agis		•			
Greece becomes a Roman province	•	•	•	•	•
The Turks take Constantinople, and c	onqu	er th	e Eas	tern e	mpire
Greece rises against the Turks .	•				-
Death of Lord Byron at Missolonghi		•	•		
Battle of Navarino	•	•			•
Accession of Otho to the throne of Gr	eece				•
The Porte acknowledges the independ	lence	of G	reece		
Count Capo d'Istria assassinated .					
Colocotronis' conspiracy			•		
A bloodless Revolution at Athens					•
The King accepts the new Constitution	n				
Commotions in Greece against the Tu					
Rupture between Greece and the Por					
Corinth destroyed by an earthquake					
Deposition of Otho					
Election of George I					
George I., affianced to the Princess C)lga (of Ru	ssia.		
		•		-	-

CHAP. LXIX.—EUROPE continued. ABOUT ITALY AS IT NOW IS.

1. ITALY is a strip of land on the south of Europe, exing into the Mediterranean Sea. It is fancied to have shape of a boot, the island of Sicily lying at the toe. It a beautiful climate, the seasons of spring and summers ing always to prevail.

2. If you were to go to this country, you would be do





with the beauty of the sky, and the balmy softness of the air. You would find grapes so abundant that you could buy a delicious bunch, as large as you could eat, for a halfpenny; and, if you wished for wine, you could get a bottle for a penny.

- 3. You would find, in short, that Italy abounds in pleasant fruits, and in every species of production required for the comfort of man. You would find the people, men, women, and children, living a great part of the time in the open air, often singing, and sometimes dancing in groups beneath the trees.
- 4. But, in the midst of these signs of cheerfulness, you would observe a great deal of poverty, and you would soon discover that many of the people are indolent, vicious, and degraded.
- 5. In the cities, many of which are large, and filled with thousands of people, you would notice costly churches and splendid palaces, many of them built of marble. But still every thing around you would bear an aspect of decay, and impress you with the idea that Italy, with all its splendour, is an unhappy country.
- 6. At Florence, Rome, Naples, and other large cities, you would find collections of pictures and statues which surpass in beauty every thing of the kind in the world. These pictures are the works of famous artists who lived in Italy within the last five hundred years.
 - 7. The statues are the productions of sculptors who lived

at various periods within the last two thousand years. Some of them, indeed, are supposed to have been executed by Grecian artists who lived in the time of Perioles.

- 8. But in all Italy there is nothing that will excite so much interest as the ruins of ancient Rome, many of which are still to be seen in the modern city. These, like the ancient remains of Egypt and Greece, would delight you with their peauty, and astonish you by their grandeur and magnificence.
- 9. The most remarkable edifice of modern times, to be found in Italy, is the church of St. Peter at Rome, the height of which is nearly five hundred feet. Near this is the Vatican, a famous palace inhabited by the Pope. Rome is not included in the kingdom of Italy: it is ruled over by the Pope as temporal sovereign, and is the only remains of the magnificent Roman kingdom that is now left in his hands.
- 10. If you were to go to Naples, you would see, at the distance of a few miles, a famous mountain called Vesuvius, from which smoke, flame, and torrents of melted lava have periodically issued for ages. Sometimes whole towns and cities in the neighbourhood have been buried beneath the burning masses.
- 11. If you were to go to Sicily, you would find another volcanic mountain, called Ætna, which also pours out, from time to time, immense volumes of smoke, fire, and lava. Yet on the very sides of these mountains the people dwell in thickly-settled villages, and here you will find rich vine-yards, beautiful gardens, and groves of figs, oranges, and olives.

12. Having visited Italy, you will return home with many

wonderful tales to tell of this famous peninsula, that lies in the shape of a boot in the Mediterranean Sea; but you will still be contented and happy to settle down in your native country.

13. You may remember with admiration the desolate ruins of Rome, the marble palaces of Florence and Naples; but you would not wish to live where even these splendid edifices oppress the heart with gloom. You would much rather live among the more cheerful and thriving villages and towns of our own country. The truth is, that Italy has been badly governed for ages, and the people have become indolent and vicious. Let us hope that they will yet become more worthy of the beautiful country they inhabit. See page 259.

N H H . I I . I

QUESTIONS.—1. What is Italy? Its shape? Where is Sicily? Climate of Italy? Which way is Italy from Turkey? From France? From Spain? What two large islands lie to the west of Italy? In what part of Italy is Rome? In which direction from Rome is Naples? Florence? Milan? Venice? Which way is Italy from Greece? 2. What of the air and sky in Italy? What of grapes? Wine? 3. Fruits? Other productions? The people? 4. What would you discover after examining the people of Italy carefully? 5. What of the cities? 6, 7. What of pictures and statues? 8. What of the ruins of Rome? 9. What of St. Peter's? The Vatican? The Pope? 10. What of Vesnvius? 11. What of Ætna? Where is the island of Sicily? 12. With what feelings would you return home after visiting Italy?

CHAP. LXX.—EUROPE continued.

FOUNDING OF ROME BY ROMULUS. ITS EARLY STATE.

1. I SHALL now proceed to tell you the history of Rome, the most celebrated empire of antiquity. Like the history of all ancient countries, it abounds in tales of battle, bloodshed, injustice, and crime. Over such horrid scenes I should be glad to draw a veil; but these things have really happened, and it is the duty of a faithful story-teller to hide nothing which is necessary to give a true picture of what he undertakes to exhibit.

- 2. The famous city of Rome stands on the river Tiber, in Italy. Its distance from the sea is about sixteen miles. It is supposed to have been founded by Romulus, in the year 752 B. c. Romulus was the captain of about three thousand banditti, or outlaws. These men built some huts on a hill called the Palatine, and enclosed them with a wall. This was the origin of the most famous city the world ever saw.
- 3. It is said that this wall was so low that Remus, the brother of Romulus, leaped over it. "Do you call this the wall of the city?" cried he, contemptuously. Romulus was so enraged that he struck his brother dead; and this was the first blood that bedewed the walls of Rome.
- 4. When Romulus and his fellow-robbers were comfortably settled in their new houses, they found themselves is want of wives. At this time Italy was inhabited by many rude tribes. Among these were the Sabines, who lived in the neighbourhood of Rome. These would not allow their young women to marry the Romans; but Romulus contrived a scheme to get wives by force.
- 5. He invited the whole Sabine people to witness some and sports. Accordingly, the Sabines came; and,

spected no mischief, they brought almost all the sable young women in the country.

- first, the Sabines were highly delighted with the strength and agility which were performed by the to entertain them. But, in a little while, Romulus ignal; and all the men drew their swords and rushed he peaceable spectators.
- e Sabines were of course taken by surprise, and could o resistance. Each of the Romans caught up the young woman he could find, and carried her away. as no longer any scarcity of wives in Rome.
- is outrageous act of violence caused a war between lans and Sabires. The latter mustered a large army, ald probably have exterminated Romulus and his
- . But, when they were about to engage in battle, 1g wives of the Romans rushed into the field.

ey besought the two hostile parties to make peace. id that, whichever side might gain the victory, it ring nothing but sorrow to them; for, if the Sabines onquer, their husbands must lose their lives; or, if rans should win the day, their kindred would perish. both parties were much moved by these entreaties. ines saw that the young women had become attached husbands; and therefore it would be a pity to separate ren if it could be done without bloodshed. In short, ter ended peaceably, and an alliance, which you know adly treaty, was formed.

- 11. The first government of Rome consisted of a king and mate. Romulus was chosen king, and reigned thirty-seven ears. There are different accounts of the way in which his sign terminated.
- 12. Some historians pretend that, while Romulus sat in he senate-house, giving wise instructions in regard to matters f state, the hall was suddenly darkened by an eclipse of the in. When the sun shone out again, the chair of Romulus as perceived to be empty; and it was said he had been aken up into heaven.
- 13. Others say that Romulus attempted to make himself a yrant, and that therefore the senators pulled him down from is chair of state, and tore him in pieces. This story appears nore probable than the former. At all events, King Romulus addenly disappeared, and was never seen again in the city thich he had founded.

Albar

ef Ho

These

ions.

and th

an an

A4 first

the

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the empire of Rome? What of its history?
On what river is Rome? How far is it from the sea? When, and by hom was it founded? Who was Romulus? What did the order o? What is the origin of Rome? 3. What happened between homulus and Remus? 4. Of what did Romulus and his men feel that ant? What of the Sabines? 5. Give an account of the carrying of the Sabine women. 8. What did this act cause? How was the was revented? 9. What did the young wives of the Romans say? 10. What of the first government of Rome? The was chosen king, and how long did he reign? 12. What dis une historians pretend? 13. What do others say?

CHAP. LXXI.—EUROPE continued.

BATTLE OF THE HORATII AND CURIATII.

THE second king of Rome was Numa Pompilius. He wise and good king, and a great lover of peace. He forty-three years in making excellent laws, and in acting the people in agriculture and other useful arts. The peaceful Numa was succeeded by Tullus Hostilius. The peaceful Numa was succeeded by Tullus Hostilius.

It was agreed that the war should be decided by a between three champions on each side. In the army Albans there were three brothers, each named Curiatius, the Roman army there were likewise three, by the of Horatius.

hese Horatii and Curiatii were fixed upon as the ons. They fought in an open plain; and on each od the ranks of armed warriors, with their swords, anxiously watching the combat.

first it seemed as if the Curiatii were going to win ry. It is true they were all three wounded; but he Horatii lay dead upon the field. The other was still unhurt. He appeared determined not to his two brothers; for he was seen to turn and fiee. ht of their champion, the Romans groaned with shame and despair; for, if he should lose the battle, were all to be made slaves.

- 6. The three Curiatii pursued the fugitive. But wounds had rendered them feeble. They staggered a one behind the other, so that they were separated by c derable distances. This was what Horatius desired. The could not have beaten all three together, he was than a match for them singly.
- 7. He now turned fiercely upon the foremost, and him. Then he encountered the second, and smote him in a moment. The third met with the same fate. Alban army now turned pale, and dropped their weapor the field, for they had lost their freedom.
- 8. The exulting Romans greeted Horatius with shor triumph. He returned towards Rome amid a throng countrymen, all of whom hailed him as their beneful, as he entered the city, he met a young woman wither hands in an agony of grief. This was his sister was in love with one of the Curiatii, and, when the Horatius, she shrieked aloud, and reproached him for having slain her lover.
- 9. The victor still held the bloody sword with v had killed the three Alban champions. His heart fierce with the frenzy of the combat. He could that his sister should bewail one of the dead enemi of her two dead brothers; nor that she should triumph with her reproaches. Accordingly, in the the moment, he stabbed her to the beart.

10. Horatius was condemned to die for this dreadful crime; it he was afterwards pardoned, because his valour had won r Rome such a great deliverance. But the diagrace of his silt was far more than the honour of his victory.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was the second king of Rome? What of him? What of Tullus Hostilius? 3. How was the war between the mans and Albans to be decided? Who were the Horatii and triatii? 4, 5. Describe the war between these combatants. Who defrom the battle? 6. What did the three Curiatii do? What of oratius? 7. What was the fate of the Curiatii? 8. How was oratius greeted? What of his sister? 9. Why did Horatius kill r? 10. What of Horatius? Why was he pardoned?

CHAP. LXXII.—EUROPE continued.

ROM THE REIGN OF ANCUS MARTIUS TILL THE EXPULSION OF THE KINGS.

- 1. A FTER the death of Tullus Hostilius, the Romans elected Ancus Martius to be king. He was succeeded by Tarquin he Elder, whose father had been a rich merchant. The next ing was Servius Tullus. When Servius had reigned fortyour years, he was murdered by Tarquin, his son-in-law, who was ambitious of being king.
- 2. Tullia, the wife of Tarquin and daughter of Servius, spiced at her father's death, for she wished to be queen. She rode out in her chariot, in order to congratulate her wicked husband. In one of the streets through which the whariot was to pass, lay the dead body of the poor king. The conchran saw it, and was desirous of turning back. "Drive with cried the wicked Tullia.

- 3. The coachman did so; and, as the street was too narro to permit him to turn out, the chariot passed directly on the murdered king. But Tullia rode on without remonal though the wheels were stained with her father's blood.
- 4. Her husband now ascended the throne, and was calk Tarquin the Proud. The Romans abhorred him, for he was a hateful tyrant. Several almost incredible stories are to respecting his reign.
- 5. One day, it is said that a woman of singular aspectations arms. No one knew whence she came, nor what was contained in her books. She requested the king to buy them. But the price was so high that Tarquin refused; especially as he did not know what the books were about.
- 6. The unknown woman went away and burnt three ther books. She then came back, and again offered the maining ones to Tarquin. But she demanded as much most for the six as she had before asked for the whole nine; Tarquin of course refused to buy them.
- 7. The woman went away a second time. But short afterwards she was again seen entering the palace. She is now only three volumes left; and these she offered to king at the same price which she had before asked for the whole nine.
- 8. There was something so strange and mysterious is a this, that Tarquin concluded to give the woman her prisoner, the put the three volumes into his hands and immediate preserved.

BOME 19

- 9. The books were found to be the oracles of a sibyl, or prophetess. They were therefore looked upon with superstitious reverence, and were preserved in Rome during many ages; and in all difficult and perplexing cases the rulers looked into these old volumes, and read, as they supposed, the secrets of their country's fate.
- 10. The above story is probably a fable. So also is that of the discovery of a man's head, while the workmen were digging the foundation of the temple of Jupiter. Yet the Romans firmly believed that a human head was found there under the earth, and that it looked as fresh as if just cont.
- 11. When Tarquin the Proud had reigned more than twenty years, he and his family were driven out of Rome by the people. This event was brought about by the wickedness of his son Sextus, whose conduct had caused a noble toman lady to commit suicide. Her name was Lucretia.
 - 12. The expulsion of the Tarquins took place in the year 19 before the Christian era. The Romans never had anter king. Besides the senate, the government now conted of two magistrates, called consuls, who were chosen ty year. Brutus and Collatinus were the first.
 - 3. Brutus gave a terrible example of his justice and iotism. His two sons had engaged in a conspiracy to Tarquin king again. Brutus who was a judge when were brought to trial, condemned them both to death, at them executed in his presence.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was king after Tullus Hostilius? What me Who killed Servius Tullus? 2, 3. What of Tullia? Describe wicked act. 4. What was Tarquin called? What of him? 5, 6, 9. What strange story can you tell of him? 10. What of a me head? 11. How long did Tarquin reign? What of him and family? What of Sextus? 12. What took place 509 B. C.? Hong from the founding of Rome to the death of her last king? Wof the government of Rome after the Tarquins? Who were the foonsuls? 13. What act did Brutus perform?

CHAP. LXXIII.—EUROPE continued.

THE STORY OF CORIOLANUS.

- 1. Acrs of heroism were common among the Romans those days. A young man named Mucius Scævola, gain great credit for his fortitude. He had been taken prison by the troops of Porsenna, the king of Etruria or Tuscan who was at war with Rome, and whom he had intended assassinate, but failed in his purpose. For this crime here threatened with torture.
- 2. A fire was burning close beside the prisoner. He is mediately put his hand into the midst of the flames, and hi it there till it was burned off. By this act he showed Posenna that no tortures could shake his courage. It much owned, however, that the truth of this story is much doubted and that, however brave he may have been, Screvola was better than a murderer.
- 8. Almost from the first foundation of Rome, the inline tants had been divided into two classes, one called parising

193

and the other plebeians. The senate and most of the rich men were included among the patricians. The consuls were also chosen from this class.

BOME.

- 4. Thus the patricians had nearly all the power in their hands. This caused frequent quarrels between them and the common people, or plebeians. But at length it was ordained that five magistrates, called tribunes, should be annually chosen by the plebeians.
- 5. These tribunes took away a great deal of power from the patricians, and were therefore hated by them. Coriolanus, a valiant but proud patrician, endeavoured to have the office of the tribunes abolished. But they were more powerful than he, and succeeded in procuring his banishment.
- 6. Coriolanus left the city, and went to the territories of the Volsci, who were bitter enemies of the Romans. There he gathered a large army, and advanced to besiege Rome. His countrymen were greatly alarmed when they heard that the banished Coriolanus was returning so soon, and in so terrible a manner.
- 7. They therefore sent an embassy to meet him, consisting of the oldest senators. But these venerable men could make more impression on Coriolanus. Next came an embassy of Fiests; but they met with no better success.
- 8. Coriolanus still marched onward, and pitched his tent within a short distance of the Roman walls. He was gazing towards the city, and planning an attack for the next day,

when a third embassy appeared. It was a mournful sion of Roman ladies.

- 9. At their head walked Veturia, who was the moderic corrections; and Vergilia, his wife, was also there, his children by the hand. When they drew near, his knelt down at his feet, and besought him not to be so of his native city.
- 10. Coriolanus strove to resist her entreaties, as resisted those of the senators and priests. But the heart had been proud and stubborn against them, it so against his mother.
- 11. "Mother," cried he, "I yield! You have Rome, but you have destroyed your son!" And proved; for the Volsci were so enraged at his retres Rome that they murdered him at Antium.

QUESTIONS.—1, 2. Relate the anecdote of Mucius Scævola.
two classes were there in Rome? What of the class of the pa
Who were the plebeians? 4. What caused quarrels betw
patricians and plebeians? From which class were the tribunes
5. What of the tribunes? 6, 7, 8, 9, 10. Tell the story of Co
11. What was his fate?

ROME.

CHAP. LXXIV.—EUROPE continued.

ROME INVADED BY THE GAULS. THE FIRST PUNIC WAR.

- . In process of time, the Roman government underwent ious changes. The will of the plebeians had far greater uence than the will of the patricians. The consequence , that the prosperity of Rome increased both at home labroad.
- 2. But in the year 390 B.C., a great calamity befell the
- r. It was taken by an army of Gauls, inhabitants of the ntry now called France. When Brennus, their general, I entered Rome, he marched with his soldiers to the ate-house.
- There he beheld an assemblage of greybearded senators, it in a noble hall, in chairs of ivory. Each held an staff in his hand. These brave old men, though they make no resistance, considered it beneath their dignity away from the invaders.

The Gauls were awe-struck by their venerable aspect.

ually, one of the soldiers, being ruder than his com, took hold of the long grey beard of an aged senator,
led it. The old gentleman, whose name was Papyrius,
ffended at this insult, that he uplifted his ivory staff
he soldier a blow on the head.

that blow cost Rome dear. The Gauls immediately Papyrius and the other senators, and set fire to the

city; and almost the whole of it was reduced to ashes. Yo must bear in mind that at this time Rome had become a immense city. It contained many magnificent edifices; the most splendid of these was called the capitol; this was no taken by the Gauls.

- 6. All the bravest of the Romans assembled there, an resolved to defend it to the last. Yet the enemy had nearl got possession of it in the night. But as they were creepin towards the gate, they awoke a large flock of geese, and the eachling alarmed the sentinels.
- 7. In consequence of this fortunate event, a goose was thenceforth considered a very praiseworthy and honourable fowl by the Romans. I am not sure but that they though it a sin to have a roast goose for dinner.
- 8. The Gauls were driven out of Rome, and were soon vanquished by Camillus, a brave and patriotic Roman. It is said that not a single man of them got back to their own country, to tell the fate of his companions; but this is contradicted by the best historians.
- 9. The Romans were almost continually at war. Their valour and discipline generally rendered them successful; but sometimes they met with misfortunes. In a war with the Samnites, a Roman army was captured, and forced to pass under the yoke, which was a sign of subjection. This was the highest possible ignominy.
- 10. But at length all the other states and kingdom of Italy were reduced under the Roman power. Afterward

the most formidable enemy of Rome was Carthage. This was a powerful city on the African coast, near where Tunis now stands. It was situated nearly south of Rome, across the Mediterranean Sea, at the distance of about four hundred spiles.

- 11. The wars between Rome and Carthage were called Punic wars. The first began in the year 264 B.C., and lasted twenty-three years. Many battles were fought on land, and some by sea.
- 12. The Carthaginians were a cruel people. Whenever their generals lost a battle, they were crucified. Regulus, a Roman general, was taken by them, and underwent horrible terments. They cut off his eyelids, and then exposed his naked eyes to the burning sun. He was afterwards put into a barrel, the inner sides of which were set with iron spikes.
- 13. A peace was at last concluded between Rome and Carthage. The doors of the temple of Janus, at Rome, had not been shut for five hundred years; for they always stood open while the Romans were at war. But now they were doed and barred; for Rome was at peace with all the world

Questions.—1. Of what was the prosperity of Rome the consetence? 2. What befell the city 390 B.C.? What of Brennus? 4. What happened in the senate-house? 5. What of the size of me at this time? What of the capitol? 6. How was the capitol ed? 8. Who conquered the Gauls? 9. What of the Romans? at of the war with the Sampites? 10. What of the kingdoms of 1? Where was Carthage? How far was it from Rome? Direcfrom Rome? Athens? Sparta? 11. When did the first Punice war begin? How long did it last? 12. What of the Carthag What of Regulus? 13. What of the temple of Janus? He had the doors been open? Why were they now closed? When temple of Janus open? When shut?

CHAP. LXXV.—EUROPE continued.

SECOND AND THIRD PUNIC WARS.

- 1. THE doors of the temple of Janus were soon flur open again; for a war broke out between the Roman tribe of Gauls. It ended in the conquest of the latter
- 2. In the year 218 before the Christian era, anoth with Carthage began. This was called the second war. The Carthaginians were commanded by Ha who proved himself one of the greatest generals the lived.
- 3. Hannibal transported his army across the Mediter Sea to Spain, and thence marched towards Italy. progress it was necessary that he should cross the Alp summits of these mountains are many thousand feet in and were covered with ice and snow: in some place nibal had to cut a passage through the solid rock.
- 4. After crossing these mountains, several battle won by the Carthaginians. At length, the two consuls, with a large army, encountered Hannibal a soldiers at Cannae. Here the Romans were defeate dreadful slaughter. One of the consula fied; the

BOME. 199

was slain, and seventy thousand men were left dead on the field.

- 5. Rome had now no army to protect it. If Hannibal had marched thither immediately, it is probable that he might have taken the city. But he delayed too long, and the Romans made preparations to defend themselves.
- 6. Hannibal never won such another victory as that at Cannæ, for the Romans soon enlisted new armies, and fought more successfully than before. Scipio, their best general, sailed over to Africa, in order to attack Carthage. Hannibal immediately followed him.
- 7. A battle was fought between him and Scipio at Zama. The Carthaginians had a multitude of elephants. These animals were wounded by the Roman darts, and the pain made them rush through the field, trampling down whole ranks of Hannibal's army.
- 8. The Carthaginians were entirely defeated, and Hannibal himself barely escaped amid the route and confusion. This battle put an end to the second Punic war.
- 9. But a third war between Rome and Carthage broke out in about fifty years. The Romans were commanded by another Scipio, who was as valiant as his namesake; but the Carthaginians had no longer a Hannibal.
 - 10. This third Punic war ended in the destruction of arthage. The city was set on fire, and continued to burn uring seventeen days. Many of the citizens threw them-

selves into the flames and perished. This happened is year 146 before the Christian era.

11. Scipio returned to Rome, and was rewarded w triumph. As this was the highest honour that a R general could attain, and as such triumphs were often to successful commanders, I will tell my readers, in the chapter, what Scipio's triumph was.

QUESTIONS.—1. What war now broke out? Which side we torious? 2. When did the second Punic war begin? Who I Carthaginians? 3. What did Hannibal do? How did his arm; the Alps? 4. Describe the battle of Cannæ? 5. What of Re this time? 6. What of Scipio? Who followed him? 7. Whe the battle fought? What of elephants? 8. Which side was defi What of Hannibal? Who led the Romans in the third Punic What of the Carthaginians? 10. When was Carthage 11. How was Scipio rewarded?

CHAP. LXXVI.—EUROPE continued.

SCIPIO'S TRIUMPH.

- 1. Scipio, on his return from Carthage, stopped at the pus Martius, which was a plain on the outside of I from thence he was escorted into the city by a procession.
- 2. First came a band of musicians playing their lo strains on all sorts of instruments. Then followed a of oxen, which were to be sacrificed in the temples of the

BOME. 201

r horns were gilded, and garlands were wreathed around heads.

Next came a train of cars, heavily laden with the rich s that had been taken at Carthage. There were gold silver in abundance, and statues, pictures, and magnifigarments. The brilliant armour of the vanquished army likewise piled upon the cars.

Then were seen some elephants treading along 'ke ing hills. These huge animals were trained to war, and able to carry a whole company of soldiers on their s.

Next appeared a melancholy troop of the vanquished baginians. Their chains clanked as they walked heavily rd. Among them were all the principal men of Car-, and they dropped their heads in shame and sorrow, ting that they had not perished in the flames of their

Sehind the sad troop came another loud band of music, ng the groans of the captives with the uproar of a l instruments. There were likewise dancers, whose de them appear like monsters, neither beasts nor 'hese wore crowns of gold.

en came a splendid chariot, adorned with ivory, and four white horses abreast. In this chariot stood phant Scipio, dressed in a purple robe, which was ith gold embroidery. His face was painted with and he had a crown of laurel on his head.

- 8. A golden ball hung at his breast; and in his right he held an ivory sceptre, with a golden eagle at the top. in the same chariot stood a slave, who kept whisperir Scipio, "Remember that thou art but a man;" and words seemed to sadden Scipio's triumph.
- 9. Around the chariot was a great throng of Scipio's tives, and other citizens, all clothed in white. Next the consuls, and all the members of the Roman sensitheir robes of ceremony.
- 10. Last in the procession marched the victorious at Their helmets were wreathed with laurel. The stand bearers carried eagles of gold and silver, instead of ban. As they moved onward, they sang hymns in praise of Scivalour, and all the Roman citizens joined their voices in chorus. In this manner the procession passed through streets of Rome, and entered the doors of the Capitol.

QUESTIONS.—1. Where was the Campus Martius? What of the cession? 2. What came first? What was done with the oxen? 3. what were the cars laden? 4. What of Elephants? 5. Describ appearance of the captive Carthaginians. In what battle were taken prisoners? 6. What of musicians and dancers? 7. How Scipio appear? What did the slave whisper in his ear? What the effect of what he said? 9. What followed the charict? 10. Desthe victorious army. Where did the procession stop?

ROME. 2

CHAP. LXXVII.—EUROPE continued.

SYLLA AND MARIUS.

- 1. The Romans still continued to make conquests. Not long after the ruin of Carthage, the whole of Spain became a province of Rome. There was likewise a war with Numidia, a country of Africa, now called Algiers. Jugurtha, the Numidian king, was brought prisoner to Rome, and starved to death in a dungeon.
- 2. There was afterwards a Social war, beginning in the year 90 B.C. This war was called social, because it was between the Romans and the neighbouring states of Italy, who had been their own friends and allies. Three hundred housand men were killed on both sides. Then there was a rar with Mithridates, the powerful king of Pontus, in Asia linor. He was not entirely vanquished till forty years terwards.
 - 3. In the course of all this fighting, two Roman comnders acquired great renown. One was named Marius, the other Sylla. Marius was a rude and daring soldier, wing nothing but how to fight. Sylla was likewise a soldier, but also a person of great elegance and polished ters.

These two generals became so great and powerful, ach was envious of the other. They therefore began war, in which Romans fought against Romans, I

will relate an incident, in order to show the horrors of war.

- 5. One of Sylla's soldiers had killed another that fo for Marius. He began to strip him of his armour; but taking off the helmet which had concealed the dead n face, he saw that it was his own brother. The wret survivor placed the body on a funeral pile, and then k himself.
- 6. In the outset of the struggle with Sylla, Marius beaten; but he afterwards gained possession of Rome. now resolved to put to death every person that was friendly to his cause. Senators and other distinguished were publicly murdered. Dead bodies were seen everyw about the streets.
- 7. But Marius could not escape the misery which wickedness deserved. He was so tortured by remorse, he contracted a habit of drinking immoderately. 'brought on a fever, of which he died.
- 8. After the death of this wicked man, Sylla returne Rome at the head of a large army. He declared his dictator; and his word then became the sole law of Roughe Like Marius, he determined to massacre all his ener As fast as they were killed, their bloody heads were brout o him.
- 9. When Sylla had shed as much blood as he desi he suddenly resigned his power. Everybody was surpr at this, but nobody lamented it; nor were there any mour

ROME. 205

m this cruel and wicked man died, which happened soon r.

UESTIONS.—1. What of the Romans? What of Spain? Where was nidia? Direction from Rome? Carthage? What of it? Its king? Then did the Social war begin? How many were killed in this war? was Mithridates? Where was Pontus? Direction from Rome? hage? 3. What of the Roman commanders? Marius? Sylla? That war broke out in Rome? 5. Relate a horrid incident in this 6. What did Marius do? 7. What was his fate? 8. What did a do? Give an account of his proceedings. 9. What act of Sylla's rised every body?

CHAP. LXXVIII .- EUROPE continued.

CNEUS POMPEY AND JULIUS CÆSAR.

If the Roman people had loved liberty as well as they did, they never would have borne the tyranny of Sylla Marius. But they had become addicted to luxury, by ches which they had acquired from their conquests in ts of the world.

Iwing to their continual wars, they had also accusthemselves to consider successful warriors as the men on earth. Soldiers must obey their leaders asking why or wherefore; and all the Roman people soldiers. Thus, the very same causes which rendered ans so invincible to their enemies, made them liable laved by any great general who should be ambitious ng them; and such a general soon appeared.

- 3. After the death of Sylla and Marius, the valiant and distinguished warriors were Pompey an l'ompey was the eldest. He had grown famous quishing Mithridates, and by many other victories. conquered fifteen kingdoms, and taken eight hundr
- 4. The name of this illustrious leader's rival w Cæsar. He was the most beautiful person in Ro had fought in Gaul, Germany, and Britain, and I come three millions of men, and killed one milli soldiers idolized him.
- 5. At last, like Sylla and Marius, these two became so great and powerful that the world was a wide enough for them both. They each collect armies, in which all the Roman soldiers were en one side or the other.
- 6. They encountered each other at Pharsalia, in The best part of Pompey's army consisted of a mu the young Roman nobility. These youths had vesome faces; and it was chiefly owing to this circ that Pompey lost the victory.
- 7. Cæsar ordered his rough and weather-beater to aim their blows right at the faces of their enemi latter were so afraid that their beauty would be spo they immediately turned and fled. A complete vigained by Cæsar.
- 8. Pompey made his escape into Egypt, but vacuations. His head was cut off and brought to C

ned aside his eyes from the bloody spectacle, and wept to nk that so mighty a warrior had met with so sad a fate.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the Roman people? 2. What was the sequence of continual war? 3. What generals appeared after rius and Sylla? What had Pompey done? 4. What of Pompey's al, Julius Cæsar? 5. What did these great generals do? 6. Where a battle fought? What of Pompey's army? 7. By what means Cæsar vanquish the followers of Pompey? 8. What became of mpey? Why did Cæsar weep at his death?

CHAP. LXXIX.—EUROPE continued.

CÆSAR USURPS THE SUPREME POWER.

1. When the Roman senate heard of Casar's victory, they claimed a solemn thanksgiving to the gods. Supreme ver was granted to him for life, with the title of dictator. person was declared sacred and inviolable.

His statue was placed among those of gods and heroes, e Capitol. It stood next to that of Jupiter, and bore this us inscription:—"THE STATUE OF CASAR THE DEMITHIS proves that the Romans were already slaves, they thus defied a mortal man.

to bear the name of king. He endeavoured to gain l-will of the soldiers and people, in order that they ratify his ambition. For this purpose he spent sums in entertainments and magnificent spectacles. one occasion he made a feast for the whole Roma

- people. Twenty-two thousand tables were set out streets of Rome. All sorts of delicious food and dri heaped upon them. The meanest beggar was at 1 sit down and eat his fill.
- 5. Most of the Romans had now lost the noble spin had animated their forefathers. They were willing governed by any man who would feed them with deand amuse them with splendid shows, as Casar must be owned, also, that Casar had many no amiable qualities.
- 6. The people therefore had a fondness for their They loved to behold him, at the public spectar entertainments, sitting in a gilded chair of state, golden crown upon his head. Had he asked it, the even ready to fall down and worship him.
- 7. But there were a few Romans of the old star loved liberty for its own sake. There were others, a hated Cæsar because he had wronged them, or be was more powerful than they. These two sorts of formed a conspiracy to kill him.
- 8. The two chief conspirators were Brutus and Brutus was a dear lover of liberty, and a true if Rome. He also loved Cæsar, and was beloved by his he resolved to assist in slaying him, in order that his might be free.
- 9. Cassius formed the same resolution; but it was because he hated Cassar. Sixty other sensions were

in the plot. Most conspirators endeavour to do their work in secresy and at midnight. But the blood of Cæsar was to be shed in broad daylight, and in the great hall of the senate-house.

QUESTIONS.—1. What did the Romans do after Cæsar's victory?

2. What of Cæsar's statue? 3. What did this great conqueror now desire? What did he do to obtain his wish? 4. Describe the feast.

5. State of the Romans? 6. What did they like to see? 7. Who formed a conspiracy to kill Cæsar? 8. Who were Brutus and Cassius? Why did they each determine to kill Cæsar? 9. How was the conspiracy carried on?

CHAP. LXXX.—EUROPE continued.

ASSASSINATION OF JULIUS CÆSAR.

- 1. On the fatal morning, Cæsar set forth from his mansion. There was a great throng of flatterers and false friends around him. As he came down the steps of the portal, a greybearded philosopher pressed through the crowd and put a paper into his hand. It contained an account of the whole plot. If Cæsar had read it, it would have cost all the conspirators their lives, and have saved his own life. But he gave it to one of his secretaries, and walked onward.
- 2. As Casar passed through the streets of Rome, he looked round at the crowd of obsequious senators, and listened to the shouts of the multitude. He felt that he was the most coulted man in the world. But his heart was not at case; for he also felt that he had enslaved his country.

- 3. The proud procession ascended the steps of the senate-house and passed into the hall. Along the sides of this hall were arranged the statues of many famous Romans, and among them stood the marble image of Pompey, whose bloody head had been brought to Cæsar. Just as Cæsar was passing in front of Pompey's statue, Metellus Cimber, one of the conspirators, knelt down and took hold of his robe. This was the signal for the attack.
- 4. Casca, who was behind Cæsar, drew a dagger and stabled him in the shoulder. "Wretch! what doest thou?" cried Cæsar, snatching the weapon. The other conspirators now rushed upon him. But he defended himself with the valour that he had shown in a hundred battles.
- 5. At length Brutus rushed forward and struck him with his dagger. When Cæsar saw that the hand of his dear friend was raised against his life, he made no more resistance. "And thou too, Brutus!" he said, with one reproachful look.
- 6. Then covering his head with his mantle, that his enemies might not behold the death-pang in his face, he fell down at the pedestal of Pompey's statue. The market countenance of the statue seemed to look down upon his, and Pompey was avenged.
- 7. The conspirators dipped their weapons in the blood that flowed upon the pavement. Brutus raised his dagger aloft, and called to Cicero, the illustrious orator and paties, "Rejoice, father of our country!" he exclaimed, pointing the prostrate form of Casar, "for Rome is free!"

8. But, alas! when the souls of a whole people are enslaved, it is not the death of any single man that can set them free. And thus, as my readers will perceive, the mighty victim died in vain.

QUESTIONS.—1. Describe Cæsar's departure from his house. What happened as he came down the steps? 2. What did he see on looking around him? How did he feel? 3. Where did the procession march? What were ranged around the hall? What happened as Cæsar was passing the statue of Pompey? 4. Who first stabbed him? How did he defend himself? 5. Who gave Cæsar the second blow? How did he receive it? 6. Describe his death. 7. What did Brutus and the conspirators now do? 8. Why did Cæsar die in vain?

CHAP. LXXXI.—EUROPE continued.

CONSEQUENCES OF CÆSAR'S DEATH.

- 1. The death of Cæsar took place forty-three years before the Christian era. The affairs of Rome were thrown into great confusion by it. Cæsar's friends found no great difficulty in persuading the people that he had been unjustly murdered.
- 2. Brutus, Cassius, and the other conspirators, were compelled to flee from the city. Three men then usurped the sovernment, and were called triumvirs, or a triumvirate. Their names were Mark Antony, Lepidus, and Octavius. The latter was Cassar's nephew, and had been his adopted son.
- 3. The triumvirate resolved to secure themselves in popular

L

by murdering all who were opposed to them. They mad list of three hundred senators, and more than two thous knights, and offered rewards for killing them. They exul when the heads of their victims were laid at their feet.

- 4. One of these wicked triumvirs presented the head of own brother to his colleagues. Another brought his unchead. No friend, nor relative, nor patriot was spared, if was suspected of being opposed to the triumvirate.
- 5. In the mean time, Brutus and Cassius were in Gree They had collected an army of a hundred thousand m Mark Antony and Octavius marched against them; and battle was fought at Philippi. Brutus and Cassius bei defeated, they both committed suicide.
- 6. The triumvirate had now got all the power into th own hands. But they soon quarrelled among themselv Lepidus was turned out of office, and banished. Ms Antony and Octavius then made war upon one another, is Marius and Sylla, and like Pompey and Cæsar.
- 7. The good fortune of Octavius gave him the victory, a Antony killed himself with his own sword, as I have relating the history of Egypt. Octavius had no longer any rive and was now sole master of Rome and its dominions. I was afraid to assume the title of king, but called himsemperor, and Augustus Cæsar.
- 8. In addition to several other titles, the senate gave hi that of Pater Patrixe, or Father of his Country. This waterely a piece of flattery. Yet there were now so few go

men in Rome, that perhaps Octavius made a better use of his power than any other would have done.

- 9. His reign from this time was peaceful and quiet, and offers few events that need be recorded in this brief history. Nearly the whole world was under his sway, and therefore he had no occasion to increase his dominions by going to war. The greatest glory of his times consists in the works of poets and other men of genius.
- 10. Octavius, or, as he is always called, Augustus Cæsar, reigned forty-one years, and died at the age of seventy-six, in the year 14 after the birth of Christ. You will observe that it was during his reign that Christ appeared in Palestine.

QUESTIONS.—1. When did Cæsar's death take place? What of Rome? The friends of Cæsar? 2. Who were obliged to flee from the city? Who now governed Rome? Who was Octavius? 3. What did the triumvirate do? 4. What acts of cruelty did they perform? 5. Where now were Brutus and Cassius? Who opposed them? Where was the battle fought? Fate of Brutus and Cassius? 6. What of the triumvirate? 7. Which of the triumvirs triumphed? What became of Antony? What did Octavius call himself? 8. What other name did the senate give him? 9. Describe the reign of Augustus. 10. How long did he reign? When did he die? Who appeared in Palestine during his reign?

CHAP. LXXXII.—EUROPE continued.

ABOUT THE GREAT POWER AND EXTENT OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE IN THE TIME OF AUGUSTUS.

1. As Rome was now at its greatest height of wealth and Nendour, I shall try to give you some idea of the extent and

power of this vast empire, and then, having told you a limore of its history, I shall say something about the mann and customs of the ancient Roman people.

- 2. In the time of Augustus, the Roman empire embra all the nations of Europe except a few northern tribes w maintained their independence. It included England, Fran Spain, part of Germany, all the states of Italy, Greece, country now occupied by Turkey in Europe, beside ms other nations.
- 3. In Asia, it embraced all the kingdoms from Asia Min on the west, to India on the east. Of course, it included A Minor, Syria, Palestine, Arabia, Persia, Parthia, and ma other countries.
- 4. It included the whole northern portion of Africa, from Mauritania, now Morocco, on the west, to Ethiopia on t east. This was the whole of Africa then known; the interibeing only inhabited by scattered bands of negroes.
- 5. It seems wonderful that one country could govern many nations. This was done, however, by placing Rom governors over these various kingdoms; the governors being sustained by a multitude of Roman soldiers.
- 6. During this period, the people of Rome had great in architecture, sculpture, painting, and many other art These arts were extended to all parts of the empire.
- 7. Thus a multitude of cities in various parts of Eurof Africa, and Asia, were filled with costly temples and palac of marble, with beautiful statues and valuable paintings.

ROME. 215

plendour and magnificence of many of these cities, at this seriod, was indeed wonderful.

- 8. Nor was this all; the Romans built many public works of great utility; they constructed roads paved with stone; hey built durable bridges, and made aqueducts for supplying the cities with water. So numerous and so permanent were these vast works, that the remains of them are still to be found in most of those countries over which the Roman dominion was then established, though they were executed nearly two thousand years ago.
- 9. But, of all the cities in the world, Rome was itself the most wonderful. In the time of Augustus it was fifty miles in circuit, and contained four millions of inhabitants!
- 10. Like all ancient cities, it was surrounded by high, strong valls of stone; for in these warlike times, as I have before id, walls were a necessary protection against the attacks an enemy. The walls of Rome were entered by thirtyen gates.
 - 1. The interior of this wonderful city surpassed all detion. The various generals who had conquered other tries, had robbed them of their choicest treasures, and had been brought to Rome to decorate and enrich apital.

There were beautiful statues from Greece, obelisks and is from Egypt, and a great variety of curious and costly ectures from Asia. Gold, silver, and precious stones in gathered from every part of the earth.

- 13. Nor was this all. The city was embellished temples, many of them of marble, and beautifully sculp there were also theatres, amphitheatres, porticoes, baths, triumphal arches, and aqueducts.
- 14. In short, the city of Rome was enriched wi spoils of the whole world, and had that air of pom magnificence which suited the capital of the greatest that the world ever saw.

QUESTIONS.—2. What of Rome during the reign of Augustus' did it include in Europe? 3. In Asia? 4. In Africa? What Africa were then known? Tell the direction of each of the conamed from Rome? 5. How did Rome govern all these n 6. What of the people of Rome? 7. With what were many cities 8. What of public works? What of aqueducts? 9. Describe the Rome. 11. How was the capital decorated? 13. What of temples buildings? 14. What of the city?

CHAP. LXXXIII.—EUROPE continued.

THE MEANS BY WHICH ROME ACQUIRED ITS POWER.

- 1. I TRUST you have now some faint idea of the ewealth, and power of the Roman empire. We cannot back upon it but with feelings of admiration; yet, wh look at the means which had been employed to establis dominion; when we look at the condition of mankind that age, and consider that this vast dominion soon cru into atoms, we cannot but feel the strongest emotions of
 - 2. In the first place, the means used to aggrandize

were those of conquest. The Roman generals went abroad to subdue other countries, for no other purpose than to acquire ame and spoils for themselves, and power for Rome.

BOME.

- 3. They slaughtered the inhabitants without mercy; they robbed them without scruple; and they subjected them to the Roman yoke without the slightest regard to the rights of mankind.
- 4. Such were the means by which the fabric of Roman power was erected. And what must have been the condition of mankind during the seven hundred years that Rome was carrying on its wars for no other purpose than to enslave the world?
- 5. It is true that a few men, generals, senators, consuls, and governors, might have lived in splendour, and enjoyed wealth and fame. Some of the Roman soldiers, too, might have led lives of adventure, gratifying to bold and restless birits.
 - 6. But how much suffering, sorrow, and despair, must be have been among the millions of wounded men; among millions who were bereaved of their friends; among millions who were stripped of their fortunes; among the ions who were reduced to slavery!

The simple truth is, that the policy of Rome was wholly in The Roman people, like the Greeks, Persians, tians, and other ancient nations, had some notions tue, and occasionally displayed noble and generous es.

- 8. Yet, like all these nations, they were destitute of morality; that morality which Christ has taught in a sentence: "Do to another as you would have another you." Like most other ancient nations, Rome was desired that true religion which teaches mankind that all prounded in injustice must perish.
- 9. Splendid as the Roman empire was, it was destituted glory. Its splendour was acquired by robbery; ar fame, though it might dazzle a heathen, will be regard a false renown by the Christian.
- 10. In closing this chapter, it is proper to state a ren able fact, that no heathen nation or country has ever ex where the people were generally lovers of justice, truth, charity. Public opinion in all heathen countries, an and modern, has been found to be an unsafe guide; it is in Christian countries, where the laws of truth and mor are established on the basis of the Bible, that the natifaith can be trusted.
- 11. Such as it was, the power of Rome was destine speedy decay. For a time after Augustus the empirer tained its sway, and the magnificence of Rome conting The luxury of the wealthy citizens even increased, and finement in many respects was carried to a higher pitch ever.
- 12. But the whole fabric was based upon a false for tion; and in a few centuries imperial Rome was diversory a host of ruthless invaders.

QUESTIONS.—1. What must we feel upon reading the history of Rome?

By what means did Rome rise to such a high pitch of renown? That of the Roman generals?

4. How many years was Rome at war with other nations?

5. What classes may have been benefited by hese wars? Who suffered from them?

7. What of Rome and her stitzens?

8. Were the people either truly moral or religious?

9. What of the splendour of Rome?

10. What may be said of heathen nations?

Christian nations?

11. State of Rome after the death of Augustus?

12. What was the final fate of Rome?

CHAP. LXXXIV.—EUROPE continued.

ROME UNDER THE EMPERORS.

- 1. THE Roman empire had now reached the height of its power, pomp, and splendour; but its decline had already commenced, because the people and their rulers were alike corrupt. It was like a great tree with wide-spreading ranches, but rotten at its trunk.
 - 2. In the course of about three hundred and fifty years or the death of Augustus Cæsar, there were thirty-six perors of Rome; but I can mention only a few of them. y lived in great luxury and splendour, but they were rally such wicked persons that it would have been better he world if they had never lived.

The next emperor to Augustus Cæsar was Tiberius. was a frightful-looking object, being bald and covered wores, and his disposition was far more hideous than his

This gloomy tyrant suspected every body of plotting ; his life.

- 4. He put so many people to death, that their dead is were piled in heaps in the public places. He once sent a poor woman to die, merely for lamenting the death c son. At last he fell into a swoon, and his guards smot him with his bed-clothes.
- 5. His successor was Caligula, who wished that the Roman people had but one head, that he might chop at a single blow. He also was murdered by his guards was succeeded by Claudius, an idiot. Claudius was poi by his own wife.
- 6. Nero was the next emperor. His whole reign scene of bloodshed. He murdered his mother and his He is said to have set Rome on fire, merely for the ple of seeing it blaze. While the city was in flames, they he sat on the top of a lofty tower, playing on a Finally, he was dethroned, and condemned to be beat death with rods. To escape this torture, he killed him
- 7. The two next emperors were Galba and Otho. first was killed by his soldiers, and the second communicide. The next was Vitellius. This monster deliquin visiting fields of battle, and snuffing up the smell of dead bodies.
- 8. When the Romans grew weary of Vitellius, they proper round his neck and hauled him into the most proper of the city. There they be spattered him with mudathen killed him in the most cruel manner. His head put on a lance, and his body dragged into the Tiber.

- 9. But I am weary, my dear young readers! My old heart grows sick and sad while I speak to you of these evil and miserable men. Forget what I have told you. Forget that such monsters have ever existed in the world.
- 10. Or, if you must remember them, remember too that their frightful crimes resulted from the possession of more power than mortal man ought ever to possess. And, above all, remember that, if these tyrants were the scourges of their people, it was because the people had not virtue enough to be free.

QUESTIONS.—1. To what can you compare the Roman empire?
2. How many emperors reigned after Augustus? What of them?
3. Give an account of Tiberius. 5. Describe Caligula. 6. What of Nero? 7. What of Galba and Otho? Vitellius? 10. What may you remember of the reigns of these monsters?

CHAP. LXXXV.—EUROPE continued.

FALL OF THE WESTERN EMPIRE OF THE ROMANS.

- 1. YET there were some good men among the Roman emperors. Such were Vespasian, Titus, Antoninus, Marcus Aurelius, Alexander Severus, Aurelian, and Diocletian. But these good men would doubtless have been better if their evil fortune had not made them emperors.
- 2. The first emperor who became a convert to Christianity

 The Constantine the Great. He began to reign in the year

 306 after the Christian era. By him the seat of government

 The Stransferred from Rome to Constantinople.

- 3. The religion of Christ was planted in various parts of the Roman empire by the apostles, but the first Christians were much persecuted. Some were whipped, many were imprisoned, and thousands were murdered.
- 4. Still their numbers increased. At length the emperor Constantine ordered that the persecutions should cease, and he himself became a convert to Christianity. This took place in 311.
- 5. It is said that Constantine was one day riding at the head of his army, when he saw a splendid cross in the heavens, upon which was written, "Conquer by this sign." It is supposed that this vision persuaded the emperor of the truth of the Christian religion, and induced him to adopt it as the religion of the state.
- 6. From this period Christianity flourished for a considerable time. The mythology of Greece and Rome, which had been extended throughout the Roman empire, gave wy before it. Many of the temples were converted into churche, and the people, who had been accustomed to bow down before the statues of Jupiter and other imaginary gods, knelt is humiliation at the foot of the cross.
- 7. In the year 364 after the birth of Christ, the Roman dominions were divided into the Eastern and Western empire. The capital of the Eastern empire was Constantinople, for merly Byzantium. The fate of this will be briefly related in the history of the Turks.
 - 8. The capital of the Western empire was Bonn. But

werful enough to defend had formerly conquered. rians from the north of Vandals, &c.

speak more particularly present to say, that they her to obtain wealth by Italy, than by the culti-

f these northern invaders led a large army against tion of the city. The om the ancient Romans, reebooter, promised him mise not being fulfilled, to plunder.

vas a scene of pillage and were slain, and a large ushes. This occurred in

but about the year 445, ed to follow the example nidst of his projects he red.

Western empire, with by Odoacer, the leader of another northern tribe called the Heruli; and it remains under this dominion for many years.

14. In the year 537, these barbarians were driven from Rome. This triumph was effected by Belisarius, an illustrious commander in the service of the emperor of the East The Eastern and Western empires were then reunited, but only for a short period. Italy, as well as Rome. from this time frequently changed hands, being sometimes under the sway of northern kings, and sometimes under the Greek emperors.

QUESTIONS.—1. What good emperors were there? 2. What of Constantine? When did he begin to reign? Where was the seat of government placed by Constantine? What was the former name of Constantinople? 3. What of the religion of Christ? First Christians? Persecutions? 4. What did Constantine do? 5. What is said to have happened to Constantine? 6. What of Christianity from this period? Mythology of Greece and Rome? Temples? People? 7. What took place 364 A.C.? What was the capital of the Eastern empire of Rome? 8. The Western empire? How was it ravaged and laid waste? 9. What of the northern barbarians? 10. What of Alaric? 11. What occurred is 410? 12. What happened about the year 445? 13. What of Odosco? 14. What happened in 537? Who was Belisarius? What did he de? What of the Eastern and Western empires? What of Italy? Rome?

CHAP. LXXXVI.—EUROPE continued.

PROGRESS OF THE DECLINE OF ROME.

I. In the tenth century, the emperor of Germany chine Italy as part of his dominions. Several cities resisted

225

authority. When the emperor, whose name was Otho, heard of it, he invaded Italy, and went to Rome.

- 2. He took possession of the palace, and prepared a magnificent feast. All the great men of Rome were invited. The emperor sat at the head of the table, on a splendid throne. The guests seated themselves, expecting to be feasted with luxuries.
- 3. But, before they had eaten a mouthful, Otho made a sign. Immediately the hall was filled with armed men. The emperor ordered the guests neither to move nor speak, on pain of death, whatever might take place. They trembled, and wished themselves away from the banquet.
- 4. One of the emperor's officers stood up, and read aloud the names of all who had opposed his authority. These unfortunate men had been invited to the feast, and were now sitting at the table. The emperor commanded them to be dragged into the middle of the hall and put to death. The executioner was in readiness, with a broad and heavy sword. One after another, the heads of the condemned persons rolled upon the floor of the hall. No mercy was shown to any of them.
- 5. When this dreadful scene was over, the emperor turned his attention to the banquet. His stern and wrathful aspect became mild and pleasing. He endeavoured to make the other guests enjoy themselves; but probably their appetites were not increased by the sight of dead bodies on the bloody score. This is a horrible story, and I only tell it to show

you the barbarous and cruel character of the men times.

- 6. In the course of years, Italy was divided int separate states or sovereignties. The principal of th Naples, Tuscany, Parma, Lombardy, Genoa, and Rome, with other territories, was given to the P these I shall give you a brief account; but befor ceed farther with the history of Rome, I will something of the manners and customs of the Romans.
- 7. Let me remark, however, that Rome was no changed from what it was in the days of August only was the empire broken in pieces, but the prou Rome itself had lost its former glory.
- 8. The number of its inhabitants had greatly din many of its most splendid edifices were falling in and the people, having been long mixed with ba had lost their former polish, and become partially b themselves.
- 9. Even the language of Rome and of all Italy as became changed. The people had formerly spoken to language; but this became mingled with the language; but this became mingled with the language the northern invaders, and thus the modern Italian dually formed. Such were the wonderful changes and Italy!

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the emperor of Germany? 2, 3, 4 did he do? Describe the banquet 6. How did Italy become

٤

What of the changes in Rome? 8. What of the inhabitants, edific c.? 9. Language of Rome?

CHAP. LXXXVII.—EUROPE continued.

MANNERS AND CUSTOMS OF THE ANCIENT ROMANS.

- 1. I AM now going to give you an account of the manners nd customs of the great people whose history you have just ead. I shall tell you about their domestic habits, and about heir public observances; about their state of society, agriulture, show, dresses, religion, marriage ceremonies, funeral ites, military institutions, and public edifices.
 - 2. The people of Rome, as you know, were first divided to two classes, the patricians and the plebeians. It was to e struggles for power between these ranks that most of the ficulties in the state were owing. To these ranks a third afterwards added, called equites, or knights: the cusof making slaves of the subjects of conquered nations duced a fourth division.

You have seen that the government of Rome was subovery numerous changes. At one time it was under a at others under consuls, dictators, emperors, &c. The officers of the state were numerous, and invested with fferent degrees of power.

ne ministers of religion among the Romans did not listinct order of citizens, but were chosen from

most virtuous and honourable men of the attended to the sacrifices of beasts to the gareligious rites. The superstitions of the time a establishment of a college of augurs, whose b to explain dreams, oracles, and prodigies, a future events.

- 5. They drew their auguries, or presages co rity, from the appearance of the heavens, the and inspection of the entrails of beasts. C could no more divine the future than the old w sometimes meet with in our villages, who pr your fortune" by examining the grounds of co
- 6. The weakest and most ignorant are no formed to give credit to these pretences. Fro can form some opinion as to the general int Romans, compared with that of our own cour
- 7. The augurs at Rome interpreted the wi the affairs of making war and peace, and no pute their authority. No business of important proceeded in without first consulting them; whatever it might be, was, by a decree of strictly observed.
- 8. The office of an augur was important and was sought after by many of the prince Roman senate. Cato, the censor, was college, and Cicero also; though they because fully sensible of the extravagance

they practised. A remark is attributed to Cato, that he wondered how one augur could look in the face of another without laughing.

QUESTIONS.—2. Into which four ranks or classes were the Roman citizens divided? 3. What of the government? Officers of state? 4. Ministers of religion? Superstitions? How did the augurs proceed? 5. What is said of these superstitions? 7. The augurs? 8. The office of an augur? Cato and Cicero? Remark of Cato?

CHAP. LXXXVIII.—EUROPE continued.

ABOUT RELIGION. DEITIES. TEMPLES. MARRIAGE.

- 1. THE religion of the Romans was borrowed from the Greeks, and included the worship of Jupiter and a multitude of other deities. Every virtue and vice of the human heart, very faculty of the mind and body, every property of the all and imaginary world, was presided over by its peculiar
 - d. Every grove and mountain and stream had its nymph naiad, and every hero and sage of the country was elevated the rank of a divinity.
 - Every religious sect was tolerated at Rome except the s and the Christians. These were persecuted with unting cruelty, until the mild precepts of the true religion phed over superstition and ignorance. Christianity at a prevailed over conflicting opinions, and was adopted religion of the state, A.D. 311.

he number of deities whom the Romans worshipped

occasioned the erection of a great multitude of temples. Many of these were very splendid edifices, adorned with all the arts of sculpture, and filled with offerings and sacrifices. The priests attended at the temples, and sacrificed sheep, bulls, oxen, and other animals.

- 4. Those temples erected to the inferior deities were of less magnificence and grandeur, and were merely styled sacred houses. In the dwelling of every wealthy family there was a private chapel, in which they worshipped their household gods. Ancient Rome is said to have contained four hundred and twenty temples, dedicated to different deities.
- 5. Marriage was very much favoured by the laws of Rome, and severe penalties were inflicted on those who remained single. At one period, the censors obliged all the young bachelors to make oath that they would marry within a certain time. Augustus increased the penalties on bachelors, and bestowed rewards on those who were parents of a permerous offspring.
- 6. The parties were betrothed some time before the active celebration of the marriage. This was attended with more ceremonies, at which the priests and augurs assisted. To contract of marriage was drawn up in the presence witnesses, and confirmed by the breaking of a straw between the engaged pair.
- 7. The bridegroom then presented his bride with wedding ring, and the father of the bride gave a great c

ainment. The wedding-ring was worn on the third finger of the left hand, from a notion that a nerve of that finger ommunicated directly with the heart.

- 8. In dressing the bride, they never failed to divide her ocks with the point of a spear, to signify that she was about o become the wife of a warrior. They then crowned her with a chaplet of flowers, and put on her a veil proper for the occasion.
- 9. Her toilet being completed, she was led in the evening owards the bridegroom's house by three boys, whose parents were still alive. Five torches were carried before her, and also a distaff and spindle. Having come to the door, she terself bound the posts with wreaths of wool washed over the melted tallow, to keep out witchcraft.
 - 10. In going into the house, she was by no means to uch the threshold, but was to be lifted over by main ength. When she had entered, the bridegroom presented with the keys, and with two vessels containing fire and er.
 - !. The bridegroom then gave a grand supper to all the any. The festival was accompanied with music and ng, and the guests sang verses in praise of the newad couple.

TIONS.—1. What of religion? 2. Toleration? Christianity? 3. said of the Roman deities? Their temples? Household gods? tage? Penalties? 6. Describe the marriage ceremonies.

CHAP. LXXXIX.-EUROPE continued.

ABOUT FUNERAL RITES AND CEREMONIES.

- 1. The funeral rites of the Romans present a very intere ing subject. Burning the dead, though practised by the Greeks from very early times, was not adopted in Rome till that the rages of the republic. It afterwards became universand was continued without interruption till the introduction of Christianity. It then gradually fell into disuse,
- 2. Among the Romans, the bed of the sick was new abandoned to hired nurses and servants. It was attended the relatives and intimates, who waited till the last hour, a bade a last farewell to their dying friend.
- 3. The body of the dead was bathed in perfumes, dress in rich garments, and laid out on a couch strewed wi flowers. The outer door of the house was shaded wi branches of cypress. According to the heathen mytholog Charon would not convey the departed spirit across to Styx without payment of a fixed toll. A small coin we therefore placed in the mouth of the deceased, to meet the demand.
- 4. The funeral took place by torchlight. The body we borne by near friends and relatives, on an open bier cover with the richest cloth. Lictors dressed in black regulated to procession. If the deceased had been a soldier, the bads

ROME, 233

of his rank were displayed, and the corps to which he belonged marched with their arms reversed.

- 5. Before the corpse were carried images of the deceased and his ancestors. Then followed musicians and mourning women, who were hired to sing his praises, and dancers and buffoons, one of whom attempted to represent the character of the dead man, and imitate his manner when alive.
- 6. The family of the deceased followed the bier in deep mourning; the sons with their heads covered, the daughters unveiled, and with their hair dishevelled. Magistrates and patricians attended without their badges or ornaments, and the procession was closed by the freed men of the deceased, with the cap of liberty on their heads.
- 7. The funeral ceremonies of a man of rank were distinguished by an oration in his honour, pronounced over the body by a friend. The scene of this display was the capitol, and in the latter ages of the republic it became very common. While the practice of burial prevailed, the body was either interred without a coffin, or placed in a kind of deep chest called a sarcophagus.
- 8. On the termination of the rites, the sepulchre was strewed with flowers, and the mourners took a farewell of the remains of their friend. The attendants were then prinkled with water by the priests, and all were dismissed.
- 9. When the custom of burning the body was introduced, a funeral pile was raised in the form of an altar, and the bies

was placed upon it. The procession then moved all about to the sound of solemn music, when the nearest tive advanced from the train with a lighted torch, and fire to the pile.

- 10. Perfumes and spices were then thrown into the l and the embers were quenched with wine. The ashes collected and placed in a costly urn, which was deposit the family sepulchre. In the funeral solemnities of a sol his arms, and the spoils he had won from the enemy, sometimes added to the funeral pile.
- 11. It was a horrid belief of the heathen nations, tha spirits of the dead were pleased with blood. It was custom to sacrifice on the tomb of the deceased those ani to which he was most attached during his life. In the remote and barbarous ages, men were often the victims also were domestic slaves and captives taken in war; sometimes friends gave themselves to be sacrificed from ings of affection.
- 12. No burial was allowed within the walls of the except to the vestal virgins, and some families of high tinction. The tombs of military men were usually raise the field of Mars, and those of private citizens in the gar of their villas, or by the side of the public roads.
- 13. Many of these monuments are still standing. sepulchres of the great and wealthy are engraven with and pompous lists of their titles, honours, and achievement to tombs of the humble bear but a simple lesson to

ROME. 235

reader, and some beautiful and touching expressions of sor row or hope for the departed.

- 14. How much more affecting and impressive are the simple rites of Christian burial, than the pomp and splendour of the Roman! There is nothing that speaks more strongly to the heart than a funeral ceremony in a village of our own country.
- 15. Every thing is so still, and simple, and unaffected, that the mind rests only on the solemnity of death, without being distracted by display and splendour. The friends and relatives assemble at the house of the deceased, follow the body in silent procession, and enter with it into the unadorned grave-yard where the generations of the family are sleeping.
- 16. After an impressive burial-service, conducted by the clergyman, the body is consigned to the earth whence it came, dust to dust. The mourners then return to their sad homes, cheered, however, with the blessed consolations which their religion promises.

QUESTIONS.—1. What is said of burning the dead? 2. The bed of the dying? 3. The body of the dead? Notion in regard to Charon? 1. The funeral? 5. The procession? 7. Oration? 8. Conclusion of the ceremonies? 9. Ceremony of burning the body. 12. What is said the burial-places? 13. Monuments? 14. Christian rites?

UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

CHAP. XC.—EUROPE continued.

AS, MODE OF PLOUGHING. FARM-HOUSES. GRAIN. CATTLE. PERSTITIONS OF THE FARMERS. GARDENS. VINES.

on mans. In the early and more virtuous ages of the cultivation of the fields, and a few rude trades contituit, were the only occupations.

he man most valued and honoured was the best husin; and many of the most ancient families received ames from their success in the cultivation of plants, or large of cattle.

It is probable that at this period the ground was broken ly by the spade. Afterwards, when the farms were ed, more expeditious means were discovered. Some of oman modes of ploughing are still in use. They always hed with oxen, a single pair, or sometimes three abress, by the neck and horns.

The farm-houses were at first little huts, but they were inlarged to suit the increasing possessions of the owners ad, at a later period, of large storehouses and granellars for wine and oil, barns, together with separate ngs for the care and rearing of every species of domesimal.

The kinds of grain in common cultivation were the sthose now known in Europe, with the exception of

5. M1 ∹ time : · Goa; ∹se stuff . The wined fro : := seven oxen i C-27. . The ske Edary of th of blig whed with King. In the 1 ed only a fe ≥ =ore delic adaced at a

ROME. 237

maize or Indian corn, which was first found in America. The ancient mode of converting grain into meal, was by pounding it with an instrument something like the pestle and mortar. Mills moved by cattle and by water are later inventions.

- 6. Much care was paid by the Romans to the rearing of cattle. Sheep were secured under cover during the winter, notwithstanding the mildness of the Italian climate. Shearing time was a season of general festivity.
- 7. Goats were made as profitable to the farmer as sheep. Their hair was clipped every year, and woven into a kind of coarse stuff, and their milk was the chief supply of the dairy.
- 8. The Roman farmers were very superstitious. They refrained from all labour on the fifth day of the new moon; on the seventh and tenth they planted vines, and harnessed young oxen to the yoke; on the ninth they commenced a journey.
- 9. The skeleton of an ass's head was hung up at the boundary of the farm, to enrich the soil and drive away the effects of blight. The same figure carved in brass, and trowned with vines, was affixed as an ornament to their couches.
- 10. In the remote ages, the gardens of the Romans contained only a few of the common pot-herbs and orchard-trees. The more delicious fruits, and more beautiful flowers, were introduced at a much later period from Persia and other parts of Asia.

- 11. The style of ornamental gardening was mal, producing a gloomy shade rather than d tiful scenery. It was the fashion to fill the dark walks shaded with evergreens, loaded wi bounded by high clipped hedges.
- 12. It is supposed that the Romans obtaine of the cultivation of the grape, and of the wine, from Greece. They took great care yards, and laboured in cultivating the plants and industry.
- 13. The mode of gathering and pressing the same that is now practised. The vintage was tival, and the rustics made merry with the perude kind of comedy, and pouring out libation to Jupiter and Venus.
- 14. The wine appears to have differed from times; it was kept in jars formed like urns are said to have been so large as to have m a load for a yoke of oxen. They were com cellars, but were sometimes buried in th bedded in solid masonry. The wine was great age. It was held in less favour Greece, and was much cheaper.

QUESTIONS.—1. What were the early occups 2, 3. What is said of their mode of ploughing? Other buildings? What kinds of grain What is said of cattle? 8. Superstitions of t

ROME. 239

duce of the gardens? From what countries did the Romans introduce the finer fruits and flowers? 11. Ornamental gardening? 12. What is said of the grape? Wine? The vintage? 14. Wine jars?

CHAP. XCI.—EUROPE continued.

COUNTRY HOUSES. DESCRIPTION OF PLINY'S VILLA. AQUEDUCTS.

- 1. I AM now going to describe the Roman villas, or country seats. Originally they were nothing more than very humble farm-houses; but, with the progress of wealth and luxury, they were made by degrees more extensive and costly.
- 2. Some of them were surrounded with large parks, in which deer and various foreign wild animals were kept. Large fishponds were also not unfrequently attached to them, and were stocked at great expense. Generally, however, the villas were merely surrounded by gardens, and in size and appearance resembled those of modern Italy.
- 3. The philosopher, Pliny the younger, was a nobleman and man of fortune, and the owner of four magnificent villas. Of two of these he has left minute descriptions. One of them I will now tell you about. It was seated on a rising ground, facing the south, with the Apennine mountains raising their tall cliffs in the distant background.
- 4. A portico fronted the house, with a terrace before it, adorned with various figures, and bounded by a hedge of

- box. Hence you passed by an easy descent into a lawn surrounded by walks, and adorned with box cut into the shapes of various animals.
- 5. Beyond this lawn you entered a ground for exercise, laid out in the form of a circus, ornamented with well-trimmed box and other shrubs, and fenced with a wall covered by box. On the outside of the wall was a meadow, and beyond were other meadows, fields, and thickets.
- 6. Opposite the portico stood a square edifice, which encompassed a small area or space shaded by four plane-trees, with a fountain in the midst, refreshing the surrounding verdure. This apartment consisted of a bed-chamber and a dining-room. A second portico looked out upon this little area.
- 7. Another room, situated by the nearest plane-tree, enjoyed constant greenness and shade. In the same building were dressing-rooms, porticoes, baths, and rooms for playing different games. The sides of one room were crusted half-way with carved marble: thence, to the ceiling, branches of trees were painted, with birds intermixed with the foliage.
- 8. In front of these buildings and porticoes was a pricious circus, surrounded by plane-trees covered with ivy. Between these were planted box and bay-trees, minging their shade. The inward circular walks were perfumed with roses.
 - 2. A thousand different and fantastic shapes were give

to the box that bordered the straight and winding alleys that crossed the grounds. At the end of one of these walks was an alcove of white marble, shaded with vines and supported by four pillars.

- 10. A fountain here emptied itself into a marble basin, contrived with so much art as to be always full, without overflowing. Sometimes Pliny supped here with his friends, and then the basin served for a table, the larger vessels being placed about the margin, and the smaller ones swimming about in the form of little boats and water-fowl.
- 11. In front of the alcove stood a summer-house of exquisite marble, with projecting doers which opened into a green enclosure. Next to this was a private recess, furnished with a couch, and shaded by a spreading vine which reached to the top. Here also a fountain alternately rose and disappeared. In different parts of the walks were several marble seats, and throughout the whole circus were small rills, refreshing the grass and other plants.
- 12. Such is the description which Pliny the younger has given us of one of his villas. You will see that it was very magnificent, and there were many others throughout Italy of equal splendour. You will perceive by this that the wealthy Romans lived in a style of great luxury in the time of the emperors.
- 13. It was not till the year 441, after its foundation, that Rome obtained its supplies of water by means of aqueducts. They afterwards became so numerous that it has been calcus-

lated they furnished the city about five hundred thousand hogsheads every day. They were built of brick, and were sometimes thirty, forty, or even sixty miles in length.

- 14. The water was conveyed to reservoirs, and thence distributed through metal pipes over the town in great abundance. Only three aqueducts now remain for modern Rome; yet so pure are the sources from which they draw their supplies, that few cities can boast of such clear and healthful water.
- 15. Great attention was paid to ornament in the erection of the aqueducts. One built by Agrippa, when sedile under Augustus, contained one hundred and thirty reservoirs, and five hundred fountains, adorned with statues and columns. Remains of many of these great works at this day bear witness to their beauty and convenience.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the Roman villas?

3. Pliny the younger?

4. Describe his villa. 5. Ground for exercise. 6. Edifice opposite the portico. Rooms of this building. 8. Circus. 10. Fountain. Basta. 11. Summer-house. Other ornaments. 13. Aqueducts. Their length. Quantity of water carried daily to the city. 14. Remains. 15. Aqueduct built by Agrippa.

ROME. 243

CHAP. XCII.—EUROPE continued.

MILITARY AFFAIRS OF THE ROMANS. DIVISION OF THE ARMY. THE IMPERIAL EAGLE. MUSIC. ARMS. DRESS. MILITARY REWARDS. CROWNS. THE TRIUMPH.

- 1. You know that the Romans were almost continually engaged in wars. Their military affairs, therefore, occupied the attention of the most distinguished citizens. According to the Roman laws, every freeborn citizen was a soldier, and bound to serve in the army at any period from the age of seventeen to that of forty-six.
- 2. The Roman forces were divided into legions, each of which originally consisted of three thousand foot soldiers and three hundred horsemen, but afterwards varied in strength from between four and five thousand men to between six and seven thousand. The standard of the legion was the imperial eagle.
- 3. This was made of gilt metal, was borne on a spear by un officer of rank, and was regarded by the soldiers with reverence which approached to devotion. The cavalry uried pennons, on which the initials of the emperor or of the legion were embroidered in letters of gold.
 - 4. The only instrument of martial music among the mans was the brazen trumpet. Some of the soldiers armed with light javelins, and others with a heavier pon of a similar description. All, however, carried ds and short swords, which they were on the right side.

- 5. They were dressed in a metal cuirass, with an uncovering of cloth, which was generally red, and hung to the knee. On the head they were brazen helmets of mented with flowing tufts of horse-hair. The uniform the generals was an open scarlet mantle.
- 6. The cavalry wore a coat of mail, of brazen or scales, or of chain-work, sometimes plated with gold. U this they wore a close garment which reached to buskins. They rode without stirrups, and their saddles merely cloths folded to suit the convenience of the r The discipline of the army was maintained with great st ness and severity.
- 7. Rewards of various kinds were held out to those distinguished themselves by an extraordinary exploit particular kind of crown, called a mural crown, was sented to him who, in the assault, first scaled the ramp of a town.
- 8. A soldier who saved his comrade's life in battle entitled to the civic crown, which was thought a distinct of the highest honour. It was composed of caken bout The general who conquered in a battle was decorated will laurel wreath.
- 9. But the highest ambition of every Roman commass was to obtain a triumph. This was the gift of the senses, was only granted on occasions of splendid victory. Whe was decreed the general returned to Rome, and was appoint to the supreme command of the city on the day of his senses.

- 10. A sculptured arch was erected, under which the procession was to pass, and scaffoldings were raised for spectators in all the public squares and streets. The procession moved at daylight from beyond the walls of the city.
- 11. A band of cavalry, with military music, took the lead. They were followed by a train of priests in their sacred robes, with attendants leading to sacrifice a hecatomb or hundred of the whitest oxen. Next came chariots laden with spoils, the arms and standard of the conquered, followed by long trains of the captives conducted by lietors.
- 12. Loud notes on the trumpet then announced the approach of the victor, dressed in a robe of purple, crowned with laurels, and bearing a sceptre of ivory. He rode in a spleadid car drawn by four horses, preceded by the Roman cagle, guarded by a troop of cavalry.
- 13. The most distinguished officers of the army, in their richest dress and trappings, surrounded him; a band of children clothed in white followed, flinging clouds of perfumes and flowers in the air, and singing hymns of praise to the conqueror.
- 14. Last of all came the victorious army, their weapons wreathed with laurel, and their burnished armour gleaming in the sunshine. Countless multitudes of the citizens lined the streets, and every window and every scaffolding shone with beauty. The procession was greated on all sides by land aschamations; joy and revelry reigned in the city; and

١

a scene was displayed of magnificence and gorgeousness n to be paralleled in modern times.

QUESTIONS.—1. What is said of the military affairs? 2. Divisic of the army? 3. Standard? Pennons? 4. Instruments of mart music? Weapons? 5. Dress of the soldiers? Generals? 6. Dr of the cavalry? 7. Rewards of the army? Crowns? 9. Describe t triumph of a victorious general.

CHAP. XCIII.—EUROPE continued.

ABOUT NAVAL AFFAIRS. THE WAR GALLEY. COMMERCE. SHOWS C
WILD BEASTS. EXHIBITIONS OF GLADIATORS.

- 1. The first vessel of the Roman navy is said to have be built after the model of a Carthaginian galley taken in we Their ships were roughly and slightly constructed, an though very large, unfit to contend with boisterous and tempestuous weather.
- 2. They were clumsy and ill-fashioned, with a high ster and sides, and rowed with two or three tiers of oars on different decks. The prows of the ship were armed with irousually carved into the shape of some animal's head; the was done in order to enable the vessel to disable or sink the enemy's ship; the upper deck was surmounted with a more able turret, from which the soldiers could throw their weapon with advantage.
- 3. The merchant ships of the Romans were of a size of responding with the purposes for which they were intended

Before the discovery of the magnet, by which the mariner can now direct his course in safety over the pathless waves, navigation was necessarily confined to the coast. These coasting vessels were considered large if they reached the burden of fifty tons.

- 4. Rome was long supplied with the products of the East by the merchants of the maritime states of the Mediterranean. It was not till the conquest of Egypt by Augustus that the trade became exclusively her own. Of this commerce Alexandria was the centre.
- 5. The principal exports into Italy from India consisted of drugs and spices; of cotton cloths and muslins from the coasts of Coromandel and Malabar; of silk from China; and of large quantities of diamonds and pearls from Bengal and the pearl fisheries near Cape Comorin. From Persia and Arabia they procured the richest carpets, silks, and embroidered stuffs, together with rice and sugar.
- 6. The first Amphitheatre erected in Rome, for the shows of wild beasts and gladiators, was a mere temporary building of wood, probably erected by Julius Cæsar. The Flavian amphitheatre, better known by the name of Colisæum, was commenced in the reign of Vespasian, and is supposed to have been large enough to contain upwards of eighty thousand persons.
 - 7. The wild beasts were secured in dens round the arena or open space in the centre, which was strongly fenced, and arrounded by a canal, to guard the spectators against their

attacks. A vast number of wild beasts were made to destroy each other in these very cruel exhibitions.

- 8. Eleven thousand are said to have been alain during four months of triumph in honour of a conquest over the Dacians; and five hundred lions were killed in a few days on another similar occasion.
- 9. The first public combats of gladiators took place at Rome in the close of the fifth century from the foundation of the city. They were exhibited at a funeral. From that period they became frequent on such occasions, and afterwards on days of public festival were considered a material part of the ceremonies.
- 10. Five hundred pairs of these wretched beings have frequently been led to the public games, to sacrifice each other for the amusement of barbarous spectators. They were at first taken from captives in war, or malefactors; afterwards, from slaves trained to the profession.
- 11. They fought with various weapons, some in complete armour, others with only a trident and a net, in which they endeavoured to entangle their adversary, and thus slay him
- 12. It is needless to give a minute account of these inherman customs. They were conducted with the most bloody and savage spirit, and are sufficient proofs of the degraded and brutalized condition of the period in which they were tolerated.

QUESTIONS.—1. First vessel of the Roman navy? 2. Describe the war galley. 3. What is said of the Roman merchant ships? Market

sting vessels? 4. How was Rome supplied with the pro
East? 5. What was the principal imports into Italy?

said of the first amphitheatre? 7. Destruction of wild

Gladiatorial combats? 11. Weapons of the gladiators?

d of these exhibitions?

CHAP. XCIV.—EUROPE continued.

ARIOT RACING. THE CIRCUS. CARRIAGES. PRIVATE ENTERTS. SUPPER-BOOMS. CONVIVIAL PARTIES. LUXURIES.
LL now change the picture, and give you an account
of the less barbarous amusements of the Romans.
ese were several games of ball, played, as among
ith the hand and foot. The young men chiefly
a sports in the open air, that would make them
and vigorous. Boxing, wrestling, and throwing
formed a prominent part of these amusements;
t-driving took the lead of all others.
the better enjoyment of horse and chariot races,
an enclosed course immediately adjoining the city,
circus. It was rather more than a mile in circumnd was surrounded with seats and three tiers

he centre was a barrier of twelve feet in breadth, set high, around which the race was performed; and I was a triumphal arch, through which the success-seer drove, followed by the shouts and applause of bly.

: chariots usually started together, the drivers of

which were distinguished by dresses of different colours. Each colour had its particular partisans, who betted largely on the success of their favourite. These sports were exceedingly popular, and repeated in endless succession.

- 5. Of the form of carriages in use among the Romans we have no precise description. They were of various kinds, open and covered, chairs and couches, borne on poles by slaves in livery. The couch was furnished with pillows and a mattress, and with feet of silver or gold to support it when set down. There were also close litters drawn by mules, and carriages on two and four wheels, painted of various colours, and highly ornamented.
 - 6. The horses were yoked to the carriage by means of a curved cross-bar passing over their necks, and were directed by bridles and reins, which were sometimes of embroidered silk, with gold bits.
 - 7. Besides mules and horses, many other animals were occasionally used in carriages, such as dogs, goats, and deer, and even bears, leopards, lions, and tigers. But this, of course, was merely for a whimsical amusement, and not for real service.
- 8. When the Romans were poor and simple, they live chiefly on milk and vegetables, with a coarse kind of padding made of flour and water. But as they began to grow powerful, and to conquer the neighbouring nations, they became acquainted with the luxuries of the people they subdust, and introduced them into their own state.

- 9. As they found in Greece models of the fine arts, so Asia furnished them with new and numerous sources of cleasure in the gratification of their senses. In the later lays of the republic, great attention was paid to the arts of the cook, and various apartments were constructed in the houses of the rich for the entertainment of company.
- 10. The supper-rooms of some of the emperors were hung with cloths of gold and silver, enriched with jewels. Tables were made for them of fine gold, and couches with frames of nassive silver. The Romans always reclined on couches to take their meals.
- 11. At great entertainments the supper-room was hung with flowers, and the guests were crowned with garlands. The floor was generally bare, though richly ornamented, and he ceiling was inlaid with a fretwork of gold and ivory. Sented oil was used for lighting the apartments, and masses carved lamps of figured bronze reflected their brilliancy the gay and beautiful scene.
 - 2. Some of the more voluptuous and degraded of the nan emperors, in the decay of the republic, were most avagant and ridiculous in providing rare dishes for their. The livers and brains of small birds, the heads of ts and pheasants, and the tongues of peacocks and
 - ingales, formed a part of their daily food.

But the most luxurious dish that graced the table of omans was an entire boar, roasted, and stuffed with and poultry. How miserable must have been the condition of the people, whose masters could lavish their wealth in such wanton and disgraceful indulgence of the commonest appetite!

- 14. On one occasion, the senate was assembled to consult on the best mode of dressing an immense turbot which had been presented to the emperor. In our time, a council of eooks might have been called on an affair of so much importance, but it would hardly have been a subject to bring before the rulers of the people.
- 15. The Romans, however, would have been less rapidly enslaved and degraded, if their emperor and senate had always been employed as innocently as in discussing the most desirable manner of dressing a fish.

QUESTIONS.—1. Games of the Roman youths? 2. The chees?
4. The chariots? Their drivers? 5. What is said of the form of the Roman carriages? 6. How were the horses harnessed and managed?
7. What other animals were sometimes used? 8. Early living of the Romans? Introduction of luxuries? 9. Arts of cookery? 10. Supperrooms? 11. Ornaments of the supper-room? 12. Costly dishes of the Roman emperors? 14. Describe consultations held upon dishes.
15. What of the Romans?

CHAP. XCV.—EUROPE continued.

ABOUT THEATRES. CLOCKS AND WATCHES. THE FIRE ARTS. 2023
AND WRITERG. COSTUME, CONCLUSION.

1. THEATRICAL entertainments were first introduced into Rome in the year of the city 391. They were considerate

258

little more than dances to the sound of the flute. It was more than a hundred years before the drama attained to much dignity or excellence.

ROME.

- 2. Actors were always held in contempt, but were enabled, from the patronage they received, to accumulate large fortunes. Theatres were at first built in the villages in the vicinity; the first permanent edifice of this kind in the city was built of stone, and calculated to contain forty thousand spectators.
- 3. The use of such clocks and watches as we have at present was unknown to the Romans. The sun-dial was introduced 440 years after the building of the city. About a century afterwards, a kind of water-clock was introduced, which was contrived with much ingenuity, and answered all purposes for the measurement of time.
- 4. The fine arts were unknown in Rome till after the sixth century of her existence, when they were introduced by the successful captains of her armies, from the nations they had conquered. After a taste for the arts had been thus formed, large enclosed galleries were built around the mansions of the rich, and were adorned with the finest specimens of painting and sculpture.
 - 5. In the dwellings of the most affluent patricians these galleries also contained splendid libraries, which were open to the inspection of the learned and the curious. Collections of books were then of course very rare, on account of the great expense and difficulty of transcribing them.

- 6 They were sometimes written on parchment, but more frequently on a paper made from the leaves of a plant called papyrus. The leaves were pasted together at the ends, and then made up into a roll, which was enclosed in a covering of skin, or silk, fastened with strings, or clasps.
- 7. Writing was performed with a reed, split and pointed like our pen, and dipped in ink. Matters not intended for preservation, were usually written with a pointed instrument on tables spread with wax. When letters were sent forward for delivery, they were perfumed and tied with silken thread, the ends of which were sealed with common wax.
- 8. The usual garments of the Romans were the toga and the tunic; the former was a loose woollen robe of a semi-circular form, and without sleeves; the latter a close white garment, worn when abroad under the toga, but alone in the house. The men usually went bareheaded.
- 9. For the feet the usual coverings were the buskin and the sandal. The buskin reached about half-way up the leg; the sandal was a mere sole, fastened to the foot by streps and buckles.

QUESTIONS.—1. When were theatrical exhibitions introduced at Rome? What is said of them? 2. Actors? Theatres? 3. Clocks and watches? Sun-dials? Water-clock? 4. What is said of the fine arts? 5. Libraries? Books? Paper? 7. Writing? Letters? 8. Usual garments of the Romans?

CHAP. XCVI.—EUROPE continued.

ROME UNDER THE POPES.

- 1. I WILL now proceed to finish the history of Rome. I have already had occasion to speak of the Pope. This title was given to the bishops at a very early period of the Christian church. At first, the pope of Rome was only one of the superior dignitaries of the church; but in the course of years he became the head of it, and both claimed and exercised an authority superior to that of any king or emperor.
- 2. For a long time, the popes of Rome had authority only in matters of religion; but Gregory III., about the year 731, resisted the Greek emperor who ruled over Italy, and esta-lished the title of the pope to reign over Rome in matters f state. From this time forward the popes rapidly acquired ower, and in the year 760 they had extensive possessions d immense wealth. Their pride was now equal to their wer, and neither seemed to have any bounds.
 - Let The popes claimed the authority of God's viceroys on the They called themselves the successors of St. Peter, said that the keys of heaven and hell were given into custody. No other tyranny had ever been like theirs, hey tyrannized over the souls of men.

Other potentates are content with wearing a single 1; but the popes crowned themselves with three, rising

one above the other. This crown is called a tiara. They assumed the title of Holiness; but some of them were as unholy men as ever lived, being full of earthly ambition, and stained with many sins.

- 5. When their power was at its height, they showed themselves to be the haughtiest of mortals. Nobody was allowed to enter their presence without kneeling down to kiss their toes. When they mounted on horseback, they caused kings and emperors to hold their stirrups.
- 6. They took away kingdoms from the rightful sovereigns, and gave them to others. A pope by the name of Clement, declared that God had given him all the kingdoms of heaven and earth. If any person denied the pope's authority, he was burnt alive!
- 7. In 1077 Pope Gregory obliged Henry IV., empered of Germany, to stand three days, in the depth of winter, barefooted at his castle gate, to implore his pardon. In 1191, another pope kicked another emperor's crown off his had while he was kneeling before him, to show that the pope could make and unmake kings at his pleasure.
- 8. It was near the year 1100; that one of the popes of Rome ordained that the title of pope should be given only to the bishop of Rome. It was about this period that the power of the pope was at its highest pitch. For nearly hundred years this potentate continued to exercise an almost undisputed sway over the people, and even the kings and princes of the Christian world.

- 9. During this age, great mental darkness prevailed throughout Europe, Asia, and Africa; and though Rome was the seat of the popes, now more powerful than any sovereign, the people were generally in a state of ignorance and degradation.
- 10. But in the year 1517, the Reformation was commenced by a man called Martin Luther. He preached against the power of the popes, and all Europe was shaken with the convulsion which followed. The result was, that the authority of the popes was thrown off by many of the governments throughout Christendom, though it is supposed that fifty millions of people were killed in the wars that took place during this period of agitation.
- 11. The pope still governs Rome, but his authority does not extend over other countries, except in relation to the Roman Catholic religion. It is probable that some modification will shortly be made in his remaining power, in deference to the wishes of the Italians for the unity of all Italy. He is the head of the Roman Catholic church throughout the world.
- 12. The city of Rome at present is thirteen miles in circumference. The greater part of it has a dark, gloomy, and desolate appearance. It is full of old ruins of palaces and temples, and other magnificent edifices of the ancient Romans. Innumerable statues are supposed to be buried under ground.
- 13. Travellers are wonder-struck by these tokens of the antique Roman greatness. But, instead of the mighty warriors of old Rome, they find only a degraded people. Their

spirit has been crushed by ages of servitude and supe but it is now partially rebelling against the long-or oppressions.

14. But these ruins and relics are not only the re ancient Rome. There are a good many works still written by the old Roman authors, who copied a Greek writers. These are in the Latin language, w I have before said, was spoken by the Romans. I them are very interesting, and modern nations have from these a large part of their most valuable l institutions.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the popes in early times? 2. Wh gory III.? When was the pope's title to rule over Rome est What of the popes in the year 760? Their pride and power? did the popes claim? What did they call themselves? Wh tyranny? 4. What of the crowns of the popes? What titl assume? 5. How did their pride manifest itself? 6. Wh. Clement? What was done to those who resisted the pope? did pope Gregory do in 1077? What of another pope in 1191; of the power of the pope about the year 1100? When w highest pitch? How long did its sway continue? 9. Wha state of the world at this time? Of Rome? 10. What too 1517? What of Martin Luther? What was the result of mation? 11. What of the pope at the present day? Who dominions? Of what church is he the head? 12. What sent city of Rome? 13. How are travellers affected in Rome of the people? How has their spirit been crushed? 14. W Roman works? In what language are they written? Wha moderns derived from these works?

воит. 259

CHAP. XCVII.—EUROPE continued.

ABOUT THE FORMER ITALIAN STATES.

- 1. You know that Italy was divided into several distinct kingdoms or states. Each of these has its history, and at some future day it will be well for you to read the story of these celebrated countries. In this little book I can only give you a very brief account of two or three of them.
- 2. The kingdom of Naples, or the kingdom of the Two Sicilies, included the island of Sicily and the southern extremity of the peninsula of Italy. It embraced the foot and part of the leg of the figure of the boot which I have before mentioned.
- 3. The history of Naples, after it was separated from the Roman empire, possesses very little interest. In 1859, Victor Emanuel II., King of Sardinia, obtained Lombardy, part of the Papal States, and the duchies of Parma and Modena; and in 1860 the grand duchy of Tuscany, The Marches, Umbria, and Naples, or the two Sicilies, over which, and his own kingdom of Piedmont, he now reigns as King of Italy. Savoy was ceded to France in 1861.
- 4. The history of Venice is more interesting. When the northern barbarians invaded Italy in 452, the inhabitants, living in the vicinity of the present city of Venice, settled in the marshes along the border of the sea, and supported themelves by fishing, making salt, and by commerce.

- 5. In the year 809, they commenced building the city of Venice on a little island called Rialto. To this place they transported their riches, and soon the new city and state increased, until at length Venice was one of the most powerful states in the world.
- 6. The inhabitants paid great attention to commerce, and such was the number of their ships, that in the eleventh century Venice sent a fleet of two hundred sail to assist in the first crusade. It was on account of the interest which this state had in maritime matters, that the Doge, who was the chief officer, used to be wedded to the sea with pompous ceremonies
- 7. The power of Venice continued to increase, and in process of time the proud city of Constantinople was captured by its armies, aided by the crusaders. The spoils of the captured city, consisting of gems and jewellery, books, marbles, pictures, statues, obelisks, and other costly treasures, were chiefly carried to Venice.
- 8. The republic increased in wealth and power for many years, but the people were often sorely oppressed. In the 18th century it succumbed to France, and in 1798, was cold to Austria, who retained it till 1866, when, at the close of the brief struggle between Prussia and Austria (Italy taking part with Prussia), it was incorporated with the kingdom of Italy.
- 9. I could fill a book with tales about Genoa; it was one time the rival of Venice; about Tuscany, which is ear sidered the most beautiful portion of Italy; and about the

n of Sardinia, now including the northern parts of and Naples. But, as it is impossible to get a long to a little book, I must let these things pass.

TONS.—1. How is Italy now divided? 2. What did the king-laples include? Population? Direction from Rome? 3. Who esent King of Italy? What States are included in the new? 4. What of the history of Venice? 5. When and where ice built? What did it become? 6. What of its commerce? The Doge? 7. Power of Venice? What city was taken by Venice Crusaders? 8. What of the republic of Venice for many years? France? What of Venice since 1798? 9. What of Genoa? Sardinia? Direction of each of these places from Rome?

CHAP. XCVIII.—EUBOPE continued.

CHRONOLOGY OF ROME. B.C. of Rome by Romulus 752 mpilius made king 715 stilius succeeds Numa . 672 'arquin the Proud, and his family expelled 509 hosen . 490 chosen 451 ablished 437 by the Gauls **3**90 ablished . 361 3 Samnites 843 odnced 312 ult . 811 nits to Rome . 270 'ar begins 264 War begins . 218 rar begins 249

Carthage destroye		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Spain becomes a	Provi	ince o	f Ror	ne	•	•	•	•	•	
Social War begin	8	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	
War between Ma	rius e	and Sy	ylla	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Pompey defeats I	4ithr	idates	}		•	•	•	•	•	
Triumvirate form	ed be	etweer	a Por	npey,	Cæse	ır, an	d Cra	8548		
Cæsar invades Br	itain		•	•	•	•	•	•		
Battle of Pharsal	ia, ar	ıd dea	th of	Pom	pey		•	•		
Death of Cæsar	•				•	•	•	•		
Second Triumvire	ite			•		•	•	•		
Gaul conquered b	y the	Rom	ans	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Death of Augustu	ıs Cæ	sar								
Tiberius died						•				
Caligula died							•			
Claudius ascends	the t	hrone	1				•	•		
Nero died .		•						•		
Vitellius ascends	the t	hrone						•		
Titus ascends the	thro	ne								
Hyginus, first bis	hop c	f Ror	ne w	ho too	k the	title	of Po	ре		
Constantine bega	n to	reign						•		
Christianity adop			empe	ror o	f Ron	16		•		
Constantine remo	ves t	he se	at of	empir	e to (Const	antin	ople	•	
Rome divided into	the	Easte	rn an	d We	stern	empi	re by '	Theo	dosi	
Rome taken by A			•	•		•	•			
Italy invaded by	Attil	A.	•		•	•	•	•	•	
Rome taken by O	doac	er			•		•	•	•	
Goths driven from	a Ro	me by	Beli	sarius	l	•	•		•	
The Pope's supre	macy	over	the (Christ	ian cl	hurch	estal	lishe	d	
Custom of kissing	the	Pope'	s toe	intro	duced	l		•		
Gregory III., founder of the Pope's temporal power, became pope										
he Pope's tempo	oral I	19WO	estab	lished	i	•		•		
enice built	•	•	•	•		•		•	•	
O IX. the first	TOTA	a tha	t ker	as t	run i			•		

TURKHY.		261
		A.D.
Henry IV. obliged to stand three days at the Pope's gate	•	1077
Pope's authority introduced into England	•	1079
The Pope kicks off Henry the Fourth's crown	•	1191
Residence of the Pope removed to Avignon, in France		1308
Reformation commenced by Martin Luther	•	1517
Rome sacked, and Pope Clement imprisoned		1527
Pope's residence removed a second time to Avignon .	•	1531
Kissing the Pope's toe abolished		1773
Political influence of the popes ceased in Europe		1787
Venice attached to Austria		1798
Pope Pius VI. defeated by Buonaparte		1798
Italy formed into a kingdom		1805
Genoa annexed to the French empire	•	1805
The kingdom of Italy established on the overthrow of Napole	eo n	1811
Genoa transferred to the King of Sardinia		1816
Son of Buonaparte, ex-King of Rome, died	•	1832
Establishment of the Pope's authority proclaimed at Rome	а.	1849
The Pope arrives at Rome from Portici		1850
The Pope names fourteen Cardinals. Dr. Wiseman is on	е.	1851
Death of Father Roothan, the general of the Jesuits .	•	1853
concordat between Austria and the Pope signed		1856
nstrians driven out of Lombardy by French and Sardinis	ins	1859
evolution in Tuscany, Parma, Modena, and Bologna .		1859
sh agitation in support of the Pope's temporal power		1860
e Pope's power secured by French intervention .		1861
nice annexed to Italy		1866

CHAP. XCIX.—EUROPE continued.

T THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE. TURKEY IN EUROPS. TURKEY IN ASIA.

ABOUT THE CLIMATE, PEOPLE, AND OTHER THINGS.

THE Turkish or Ottoman empire is divided into two called Turkey in Europe and Turkey in Asia. It was

formerly much more extensive than at present. It now embraces a large region of territory in Europe, lying between Greece on the south, and Russia and Hungary on the north: this portion is called Turkey in Europe.

- 2. Turkey in Asia includes Asia Minor and Armenia. Syria and Palestine. Egypt and three of the Barbary states in Africa were also subject to Turkey till within a few years. Egypt is now only a vassal state, and Algiers is in the possession of the French.
- 3. But some of these countries are become wholly, and others nearly, independent of the Turkish dominion, except Turkey in Europe, Asia Minor, Armenia, Syria, and Paletine. The capital of the Ottoman empire is Constantinople, which I have often mentioned before, and which at this day is one of the greatest cities in the world.
- 4. The chief ruler or king of the Turks is called the Sultan. He lives at Constantinople in a splendid palace. Like most Eastern princes, he has two or three hundred wives, whom he keeps shut up in a place called the harem.
- 5. The Turks have long beards, wear turbans on the heads, and a loose flowing robe over their under-dress. The sit on cushions instead of chairs, and they take their fo with their fingers instead of forks.
- 6. The Sultan rules over his country, not according certain established laws, but according to his own will. '

 People generally do exactly what he requires; if they refuse they him, they are sure to lose their property and their b

If you were to go to Turkey, you would discover that imate is warm and the country naturally fertile; you see that the people are indolent and cruel. You would at they have not many manufactures, and but little erce. You would see that the lands are poorly cultiand that many tracts naturally fruitful are barren esolate for want of tillage.

You would perceive that the people dislike the Chrisand worship according to the faith of Mahomet. You discover that they have mosques instead of churches. Instantinople there is a very splendid edifice called St. a. This was formerly a Greek church, but it is now read into a Mahometan mosque.

STIONS.—1. What other name has the Turkish empire? How Dttoman empire divided? Where is Turkey in Europe? How unded? How is it divided from Asia Minor? Which way stantinople from Athens? From Jerusalem? From London? ou? Was the Turkish empire more extensive once than it is 2. What does Turkey in Asia now include? What other ies formerly belonged to the Turkish empire? How is Asia divided from Turkey in Europe? 3. What of the countries remerly belonged to the Ottoman empire? Capital of Tur-What of Constantinople? 4. What of the Sultan? 5. Dethe Turks. 6. How does the Sultan rule the Turks? What of pple? 7. Soil and climate of Turkey? The people? Manus? Commerce? Lands? 8. Religion of the Turks? What places of worship called? St. Sophia?

CHAP. C.—EUROPE continued.

ABOUT THE SARACENS. HOW THE TURKS OVERTURNED THE RMPIRE. HOW THE OTTOMAN TURKS FOUNDED THE OTTOMAN ABOUT BAJAZET, TIMOUR, AND OTHERS.

- 1. In the history of Asia I have given you some of the Saracens. These you will remember were among whom Mahomet and his successors establishmerican the commencement of the seventh century
- 2. The kings or rulers of the Saracen empire we caliphs, and resided at Bagdad, a splendid city whi built near the river Tigris, in Mesopotamia. I he you how these caliphs extended their empire over siderable part of Asia and Africa, and some por Europe.
- 3. To the north of Mesopotamia there were sever of Tartars, among which were some called Turks were daring warriors, and such was their fame, t caliphs induced many of them to come to Bagdad a as soldiers.
- 4. In process of time the Turks acquired great i at Bagdad, and finally overturned the Saracen empirithemselves masters of nearly all the Saracen possessing adopted the Mahommedan religion. Thus, the Turkial became the successor of the Saracen empire, and incites dominion Asia Minor, Syria, Palestine, and other

countries, which the Saracens had conquered from the Greek empire.

- 5. After a while, the Turkish empire, which had been thus established, was overturned by another tribe of Turks who called themselves Ottomans. These came from the country east of the Caspian Sea, and laid the foundation of the present Ottoman empire. This took place in the year 1299; the founder of the empire being Othman I.
- 6. The Greek empire had formerly included Asia Minor, but this had been taken by the Saracens, and afterwards by the Turks. At the time of the Ottoman invasion, it included little more than what is at present called Turkey in Europe, with Greece.
- 7. Constantinople, the present capital of Turkey, was called Byzantium, from Byzas, who founded it in 658 B.C. It was a flourishing city in the time of the early Greeks. The neighbouring country was settled by colonies from Greece, and by other tribes. It was conquered by the Romans, and the name of Byzantium was changed to Constantinople, by the emperor Constantine, in 330 after Christ.
- 8. It had before this period fallen into decay, but it was now revived, and Constantine removed thither with his whole court. It thus became the capital of the Roman empire. When that was divided into the Eastern and Western empires in 395, it was the capital of the former, which, as you know, was often called the Greek empire.
 - 9. This continued, with various changes, to subsist as a

distinct sovereignty till the period of which I am treating. It was, as I have said, on the brink of ruin, the Ottomans, who had already established themselv Asia Minor, and swallowed up the countries former longing to the Saracen dominions, began to cast longing upon the Greek empire in Europe.

- 10. The sultan, at this time, was Bajazet. He be reign in 1389, and was so famous for his conquests the Turks called him Ilderim, the Thunderbolt.
- 11. He was preparing to attack Constantinople, we greater warrior than he came from Tartary, and sul him. This was Tamerlane, otherwise called Timour Tartar, and sometimes Timour the Lame man. He del Bajazet in a great battle, in which three hundred the men were slain.
- 12. It is said that when Timour the Lame man has Bajazet the Thunderbolt into his power, he put him is iron cage, and carried him about for a show, like a wild Most conquerors have a resemblance to wild beasts, a would be well if they could always be kept in iron cage
- 13. The misfortunes of Bajazet prevented the Turks conquering the Eastern empire of the Romans for a derable time. But in 1453, when Mahomet the Gres sultan, they took Constantinople. The emperor, whose was Constantine, was killed. From this time forwar Turks were securely established in Europe, and the cowhich they inhabited was called Turkey.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the Saracens? When and by whom was the Saracen empire established? 2. What of the caliphs? Which way was Bagdad from Constantinople? Dominion of the caliphs? 3. Who were the Turks? Where did they live? Why were they employed by the caliphs of Bagdad? 4. What did the Turks do? What of the Turkish empire? 5. By whom was the first Turkish dynasty overturned? When was the Ottoman empire founded? By whom? 6. What did the Greek empire formerly include? What did it include in 1299? 7. What of Constantinople? Who founded it, and when? What of it in the time of the early Greeks? When was its name changed? When and by whom was Byzantium called Constantinople? 8. What became of the capital of the Roman empire? What took place in 395? What was called the Greek empire? What countries did the Eastern empire of the Romans include? Ans. Greece, Macedon, which is now called Turkey in Europe, Asia Minor, and other adjacent countries. 9. What of the Ottomans? 10. Who was Bajazet? When did he begin to reign? What did the Turks call him? 11. What of Tamerlane? 12. How did Timour treat Bajazet? What of conquerors? 13. What happened in 1453?

CHAP. CI.—EUROPE continued. SEQUEL OF THE TURKISH HISTORY.

- 1. The reigns of most of the Turkish sultans have been full of crime and bloodshed. Sultan Selim, who began to reign in 1512, invaded Egypt and conquered it. The Egyptian soldiers were called Mamelukes, of whom I have told you in the history of Egypt. Thousands of them were taken prisoners.
- 2. After the victory, the sultan ordered a splendid throne to be erected on the banks of the river Nile, near the gates

of Cairo. Sitting on his throne, he caused all the Ms lukes to be massacred in his sight, and their bodies t thrown into the river.

- 3. Mohammed the Third, who ascended the throne in 1th had nineteen brothers. All these he caused to be strang so that they might not attempt to rob him of his power.
- 4. Amurath the Fourth became sultan in 1621. I monster caused fourteen thousand men to be murdered. sport that pleased him best was to run about the street night with a drawn sword, cutting and slashing at enbody whom he met.
- 5. These facts will show the reader what kind of a government the Turks have lived under. The present sultan, At Aziz, has hitherto evinced a praiseworthy desire to carry the reforms which were begun by his brother, the late At Medjid.
- 6. But he was compelled to act with great severity. I was particularly the case in regard to the janizaries. There a large body of troops, established by Mahomet II 1300, and who continued to be a very powerful body soldiers for several centuries. Though called the sult guards, they became more rebellious and dangerous that the other subjects of the empire.
- 7. Sultan Mahmoud therefore determined to free him from their power. Accordingly, in the year 1826, he order the rest of his troops to surround the janizaries. This ideae, and they were shot down and massacred with

mercy. The Sultan subsequently endeavoured to reform the manners of the Turks, and to make them adopt the customs of other European nations. In this he had some success, but his progress was very slow. He died in 1839, before he could fully carry his plans into execution, and was succeeded by his son Abdul-Medjid, who died June 25, 1861. In the war with Russia, 1853, 54, and 55, Turkey placed more than 100,000 men in the field to aid her French and English allies.

8. Abdul-Medjid was succeeded by his brother Abdul-Aziz. The whole empire of Turkey, except the dependencies in Africa, is divided into governments, and subdivided into provinces and districts. A governor or Pasha (who represents the Sultan), assisted by a council, is placed at the head of each government, to whom the heads of provinces and districts are accountable. There are in Constantinople four hundred primary schools, attended by twenty-three thousand pupils; and similar schools are now established throughout the empire.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the reigns of some of the Turkish sultans?
What of Sultan Selim? What of the Mamelukes? 2. What did the
Sultan order? 3. When did Mohammed III. ascend the throne?
What crime did he commit? 4. Who became sultan in 1621? What
of Amurath? 5. What is the character of the present Sultan?
6. What of him? Who were the janizaries? When were they
stablished? 7. What was done in 1826? What did the Sultan do
the wards? Who succeeded him? 8. Name the present Sultan.

Sow. is the empire divided? Subdivided? Name the chief officer of
government. What of the schools in Constantinople? Of the

CHAP. CII.—EUROPE continued.

- EARLY HISTORY OF SPAIN. THE MOORISH CONQUEST. 1. THE kingdom of Spain is divided from France by the range of mountains called the Pyrenees. It has Portugal on the west; its other boundaries are, the Atlantic Ocean, the Bay of Biscay, and the Mediterranean Sea. The whole
 - 2. Spain is a very remarkable country; it is full of wild country forms a large peninsula. rocky mountains, with beautiful valleys between. climate is warm and delightful. The country produce abundance of grapes, olives, lemons, almonds, figs, citros
 - 3. Spain is celebrated for a very fine breed of horses. was also the country from which the merino sheep were and pomegranates. brought. There are many of these now in America, you know they produce the finest wool in the world.
 - 4. Spain has about thirteen millions of inhabitants. people are generally ignorant and superstitious, bu seem to be very honest, ceremonious, and polite. T foud of gay dances in the open air. Madrid, the o Spain, is a very splendid city.
 - 5. Spain abounds in castles, churches, and pala by the Moors, of whom I shall soon tell you These edifices are some of the most wonderful by the world. They are totally unlike those of an

and Rome. They bear some resemblance to what is called the Gothic architecture, specimens of which are to be found in our cities.

- 6. If I had time and room, I should like very much to tell you a long story about Spain; but I shall be obliged to say very little of it, and leave you afterwards to pursue the subject in some larger book.
- 7. Little is known about the history of Spain till the Phœnicians made voyages thither. They came from Phœnicia, which you know was close to the land of Canaan, a distance of two thousand miles, and built two columns at the Straits of Gibraltar. These columns were called the Pillars of Hereules. The ancients did not dare to sail beyond them into the broad Atlantic Ocean.
- 8. The Greeks founded several cities in Spain. Afterwards, the Carthaginians acquired possession of the country; but it was taken by the Romans in 134 B.C., who kept it till the year 406 after the Christian era. Spain was then invaded by barbarians from the north, called the Suevi, the Alans, and the Vandals.
- 9. Some of these people continued in the country more than a hundred years. They were then driven out by mother set of barbarians, called Goths or Visigoths, who overran the whole of Spain. These became established in the country, and finally founded a kingdom there.
- 10. After the Goths had been in Spain about two hundred years, a king mounted the throne, whose name was

Roderick. This king grievously injured Count Julian, who was one of the most powerful of the Spanish or Gothic nobles. In order to avenge himself, Julian took steps which resulted in the ruin of his country.

- 11. In Mauritania, which I have already mentioned, on the northern coast of Africa, and not far from Spain, there was a nation of Saracens. They were called Mauri, or Moors, from the country which they inhabited. Count Julian invited them to cross the sea and invade Spain.
- 12. Accordingly, a great number of these infidels landed on the Spanish shores, under the command of a general named Tariff. King Roderick, the Goth, gathered an army and encountered them at Xeres, in the south of Spain. Here a great battle was fought.
- 13. The Moors were completely victorious. The fate of King Roderick was never known. His horse, and his sword, helmet, shield, and breastplate, were found by the side of a river near the field of battle; but his body was nowhere to be seen. These events occurred about A.D. 712.
- 14. The Spaniards long believed that King Roderick we alive, and that, at some future day, he would again lead army to battle against the Moors. But his war-shout heard no more; and, as the Gothic monarchy was ruined by his fall, he is called Roderick the last of the Gotha.
- 15. Pelagio, a prince of the blood-royal, took commend of all the Gothic Spaniards who had not been slain by the Moors. He led them into the mountainous region of

Asturias and Burgos, and there founded a little kingdom. This was the only part of Spain which the Moors never conquered.

16. The successors of Pelagio enlarged the boundaries of his kingdom; but, for a long time, the Moors possessed three-fourths of Spain.

QUESTIONS.—1. In what part of Europe is Spain? What ocean lies between Spain and the United States? How is Spain divided from France? Boundaries of Spain? 2. What sort of a country is Spain? Climate? Productions? Should you like to go to Spain and eat some of the fine fruits? 3. What of the horses of Spain? Merino sheep? 4. Population? What of the people? Capital? What of Madrid? Which way is Madrid from you? From London? Paris? Rome? Algiers? 5. What of the Moorish buildings in Spain? 7. What of the early history of Spain? Where was Phœnicia? How far from Spain? In what direction from Spain? What did the Phænicians do in Spain? What straits connect the Mediterranean Sea with the Atlantic Ocean? Where were the pillars of Hercules built? How Far did the ancients venture to go in their vessels? 8. What of the Greeks? The Carthaginians? The Romans? What barbarians conquer-Ed Spain? About what time did they conquer Spain? 9. How long did the Spevi and other barbarians remain in Spain? Who drove out the Suevi and other barbarians? What of the 'Goths? 10. What of Roderick? Count Julian? What did he do? 11. What of Maurimaia? Its direction from Spain? What of the Moors? Count Fulian? 12. What did the Moors do? What followed? 13. Fate of King Roderick? How long ago did this happen? 14. What did the Speniards believe? Why was Roderick called the last of the Gotha? 5. What of Pelagio? Which was the only part of Spain not conquered. the Moors? 16. What of the successors of Pelagio? What por-Los of Spain did the Moors long possess?

CHAP. CIII.—EUROPE continued.

WARS BETWEEN THE MOORS AND THE SPANIARDS.

- 1. The Moors were a wild people when they first conquered Spain; but they soon became civilized and polished. There was more learning amongst them than in any other part of Europe.
- 2. In the city of Cordova there was a library of six hundred thousand volumes. There were likewise seventy public libraries in other parts of the Moorish territories in Spain. The Moors were great lovers of poetry and music.
- 3. They built many noble edifices in Spain. The Alhambra, in the city of Grenada, was the palace of the Moorish sovereigns. It was of marble, and ornamented with beautiful sculpture. The sultry atmosphere was cooled by fountains, which spouted continually in the chambers and hall-Beneath the Alhambra were vaults, which the Moorish kings had caused to be dug, that they might be buried there; for they loved the Alhambra so well that they used it both as their palace and sepulchre.
- 4. But the Spaniards hated the Moors, and seldom was at peace with them. In their continual wars, the victory sometimes fell to one party, and sometimes to the other. Eighty thousand Moors were once slain in a single battle.
- 5. On the other hand, a Moorish hero, by the name of Almansor, is said to have vanquished the Spaniards in man than fifty battles. He took the city of Compostell, and

npelled his captives to carry the gates of a large edifice in thence to Cordova on their shoulders.

- 6. The most famous warrior that appeared on either side
- s Don Rodrigo de Bivar, surnamed the Cid Campeador, or
- Incomparable Lord. He gained so many battles against
- Moors, that at last the Spaniards considered victory tain whenever the Cid Campeador was at their head.
- 7. When the Incomparable Lord was dead, the courage of
- 3 Moors revived. They boldly attacked the Spaniards,
- d besieged the city where the Cid Campeador lay buried.
- e Spaniards went forth to meet them, and at their head le an armed warrior, with a countenance like death.
- 8. The Moors recognized his features, and fled; for it was Cid Campeador! The Spaniards had taken him from tomb, and seated him on the war-horse which he had in his lifetime. And thus the dead warrior won another vry.

Many other wonderful stories are told about the ish and Spanish wars. Sometimes, it is said, a saint down from heaven to lead the Spaniards to battle; mes the sun stood still, that they might have time to eir enemies; sometimes they were encouraged by the nee of a blazing cross in the sky.

Sut these are fables. It is certain, however, that the radually lost their Spanish territories, till nothing to them except Grenada; and, in the reign of 1 and Isabella, they were wholly driven out of

Spain. This event took place in 1492, nearly eight centurie after the overthrow of King Roderick the Goth.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you say of the Moors? 2. What of libraries in Cordova? In other cities? What did the Moors love: 3. What did they build in Spain? Describe the Alhambra. What were beneath the Alhambra? 4. How did the Spaniards feel toward the Moors? What of their wars? 5. What of Almansor? What city did he take? 6. What famous warrior can you mention? What of him? 7. What of the Moors after his death? Who rode at the head of the Spaniards? 8. How were the Moors affected by seeing the dead body of the Cid Campeador? 9. What stories are told of the Moorish and Spanish wars? 10. What at last remained to the Moors? When were the Moors driven out of Spain?

CHAP. CIV.—EUROPE continued.

THE SPANISH INQUISITION.

- 1. The reign of Ferdinand and Isabella was disgraced by the establishment of the Spanish Inquisition. The design of this horrible institution was to prevent the people from adopting any but the Catholic religion.
- 2. Persons who were suspected of being heretics were thrown into damp and dismal dungeons. They were then brought before the inquisitors, who sat completely covered with long robes and hoods of sackcloth. Their faces were invisible; but they looked at the prisoners through two holes in their sackcloth hoods.
- 3. If the accused persons would not plead guilty, the were tortured in various ways. Sometimes they were torus

SPAIN. 279

up to the roof of the chamber by a rope, and, after hanging a considerable time, the rope was loosened, so that they fell almost to the floor,

- 4. The rope was then suddenly tightened again, and the prisoner's limbs were put out of joint by the shock. If he still refused to confess, the inquisitors rubbed his feet with lard, and roasted them before a fire. In short, their cruelties were too dreadful to be told.
- 5. When the inquisitors had satisfied themselves with torturing their prisoners, they prepared to burn them. The condemned persons walked in a procession, dressed in garments which were painted with flames. On their breasts they were their own likenesses in the act of being devoured by serpents and wild beasts.
- 6. When they reached the place of execution, the victims were fastened to a stake with iron chains, and roasted to death by a slow fire. They sometimes suffered the agony of this torment for two or three hours before death relieved them. Such were the horrors of the Inquisition; yet it was introduced into Italy and other Catholic countries, and continued in operation for nearly three hundred years. Between thirty and forty thousand persons were burned alive before the Inquisition was abolished.
- 7. The remembrance of the Inquisition will ever cause a stain to rest upon the reign of Ferdinand and Isabella. It was the greatest glory of this king and queen, that they gave Christopher Columbus the means of discovering America.

But Columbus was thrown into a dungeon as the reward of his discovery!

8. The Spaniards made great conquests in America. The riches of the country were in this way much increased; and there were more silver and gold in Spain than in all the rest of Europe. But it is doubtful whether Spain ever derived any real benefit from her American colonies; for, instead of staying at home to cultivate the soil, the inhabitants crossed the ocean in search of gold and silver.

QUESTIONS.—1. When was the Inquisition established? What was its design? 2. How were suspected persons treated? Describe the inquisitors. 3. How were the accused persons tortured? 5. Describe the burning of the prisoners. 6. How long did the Inquisition continue in operation? 7. What of the reign of Ferdinand and Isabella? What was the glory of their reign? What was the fate of Columbus? 8. What of the Spaniards? What of the riches of Spain? Were the American colonies any benefit to Spain?

CHAP. CV.—EUROPE continued.

THE INVINCIBLE ARMADA. CURIOUS DEATH OF A SPANISH EDS-RECENT AFFAIRS OF SPAIN.

- 1. One of the most powerful monarchs of Spain was Philip the Second. He was not only king of Spain, but he obtains the crown of Portugal also, in 1580; but Portugal after wards became a separate kingdom again. It had first be declared independent of Spain at the beginning of the twelf century.
 - 2. Philip intended to conquer England, and prepared

8PAIN. 281

eet of eighty ships for that purpose. This fleet was called he Invincible Armada. But it was terribly harassed by he English vessels, and was at last conquered even without battle; for a storm scattered it, and drove many of the ships n the British coast.

- 3. The son of Philip was a weak-minded man. The maner of his death was very singular. He was sitting one day the council chamber, which was warmed by a large stove. he heat and vapour of the stove affected his head.
- 4. He ordered his attendants to quench the fire. But he person whose duty it was to do this happened not to be a the chamber, and the rules of the Spanish court were so trict, that it would have been unlawful for any other person p touch the fire.
- 5. Moreover, it would have been beneath the king's digity to leave the chamber, or even to move his chair back rom the stove. So the fire continued to grow hotter, and he poor king grew sicker and sicker, till at last it was imossible to cure him. And thus he died, by a kind of death hat could have befallen nobody but a Spanish king.
- 6. In the year 1700, Charles the Second of Spain died rithout children. He was succeeded by a young French rince named Philip, Duke of Anjou, the grandson of Louis he Fourteenth. The kings of this family are called the punish Bourbons.
- 7. This event caused a long war in Europe. Charles, Archduke of Austria, claimed the crown of Spain, and he and

Philip of Anjou alternately drove each other out of Madrid; but Philip finally kept his seat on the throne.

- 8. Spain has often been at war with England. She united with France against the Americans during the American revolution; but peace was concluded in 1783. Another war, however, began between England and France in about ten years afterwards, and Spain was obliged to take part in it.
- 9. In 1808, when the Emperor Napoleon was at the height of his power, he compelled the Spanish king to abdicate his throne. The name of this king was Ferdinand the Seventh. Napoleon then placed the crown of Spain upon the head of his own brother, Joseph Buonaparte.
- 10. But most of the Spaniards refused to acknowledge King Joseph as their sovereign. A bloody war ensued. The English government sent armies into Spain and Portugal; and it was there that the Duke of Wellington gained his first victories over the French.
- 11. Ferdinand, the old Spanish king, was replaced upor the throne in 1814. His death took place in 1833, and hi daughter was proclaimed queen, as Isabella II., in Octobe of that year, she being only three years of age.
- 12. Since that event, Spain has been ravaged by a c war between Don Carlos, Ferdinand's brother, and the you queen, Maria Isabella. Three or four hundred thous persons are supposed to have been killed in the course of war, which lasted for several years. Since the termins

SPAIN. 283

of that contest, the peace of Spain has been several times disturbed by contending factions.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of Philip II.? What of Portugal? 2. What of the Invincible Armada? 3. Describe the death of Philip the Second's son. 6. What happened in the year 1700? Who succeeded Charles II.? Who were the Spanish Bourbons? 7. Why did Charles and Philip go to war? Who triumphed? 8. What of Spain? When was peace concluded between France and England? 9. What did Napoleon compel the Spanish king to do in 1808? Who was Ferdinand VII.? Whom did Napoleon make king of Spain? 10. What of the Spaniards? What of the English government? What of Lord Wellington? 11. When was Ferdinand replaced upon the throne? When did he die? Name the Queen of Spain. 12. What of a civil war in Spain?

CHAP. CVI.—EUROPE continued.

A SHORT STORY ABOUT PORTUGAL.

- 1. Portugal lies to the west of Spain, and is bounded on the west by the Atlantic Ocean. The population of the country is nearly four millions. The capital is Lisbon. This is a large city, and many of our vessels visit it for the purpose of getting wines, grapes, oranges, and lemons.
- 2. The climate of Portugal is similar to that of Spain. The people also resemble the Spaniards, but speak a language somewhat different. The Portuguese are very ignorant, and, as they seldom read, they have plenty of time for dancing.
- 3. Portugal was originally considered a part of Spain, and shared in the events of that country. In the twelfth century it became independent. Since that time it has been consi-

dered a separate kingdom, though it has been sub Spain for a portion of this period.

- 4. The history of Portugal is of little interest till ab year 1400, when the Portuguese took the lead in navi the Atlantic Ocean. At this time, this great sea wa known, and nobody had gone across it to America, n any one dared to sail around Africa.
- 5. But the little Portuguese vessels ventured out and farther, and finally one of them reached the Cape o Hope. After this, a Portuguese fleet passed entirely a Africa, crossed the Indian Ocean, and reached India.
- 6. These wonderful adventures and discoveries enter nations, and in a few years Christopher Coldiscovered America. Thus the Portuguese may be continent, which was unknown to the people of F Asia, and Africa, till the year 1492.
- 7. I need not tell you of what happened in Portuge this time till the year 1755. At that date an eartl took place, which shook down nearly the whole of Lisbon. Houses, churches, and palaces, were su tumbled into heaps of ruins. Large chasms were in the earth, and hundreds of houses were plunge them. The sea at first rolled back from the land, an returned, sweeping every thing before it. In this calamity ten thousand persons lost their lives.
 - 8. The Portuguese founded a good many colonier

ferent parts of the world. One of these was in Brazil, in South America, where the king of Portugal retired with his family in 1807. This was done because of the French invading Portugal.

9. The French being driven out in 1808, by the English and Portuguese, the king returned in a few years. After his death there was a struggle for the crown, but it was finally settled upon Donna Maria, who died in 1853, and was succeeded by her son Pedro V., at whose decease, in 1861, his brother, the reigning monarch, Luis I., ascended the throne, Nov. 11, 1861.

QUESTIONS.—1. Boundaries of Portugal? Population? Capital? Direction of Lisbon from London? Madrid? From you? What of Lisbon? 2. Climate of Portugal? The people? Language? 3. What of Portugal? When did it become independent? What of Portugal since the twelfth century? 4. What of the Portuguese after about 1400? What of the Atlantic at this time? 5. What of the Portuguese vessels? Their discoveries? 6. What consequences followed the Portuguese discoveries? What of America till 1492? 7. What happened in 1755? Describe the earthquake. 8. Colonies of Portugal? What of the king of Portugal? When and why did he remove to Brazil? 9. What followed? Name the late King of Portugal? The present?

CHAP. CVII.—EUROPE continued.

CHRONOLOGY OF TURKEY, SPAIN, AND PORTUGAL.

Spain invaded by Northern barbarians	•				2.2
Scipio subjugates the Numantines of Spain	•	•	•	•	<i>EBI</i> Q.1
Spain subjected to the Roman power .	•	•		•	50e
Hannibal: attacks Saguntum in Spain .	•	•-	•	•	219
The Carthaginians make conquests in Spain	about	t			500
THE Phœnicians trade to Spain about .					900
					B.C.

Kingdom of the Visigoths founded	in Sp	pain	•		•
Roderick, king of Spain, defeated	by the	e Moo)TS		
The Moors defeated by Charles Ma	artel,	king	of Fr	ance	
Portugal subjected by the Moors	•				
Kingdom of Portugal founded.		•			
The Tartars take Bagdad .					
Othman first emperor of Turkey					•
Ottoman empire founded .	•			•	•
Sultan Bajazet begins to reign	•		•	•	•
Bajazet taken by Tamerlane .		•		•	•
The Turks take Constantinople	•				•
Inquisition established in Spain	•			•	
The Portuguese discover the Cape	of G	ood F	Iope	•	•
The first court of the Inquisition is	n Spa	in		•	•
America discovered by Columbus				•	•
The Moors of Grenada driven out	of Sp	ain		٠.	
The Portuguese discover Brazil					•
The Sultan Selim began to reign		•			
Philip II, ascended the throne of S	Spain		•	•	
Mohammed III. ascends the Turk	ish th	rone	•		
Portugal becomes independent of	Spain				
The Moors finally expelled from S	pain				
Amurath IV., emperor of Turkey	•				
Charles II., king of Spain, died					
Lisbon destroyed by an earthquak	e.				•
Peace between Spain and England	١.				•
King of Portugal goes to Brazil					
Napoleon removes Ferdinand from	the	thron	e of S	pain	
Inquisition abolished in Portugal				:	
Revolution in Portugal					•
Inquisition abolished in Spain					
Massacre of the Janizaries in Turk	ey				
Ferdinand VII., king of Spain, die					

France.			267
·			A.D.
Attempt on the life of the Queen of Spain			1859
The Porte declares war against Russia		•	1853
Purkish ships destroyed by the Russians at Sinope		•	1853
Donna Maria II., Queen of Portugal, dies in childbe	ed.	•	1853
The bombardment of Odessa by the English and Fr	ench		1854
Spain declared in a state of siege			1854
Christian evidence made legal in Turkey			1854
Turks defeat the Russians at Guirgevo			1854
Furks defeated by the Russians in Armenia	•		1854
King of Portugal visits Queen Victoria at Osborne			1855
Defeat of Russians by the Turks, under Omar Pash	а.		185
Coup d'Etat at Madrid. General O'Donnell dictate	or .		1856
Opening of Lisbon and Santarem railway, the first in	n Por	tugal	1856
Queen of Spain gives birth to a son and heir to the	hrone	э.	1857
Convention signed for Government of the Danubian 1	Princi	palities	1858
Conspiracy against the Sultan and Government of T	'urke	7.	1859
The Spaniards gain advantages over the Moors .			1860
The Spaniards, English, and French send an expediti	on to	Mexico	1861
Luis L ascends the throne			1861
	-		

CHAP. CVIII.—EUROPE continued.

DESCRIPTION OF FRANCE. ITS CLIMATE. CITIES. MANUFACTURES.

MANNERS AND CUSTOMS OF THE PEOPLE.

1. France lies in the western parts of Europe, and contains about thirty-five millions of inhabitants. Paris, the capital, is a very large city, surrounded with a wall of stone and several forts. It is full of fine houses, beautiful public gardens, pleasant walks, handsome streets, and interesting places of amusement. To a stranger, it is the most agreeable city in the world.

- 2. Beside Paris, there are a great many other large and handsome cities in France. Among these are Rouen, when the people manufacture a great deal of handsome jewellery Lyons, where they make beautiful silks; Marseilles, where the people deal in wines; and Bordeaux, in the midst of a country which produces fine grapes and other delicious fruits.
- 3. The climate of France is about the same as that of America in Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Virginia. The soil is fruitful, and yields abundance of food for the numerous inhabitants. The country produces many kinds of fruit in great perfection, such as cherries, pears, plums, peaches, and figs. It also yields immense quantities of grapes, from which many kinds of choice wines are produced.
- 4. The people of France are very gay and cheerful. They live a great deal in the open air, and it is common in all parts of the country to see both men and women at worl in the fields. They do not labour very hard, and during the holidays, of which they have a great many, they walk about the streets, and dance in the public gardens or squares.
- 5. If the French are not the wisest people in the wo they seem to enjoy themselves better than most oth They are fond of music, and delight to get together talk about all sorts of things. They are very polite, always treat strangers with particular civility. The green are very courteous to the ladies, and the ladies, turn, take every means in their power to make their segreeable to the gentlemen.

ne manufactures of France are numerous and value le ople have an excellent fancy in making jewellery, locks, watches, and many other ornamental things are sent to all parts of the world; and, though they to be considered very necessary, yet they give a great pleasure, and thus have their use.

ne French people are fond of dress, and the dressof Paris set the fashions for the rest of the world. illiners and mantua-makers of this city have more is than any king that ever lived; for the gowns and of all the ladies of Europe and America are made ig to their direction.

Though they might seem to be frivolous and thought: France has produced many great men, and the history ountry displays many great and glorious actions. on might at first think them a nation of fiddlers, kers, and dancing-masters; but if you look deeper eir character, and read their story with attention, I see that, perhaps, they are the most warlike nation pe, and that, if they spend their time in amusement, because they are deficient in genius for the highest of the mind.

tons.—Where is France? Boundaries? Which way is France in? From England? The United States? How would you go b? 1. Population? Describe Paris. Direction from Madrid? London? New York? What else of Paris? 2. What

Rouen? What of Lyons? What of Marseilles? What of Borde 3. Climate of France? Soil? Productions? 4. Character and ners of the French people? 5. What of the gentlemen? The la 6. Manufactures of France? What is the use of the fancy ar manufactured in France? 7. What of the French as to d Milliners and mantua-makers? 8. What might seem to be character of the French? What does their history display What of their talent for war? Their genius for other things?

CHAP. CIX.—EUROPE continued.

ABOUT THE GAULS AND OTHER TRIBES OF BARBARIANS. HOW SOUTHERN PARTS OF EUROPE WERE FIRST SETTLED, AND HOW NORTHERN PARTS WERE SETTLED AFTERWARDS.

- 1. In the course of this history, I have had freq occasion to mention various tribes of Europe called be rians, and perhaps I shall not find a better opportuthan the present to give you some account of them. remember that Greece was settled before any other of Europe. The first inhabitants were the descendant Japheth. The descendants of these spread themselves Greece, and probably other parts of Europe.
- 2. As the people increased along the shores of Asia Africa, they sent colonies to different places along the shof the Mediterranean. Some settled in Greece, some Italy, some in Spain. These countries being warm, pless and fruitful, were soon filled with inhabitants. Li upon the coast, they had a great many ships, and out on commerce with different countries.

- 3. In this way, after many years, they grew rich, and built large cities, with fine houses, temples, and palaces. Such was the course of events, in regard to all Southern Europe, of which I have been telling you the story. But while these things were going on, various tribes were emigrating into the more northern portions of Europe.
- 4. Here the climate was colder, and the soil less fruitful. Still, the woods were full of elks, rein-deer, fallow-deer, the roe-buck, wild-bulls, wild-boars, and many other animals. These supplied food for the inhabitants, and the chase furnished excellent sport for the adventurous men of those days.
- 5. Beside all this, in these regions, unoccupied by man, the land was very cheap, and whoever would come and take it might have it. These circumstances invited the people to leave the soft, sunny regions of Greece, Italy, Spain, and also of Asia, for the colder and wilder realms of northern Europe.
- 6. Thus tribe followed tribe, and nation followed nation, until the whole country was occupied, from the Mediterranean on the south, to the Arctic Sea on the north. It was, in fact, very much such a course of events as has been seen going on in America.
- 7. Those portions of America first settled by the Europeans were along the Atlantic seaboard. Here they first will houses and founded cities. After a while they went to the farther interior, in search of wild game and new ands. Thus they continued to push farther and farther

into the country, and even now they are still advencing to

QUESTIONS.—1. What of Greece? 2. How were the shores of the Mediterranean settled? What of the people in those countries ward the far west.

MEURICETANICSE Section 7 VIEW OF SET PROPERTY. WIND PROPERTY AND ASSESSED TO SECURITY. 3. How were the normern purtions of Europe section co to the inand soil of northern Europe? and son or normern Europe what rurnished subsistence to substants? 5. What of the land? What induced the people to substants? nantants (). What of the land (What induced the people to people to in Northern Europe? 6. How does the settlement of America compare with that of Europe?

CHAP. CX.—EUROPE continued.

K

THE STORY OF THE BARBARIANS CONTINUED. 1. I HAVE now shown you how the north of Europe we gradually settled by tribes that emigrated from the south Europe, and from Asia. These might be compared vast stream that continued to flow on, growing wides advancing farther, until at length the whole country

peopled.

2. But you must remark one thing, that these emit were savages, and of a warlike character; they there not mingle into one great nation, but each tribe re distinct. As they increased in numbers, they incr

3. After a while, something would happen to tribes living near each other into a state of wa battles would follow, and a great many would bower.

netimes one tribe would be vanquished, and they would be slaughtered, reduced to a state of slavery, or driven of the country.

- . It was, in short, a state of things very much like that he American Indians, when America was first settled by white people. There was this difference, however, that northern barbarians of Europe carried with them the wledge of many arts. Their weapons of war, therefore, & not merely the bow and arrow, but they had swords, are, and shields.
- . They also built better houses than the wigwams of the ians. Still they were a fierce people, and in many respects e as savage as the wild boars and wild bears which they med in the chase.
- . Among the most remarkable of these northern tribes e the Gauls or Kelts, who were the first known inhabitants rance; the Franks and Suevi, who inhabited Germany; Goths and the Vandals, who inhabited Norway, Sweden, Lapland, and afterwards established themselves in Gerry; and the Huns, who lived in Hungary. There were many other tribes, but it is not necessary to mention n here.
- . Well, you must now imagine all the north of Europe bited by these wild tribes. Spending their time chiefly be chase, or in war, or other hardy pursuits, they became I, daring, and adventurous. Their numbers also increased, some of them became powerful nations.

- 8. They were, however, generally restless, and, like beasts of prey, were constantly looking out for some object upon which they might fall and devour it. So things went on, till at length these barbarians fixed their attention upon the rich cities, the fertile plains, and vine-clad hills of the south of Europe.
- 9. The Roman empire was now tottering to decay, and the Roman armies were no longer the dread of these tribes. About the year 400, they began to pour down their armies upon the plains of Italy. Alaric, king of the Goths, laid Rome under contribution, and, less than fifty years after, Attila, king of the Huns, threatened the same city with destruction.
- 10. After this period, these restless invaders continued from time to time to attack the southern regions of Europe, till they made themselves masters of its finest portions.
- 11. As the northern barbarians of whom I have been speaking had no books, and wrote no histories, their early story is little known. After getting possession of Roma. Spain, and other southern portions of Europe, they settled in those countries.
- 12. For a time, literature and learning, the arts of postry, painting, sculpture, and music, which had been cultivated by the Romans, were unknown in the countries where they once flourished. But, by degrees, the new inhabitants became civilized and polished, and the modern nations which now occupy these regions may be considered as in part their

descendants. It is now time to proceed with the history of France.

QUESTIONS.—1. How was the north of Europe settled? To what may the emigration of the tribes be compared? 2. What of these emigrants? 3. What of their wars? 4. What did the state of these barbarians resemble? 5. What of them? 6. Which was the most remarkable or the northern tribes? 7. Describe their mode of life. 8. What at length attracted their attention? 9. What of the Roman empire? When did the barbarians attack Italy? What of Alaric and Attila? 10. What did the barbarians continue to do? 11. Where did the northern barbarians settle? 12. What of them for a time? What happened at length? What of the modern nations of the south of Europe?

CHAP. CXI.—EUROPE continued.

THE GAULS. ORIGIN OF THE FRENCH NATION.

- 1. The ancient name of France was Gaul, and the inhabitants were called Gauls or Kelts. These were one of those warlike tribes of whom I have just been speaking. At a very early date they appear to have been numerous and powerful. In the year 390 B. C., they invaded Rome under Brennus, and took that city, but were expelled by Camillus.
- 2. Under another Brennus they invaded Greece, as I have told you. In the time of Julius Cæsar, the Gauls had made some little progress towards civilization; but they were still a barbarous people, and retained many practices that belong only to savages. They had, however, a good many cities, and these were defended by strong walls.
 - 3. When Cæsar entered the country, he found the Gaula

sorely pressed by some of the German tribes. At first, he affected to be the deliverer of the Gauls from these trouble-some enemies.

- 4. But the people soon discovered that Cæsar's real design was to conquer them. They then began to resist, and for nine long years they fought Cæsar and his armies with admirable skill and spirit. But the Romans were better versed in the art of war than the Gauls. Their soldiers were better trained, and their implements of war were superior to those of the Gauls.
- 5. Notwithstanding all this, so brave and obstinate were the Gauls in the defence of their country, that it required all the genius of Julius Cæsar, one of the greatest leaders that ever lived, aided by the immense power of Rome, to subdue them.
- 6. Casar was occupied no less than nine years in conquering the Gauls, and it is supposed a million of men were slain in the bloody struggle. From the time of Casar's conquest, about 50 years n.c., Gaul was a Roman province, and the people gradually adopted the manners and customs of the Romans. Even their language became changed, and assumed a resemblance to the Latin. But between the third and fourth century, the Franks, a German tribe which I have mentioned, got possession of the greater part of Gaul.
- 7. It is said that the Franks who first established theselves in Gaul were led by Pharamond. He died in 436, and was succeeded by his son Clodion, who was calculated

for the beauty of his hair. Clodion died in 448, and was succeeded by Meroveus; Meroveus died in 458, and was succeeded by Childeric. Very little is known of these kings, except the last.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the ancient name of France? Of the people? What did they do under Brennus? 2. When did they invade Greece? What of them in the time of Julius Casar? What of their cities? 3. What did Casar find on entering the country? 4. What did the people soon discover? What did they do? What of the Romans? 5. What of the Gauls? What was required to subdue them? 5. What was the consequence of this struggle between the Gauls and Romans? What of Gaul from this time? What of the Franks? 7. Pharamond? Clodion? Meroveus? What of these kings?

CHAP. CXII.—EUROPE continued. ABOUT CLOVIS AND LITTLE KING PEPIN.

- 1. CHILDERIC is considered the founder of the French monarchy. He was succeeded by his son, Clovis. When Clovis was only nineteen years old, he drove the Romans out of France. He afterwards gained a great victory over the Germans.
- 2. As Clovis had married a Christian princess, he attributed his success to the God whom she worshipped. He therefore determined to become a Christian himself, and he was baptized, with three thousand of his subjects, on Christman day, in the year 496. After the death of Clovis, France was divided among several petty kings. They quarrelled among themselves and caused great trouble to the nation.

The wife of one of them was accused of murdering ten kings, or children of kings.

- 3. Little King Pepin, otherwise called Pepin the Short, thrust all the other kings from their thrones, and made himself sole ruler of France. He was a very small man, being only four feet and a half high; but he had a mighty spirit in that little body.
- 4. Moreover, he had an enormous deal of strength. The following tale is told of him:—Knowing that some of his courtiers made fun of his little size, he resolved to show them that there was as much manhood in him as there could possibly be in a giant. He therefore invited them to see a fight between a lion and a bull.
- 5. The lion gave a tremendous roar, and leaped upon the bull's back, sticking his claws deep into the flesh. The bull also roared with pain and terror, as well he might. Then little King Pepin stood on tiptoe on his throne, to make himself as tall as he could; and he roared out to his courtiers full as loud as either the bull or the lion:—
- 6. "Which of you all," cried he, "will make that lies let go his hold?" The courtiers all stood silent and abashed; for they had no notion of venturing within reach of the lion's claws. "Then I'll do it myself!" said King Pepin the Short. So the valiant little king leaped down from his throne, and drew a sword almost as long as himself Brandishing it in the air, he ran up to the lion, who we still clinging to the mad bull's back.

- 7. When the lion beheld this terrible small champion, he pened his enormous jaws, as if he meant to snap him up t a single mouthful. But little King Pepin made a blow thim with his sword, and hit him fair upon the neck.
- 8. Down fell the lion's head on one side of the bull, and own fell his body on the other! And from that time forard, the courtiers would sooner have taken a roaring lion
 y the mane than have laughed at little King Pepin.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was Childeric? What of Clovis? 2. Why id Clovis determine to be a Christian? When was he baptized? Vhat of France after his death? What of the kings? 3, 4. Describe ttle King Pepin. What did he invite his people to see? 5, 6, 7. Rette King Pepin's encounter with the lion. 8. How did his bravery ffect his courtiers?

CHAP. CXIII.—EUROPE continued.

THE REIGN OF CHARLEMAGNE.

- 1. King Perin the Little had a son who was called Charleagne, or Charles the Great. The epithet was given him
 ecause he was a mighty king and conqueror; but he also
 served it on account of his height, which was not an inch
 ss than seven feet.
- 2. Charlemagne used to wear a sheepskin cloak. Whenrer he saw his courtiers richly dressed, he invited them to
 respectively and a sheepskin cloak. Whenrer he saw his courtiers richly dressed, he invited them to
 respectively. A same and bushes he could find, on

purpose that his courtiers might tear their fine clothes in following him.

- 3. This king was continually at war. He subjugated the Saxons, and other tribes who lived in Germany. He likewise made conquests in Spain and Italy. At length, ruling over France, Germany, and other countries, he wished for the title of Emperor of the West.
- 4. Accordingly he went to Rome, and knelt down at the high altar of the church as if to say his prayers. There was a large congregation in the church, and they were much edified by the devout behaviour of Charlemagne. But, while he was kneeling, the pope stole softly behind him, and placed the imperial crown upon his head.
- 5. This was the crown which all the old emperors of Rome had worn, and when the people beheld it on the head of Charlemagne, they shouted, "Long live the Emperor!" Charlemagne pretended to be surprised and angry; but he took care to keep the imperial crown upon his head.
- 6. Charlemagne died in the year 814, when he was quite an old man. When he was alive, as I have mentioned, he wore a sheepskin cloak. But after he was dead, his atterdants dressed him in robes of imperial purple.
- 7. They placed a throne of gold in his sepuichre, and set the dead body of the greybearded old emperor upon it. A sword was girded about his waist. He had a golden crown upon his head, a golden sceptre and shield at his feet, a golden chalice in his hand and a Bible upon his knees.

- 8. Over the sepulchre there was a magnificent triumphal rich, with an inscription to the memory of the mighty Charlemagne. And, having wasted all this splendour upon the senseless corpse, the attendants shut up the tomb and rent to pay their court to Charlemagne's successor.
- 9. This was his son, entitled Louis the Mild. I know not wherefore he was called the Mild; for one of the acts of his reign was to put out the eyes of another king whom he had taken prisoner. When Louis died, he left his dominions to his three sons. They immediately went to war with each other. It is said that a hundred thousand men were slain in one of their battles.
- 10. Some of the succeeding kings of France were Charles the Bald, Louis the Stammerer, Charles the Fat, Charles the Simple, Louis the Foreigner, and Hugh Capet. These overeigns performed no actions that need be recorded in ny book.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was Charlemagne? 2. What of his dress? That of his courtiers? 3. What of Charlemagne? Over what counties did he reign? What did he wish? 4. What did he do? Decribe his coronation. 6. When did Charlemagne die? How was his ody dressed for his burial? 8. What was put over the sepulchre? . Who was Louis the Mild? What of him? What of his three sons? 0. Who were some of the succeeding kings of France?

CHAP. CXIV.—EUROPE continued. ABOUT THE CRUSADES, OR HOLY WARS.

- 1. I MUST now give you some account of the Crusades, or Holy Wars, undertaken by the European nations for the recovery of Jerusalem, which was in the hands of the Turka The Christians had a great reverence for this city; for here Christ preached, here he performed many miracles, here he was buried, and here his bones reposed.
- 2. On account of the pious reverence entertained for what they called the Holy City, many Christian pilgrims went on foot to visit it. It was very common for the Roman Catholic priests to impose this pilgrimage on persons who had committed some sin, and they were made to believe that in the way alone they could receive pardon of God.
- 3. Now, the pllgrims to Jerusalem were often treated wi cruelty and scorn by the Turks, who held possession Jerusalem and the country around it. The pilgrims retur to Europe, and gave an account of the treatment received. This excited the indignation of the Christians they were easily induced to unite in a great effort for the Holy Land from the infidel Turks.
- 4. The Pope of Rome at this time had vast influence he wished to acquire more. When this project we posed, therefore, he gave it his sanction, thinking !

should extend his dominion over Palestine, if the country should be taken.

- 5. Peter the Hermit was the principal agent in exciting the people to the First Crusade. He was a half-starved monk, and went about bareheaded, with a rope round his waist, and wearing a garment of coarse cloth. This was so short that it barely covered his body, leaving his arms and legs naked.
- 6. It might seem that such a scarecrow as this would rather have excited ridicule than reverence. But Peter had been in Palestine, and had experienced the insults of the Turks. He therefore spoke of things he had seen, and the people listened with a willing sympathy.
- 7. Thus Peter went from city to city, and every where crowds came to hear him. There was soon such a state of excitement, that the princes assembled, and armies were speedily gathered for the enterprise. Thus, in the year 1096, Peter set out with two hundred thousand men at his heels. He carried a ponderous cross upon his shoulders, and his followers were crosses of red cloth sewed upon their clothes.
- 8. But scarcely had this army landed in Asia, when Sultan Solyman attacked them, and made a terrible slaughter.

 As a trophy of his victory over the poor wretches, he built a pyramid of their bones. Other armies of crusaders met with similar misfortunes.
 - 9. It is computed that eight hundred and fifty thousand

Christians lost their lives in the course of this First Cr And all this slaughter took place before they had even in sight of Jerusalem!

- 10. There was another army, however, belonging a First Crusade that had better success. This consist eighty thousand men, and was led by a French prince Godfrey of Bouillon. He proceeded through Asia I took several cities, and captured Jerusalem in 1099. this period till the year 1187, the Holy City remain the hands of the Christians, when it was again capture the Turks, in whose hands it has since remained.
- 11. No less than five other Crusades took place; the being commenced in 1248. This, with most of the comproved unsuccessful. The whole number of men who their lives in these wild expeditions was not less than millions.
- 12. It appears that many of the crusaders were good and some, perhaps, were wise ones. Several of the keywere brave knights, and they went forth clad in bright armour, and mounted upon fine horses. But a large per of the armies were of a different character. Some half-crazy people filled with religious zeal, and a portion were thieves and robbers, who joined the estions that they might share in the plunder of cities should be taken.
- 13. But, although the motives of many of the erus

vere not very important, and though much slaughter and bloodshed flowed from them; still the half-barbarous inhabitants of Europe brought from the East many arts that ended to refine and civilize the people. In this and other vays, the Crusades produced some good results.

QUESTIONS.—1. What were the Crusades? Why were they underaken? Why did the Christians reverence Jerusalem? 2. What of ilgrimages to Jerusalem? 3. How were the pilgrims treated? What id they do? What was the consequence of their representations?. What of the Pope of Rome? 5. Describe Peter the Hermit. 6. What of him? 7. What effect had his preaching? What took place a 1096? 8. Who attacked the army in Asia? What did the sultan to? What of other Crusades? 9. What of the First Crusades? 10. What of the army under Godfrey of Bouillon? What city did he take? When did the Turks retake Jerusalem? 11. How many Crusades were tere? When was the First Crusade begun? The last? How many en lost their lives in the Crusades? 12. What appears concerning my of the crusaders? Their leaders? What of a large portion of armies? 13. What good results did the Crusades produce?

CHAP. CXV.—EUROPE continued.

ABOUT THE FEUDAL SYSTEM.

I suppose you think it is now time to proceed with the y of France; but do not be impatient. It is not right to who undertakes to tell the history of mankind, to only of kings and the great battles which they fight ust not forget to consider how the people kived, and hey were about while their rulers were thus engaged.

- 2. If I were only to speak of little King Pepin Charlemagne, and the popes, and other rulers, and tel what they did, you might still be ignorant of what subjects were doing. You might not know whether were happy or unhappy, whether they were in a sta poverty or plenty, whether they were in the enjoymen freedom, or suffering the miseries of despotism.
- 3. I trust you will therefore excuse me for talking all about the Feudal System, Chivalry, and a few other words, which it is proper you should understand. It told you that the northern tribes of Europe were for war, and of a restless, roving character. War was in the chief business of the men. A few of them were engin agriculture, but a large portion of them led the live soldiers, either wholly or at such times as their ser were required.
- 4. A few were devoted to the building of houses, to manufacture of armour, and such other articles as the si manners of the people rendered necessary. But even t artisans occasionally bore arms, and went with their courmen to the field of battle, if they were needed.
- 5. But, as I have said before, the great business of so in these times was war, either for defence against the att of other tribes, or for the purpose of conquering other tr. The chiefs, or leaders, were generally the bravest strongest men, those who would be most likely in a be of hard blows to ensure victory.

When a country was conquered, the lands, towns, s, gold, silver, merchandise, horses, cattle, and all other erty belonging to the conquered people, were considered spoils of the victors. The people who were defeated either killed, driven away, or reduced to a state of itude.

Strange as it may seem, this making of war, and robbing lie of their lands and possessions, was not only considered ul, but it was reckoned grand sport. It is true that the iers had often hard fare and hard knocks; occasionally were wounded, and many of them were slain. But, n the battle was over, those who survived celebrated victory with feasting and drinking, and other amuses suited to the tastes of barbarous men.

Between the intervals of fighting, they had mimic s among themselves, or two stout fellows would fight words in the presence of the whole people. At other during a wet day or a dull night, they would prolong stivities by telling stories of the great deeds they had r seen, or heard of, or by singing ballads of bloodshed tle.

frequently happened that some person in the camp eat talent for singing and story-telling; he therefore often called upon to exercise his gift. So he would a company with wild legends of the chase, in which prince had a terrible battle with a fierce boar or a

- 10. Or he would tell of some chief who had performed wonderful deeds, or perhaps he would weave some superstitious tale of ghosts that walked abroad by moonlight, or of some murdered prince whose spirit often came at night to hunt the castle where he once dwelt.
 - 11. Such were some of the amusments which repaid these barbarians for the toils of war. But these were by no means all. The real object of most of the wars among these people was plunder. War took the place of trade and commerce among them, and the principal inducement to carry it on was to obtain the lands and the goods of other nations. It was, in short, a system of plunder, and the several tribes might be considered as so many bands of robbers.
 - 12. When a country was conquered, the spoils were distributed among the victors, according to their rank. The king or chief had a large share, the inferior chiefs had smaller share, and the common soldiers had still less. The lands were divided in this way; but it was always under stood that those who received the land were afterwar bound to go and fight whenever called upon by the chiefs.
 - 13. The lands were not held in those times as they now among us; each individual did not own a piece of l and build upon it, or cultivate it as he liked. But a tract would belong to the king, and a smaller tract v belong to the inferior chiefs or barons.
 - 14. The king or beron built upon his land an im

strong castle of stone; around it, the people, who were alled his vassals or slaves, built their little huts. These tilled the land, taking what was necessary for their own support, but giving the best of every thing to their liege lord.

- 15. Now, what is meant by the Feudal System is this: that the vassals of a baron who lived upon his land were bound to do military service whenever the baron required it. So also the barons, under the feudal system, were required to to military service, bringing into the field all the men they would muster, whenever their king required it.
- 16. In return for these services, the lord of the manor, or where of the land, was expected to protect his people in time of war; and, as the castle was usually large and strong, the cople fled to it whenever an enemy appeared in sight.
- 17. Here in the castle they would make the best defence n their power. Sometimes they would be besieged for nonths; but, so long as the wines lasted and the stores of rovisions held out, the besieged inmates of the castle would old their revels, tell their stories, and sing their songs.

QUESTIONS.—1. What must not be forgotten? 2. Why must the istory of the people not be neglected? 3. What of the northern ites of Europe? What of the men? 5. What was the great busium of society in these times? What of the chiefs? 6. What of a nequered country? The people? 7. How were war and robbery maidered? The soldiers? The survivors? 8. What was done in eintervals of fighting? 9. What of story-telling? 11. What was real object of war among these ancient nations? What of war? we might the tribes be considered? 12. What of the division

spoils? What of lands? 13. How were the lands held in these times? 14. What of a king or baron? The people, or vassals?

15. What was the feudal system? What were the vassals and barons required to do? 16. What was expected of the lord of the manor?

17. What of a besieged castle?

CHAP. CXVI.—EUROPE continued.

ABOUT CHIVALRY, OR KNIGHT-ERRANTRY.

- 1. I HOPE you now understand how matters and things went on among the rude tribes of France, Germany, and most other northern countries of Europe, in early times. I hope also you understand what is meant by the feudal system.
- 2. If you will reflect a moment, you will perceive that Europe at this time was divided among a great number of warlike tribes or nations, each tribe having a king, each king having under him several powerful barons, and each baron having a good many vassals.
- 3. You will remember that the kings and barons dwelt in strong stone castles; and in every part of Europe you will see many of these still in existence, some of which were built more than a thousand years ago. Most of them are in ruins; but they are interesting on account of the tales and legends of the olden times which are connected with them.
- 4. It is not certain when the feudal system commenced; but it appears to have been first in use among the German and was introduced into France by the Franks, who

entered that country A.D. 420, and who laid the foundation of the French monarchy, about four hundred and eighty-six years after Christ. It continued in full force in the time of Charlemagne, and for some centuries after it formed the basis of all the political systems of Europe.

- 5. Now I must tell you that, among the rough kings and barons of the feudal times, it often happened that private acts of violence and injustice took place. Sometimes a powerful baron would come suddenly upon a weaker one, seize his castle, and either murder him or shut him up in a dungeon. Sometimes one of these barons would carry off the beautiful daughter of another king or baron, and take her home to his castle.
- 6. Even in these rude times such things were considered wrong, and sometimes a brave warrior, called a knight, would take it upon himself to redress these grievances. He would perhaps go and challenge the baron who had been ruilty of injustice to come out and fight him, or in some ther way would endeavour to repair the injury done.
- 7. The people applauded these knights, and cheered them to acts of daring in the cause of justice and benevolence. Thus, by degrees, their numbers increased, and, about the ime of the Crusades, there appears to have been a good many of them.
- 8. The Crusades themselves seemed to establish knighttrantry as a regular profession; and, from the period of 1100

after Christ, we may consider it as one of the most rema able institutions in Europe.

- 9. When knight-errantry, or chivalry, had become to established, those who belonged to the profession were considered as under a religious vow to devote themselves to cause of justice and humanity. If any person had sufficient an act of injustice, they considered themselves bound to the matter right; if any person was in distress, they wounder obligation to peril their lives for his relief.
- 10. Besides this, the knights were required always to the truth, and always to perform their promises; they we expected to be full of generosity and courage, and never be guilty of any act of meanness. They were, in sho expected to devote themselves to the cause of humanity, a remedy, as far as in their power, the injustice and violen which belonged to the age in which they lived.
- 11. Many of these knights spent their whole time riding about the country in search of adventures. The were called knights-errant. If, in the course of their travel they heard of any body in distress, they would offer the services for relief.
- 12. They were particularly devoted to the cause of ladi who had been stolen away, and shut up in castles. I behalf of these they often performed wonderful feats attempth and valour. Sometimes, it is true, the knight acted wickedly, but in so doing they violated their vows.

Questions.—2. What can you say of Europe in feudal times?

3. What must you remember? 4. What of the feudal system? Who introduced it into France? When? When was the foundation of the French monarchy laid? How long did the feudal system continue? Of what did it form the basis? 5. What happened in feudal times?

6. How were such things considered? What would a knight sometimes do? 7. What of the people? Knights? 8. What of the Crusades? When did knight-errantry become a regular profession? 9. What of those who belonged to the profession? 10. What was required and expected of the knights? 11. Who were knights-errant? 12. What did they perform for ladies?

CHAP. CXVII.—EUROPE continued.

MORE ABOUT CHIVALRY.

- 1. If one knight-errant chanced to meet another, they usually went to fighting, either for sport or renown. Some of them acquired great fame, and a multitude of songs and ballads were composed in celebration of their deeds.
- 2. The knights were very particular to ride fine strong borses. Some of these are almost as famous, in the legends of chivalry, as their riders. The knight was powerfully amed, his chief weapon being a long pointed lance. Beside this, he had a sword, dagger, battle-axe, and mace, which was heavy sort of club.
- 3. In addition to these weapons for attack, he had a defensive armour, consisting of a shield of metal, a helmet of steel with a vizor to cover his face, a body harness made of plates of steel, and sometimes a shirt of mail consisting

- of a multitude of iron links, the whole fitting close to the body. Over all this the knight wore a long flowing robe which came down to his heels.
- 4. The horse also was carefully defended by mail, or steel plates. His head, chest, and sides were usually covered, and sometimes the whole body was shielded by glittering steel. Nothing, indeed, could exceed the care and preparation usually bestowed by the knights in training their horses, in selecting their armour, in having it carefully fitted, and in keeping it bright.
- 5. They were also very attentive to their daily exercise, as well to preserve their health and acquire strength, as to keep themselves in perfect practice.
- 6. A knight was always attended by a squire, and some times by several squires. These attended upon the masters, and were considered as learning to become knight themselves. As the institution of chivalry advanced, became a matter of honour to be a knight; and there most kings, princes, and military leaders took upon the selves the vows of knighthood. The celebrated leade the Crusades, Richard of England, Godfrey of France others, were knights.
- 7. In after times, there were several orders of knowe of each order taking upon themselves peculis Such were the Knights of St. John of Jerusal of Malta, the Knights of the Cross,

nen society had become somewhat more civilized, it custom in different parts of Europe to have tilts naments. These were occasions of great ceremony, itudes of people collected together to witness them. ere often splendid beyond description. Kings, and fair ladies delighted in these exhibitions.

by consisted of encounters between celebrated that in complete armour. They took place in some n, surrounded with tents and pavilions filled with s. The victorious knights were honoured with from the people, and with marks of favour even gs and queens.

ich was the institution of chivalry. If I had time, ill a book with stories of knights. A multitude of ed romances were written in the age of chivalry. Sounted the deeds, or pretended deeds, of celebrated is. Some of them are very amusing, but they are I filled with incredible fables.

nivalry was at its height from the year 1200 to 00. From this later period it rapidly declined, and, ne of Elizabeth of England, that is, about 1600, it d. If there were a few tilts and tournaments after were only as relics of an age that had passed.

The initial control of the second of the sec

untry were largely concerned in all these matters.

QUESTIONS.—1. What happened if two knights-errant met was done in celebration of their deeds? 2. What of their horse was the knight armed? 4. What of the horse's caparison? armour? 5. What of exercise? 6. What of squires? How was fession of knighthood considered? Who were some celebrate in the Crusades? What can you say of orders of knights? 8. tilts and tournaments? 9. Describe them. What of the 10. What of romances? 11. When was chivalry at its height of it after 1400? When did it cease? 12. Why is the stor Feudal System, Chivalry, &c., told in connection with the h France?

CHAP. CXVIII.—EUROPE continued.

KING PHILIP AND POPE BONIFACE. WARS OF THE FRENCH ENGLISH.

- 1. I WILL now go on with my story about France. Charles the Fat, Hugh Capet, and the other kings mentioned, there were many sovereigns; but I shathem over till I come to Philip the Fair, who began t in 1285. He possessed great personal beauty, but he bad qualities of mind and heart. The most rem event of his reign was a great quarrel with Pope Boni
- 2. This potentate was one of the haughtiest pop ever wore a triple crown. He spoke to the sovere Europe as if he were sovereign of them all, and I kings. But Philip the Fair refused to acknowled authority. Pope Boniface excommunicated King Phi his disobedience, and King Philip called Pope Boniface bad names he could think of.

- 3. One day some of Philip's friends took Pope Boniface isoner. They put him on a horse without saddle or bridle, d made him ride with his face towards the horse's tail. obody could help laughing to see what a ridiculous figure as cut by his Holiness. But, as for poor Pope Boniface, he ok the joke so much to heart, that, together with the loss his treasures, it actually killed him. Philip the Fair rvived him several years.
- 4. The French have always been a warlike people. They we been so often at war with England, that Frenchmen d Englishmen used to think themselves born to be each her's enemies.
- 5. On the death of Charles the Fourth, in 1328, Philip of alois became king of France. But Edward the Third, ng of England, asserted that he himself was the rightful ng of France, because his mother was the daughter of nilip the Fair. He undertook to enforce his claim by vading France with an English army.
- 6. King Edward challenged Philip of Valois to fight him single combat; but Philip preferred to meet him with an my. At the bloody battle of Cressy, in France, in 1346, e French lost the bravest of their nobles, and thirty opened men.
- 7. In 1350, John the Good, son of Philip of Valois, suceded to the throne of France. The country was invaded r an English army under the eldest son of Edward the

Third. He was called the Black Prince, on account of the colour of his armour.

- 8. King John of France, with sixty thousand men, encountered the Black Prince of England, near Poictiers. The Black Prince had only eight thousand soldiers. But the English archers and crossbow-men let fly their arrows at the French, and made a dreadful havoc among them King John was taken, and kept prisoner four years in London.
- 9. John the Good was succeeded by his son, Charles the Wise. King Edward of England had now grown old, and his son, the brave Black Prince, was dead. The French therefore, got back all the territories which the English had won of them, except the town of Calais.
- 10. But when Charles the Well-beloved was king of France, the English renewed the war. Henry the Fifth, now king of England, invaded France. At the battle of Agincourt he had but fifteen thousand men, while the Franch had nearly a hundred thousand.
- 11. Yet the English gained a glorious victory, with the loss of only forty men. On the side of the French them were seven princes, the high constable of France, and the thousand gentlemen killed, besides many prisoners. In 1422 the English king entered Paris in triumph.
- 12. But Henry, king of England, died soon afterwards and then the French began to best the English. The

der of the French at this time was a girl of eighteen ned Joan of Arc, or the Maid of Orleans. She was veruitful. The French believed that Heaven had sent her rescue their country from the English invaders. The glish believed her to be a witch, and that the evil one isted her in fighting against them.

- 13. For a considerable time it was found impossible to hstand holy Joan, the Maid of Orleans. She was clad in ght steel armour, and rode in front of the French army a snow-white horse. In her hand she carried a conrated banner, on which was painted the image of our riour. But at last she was wounded and taken prisoner. a English condemned her to be burnt alive for witchcraft.

 4. She was accordingly bound to a stake in the markete of Rouen. The English army looked on rejoicing, a the flames roared and whistled around her. When the had burnt out, there remained nothing but ashes and need hones of the valiant Maid of Orleans.
 - 2. What of Pope Boniface? What took place between him lip the Fair? 3. What did Philip do to poor Pope Boniface? eet had his treatment upon the Pope? 4. What of the French? Frenchmen and Englishmen consider themselves? 5. When les IV. die? When did Philip of Valois become king? Edward III. claim? 6. What did King Edward do? What le of Cressy? 7. Who became king in 1350? Who was 'rince? 8. Who encountered the Black Prince? Describe of Poictiers. 9. Who succeeded John the Good? What

were the French able to win back their territories from the 10. Who was the next king of France? What battle was fi Henry V.? 11. Which side won the victory? What was the French? What took place in 1420? 12. What happ the death of Henry V.? Describe the Maid of Orleans. the French and English think of her? 13. How did she app head of the army? 14. What was her sad fate?

CHAP. CXIX.—EUROPE continued. THE REIGN OF SEVERAL FRENCH KINGS.

- 1. But, though the Maid of Orleans was no long captain, the French were still successful. The Engineerly all that Henry the Fifth had won. The monarch was called Charles the Victorious, on accommany triumphs.
- 2. Yet he was an unhappy king. His son hated l attempted to kill him by poison. After the discover plot, the poor old king was afraid to take food en support life, lest he should take poison with it. So haway, and died miserably.
- 3. His son, Louis the Eleventh, succeeded him i He was a crafty, treacherous, and cruel king. Onc a nobleman was to be beheaded, Louis ordered hi children to be placed under the scaffold, that they n sprinkled with their father's blood.
- 4. One of the most famous of the French kir Francis I, who ascended the throne in 1815. We

against the Swiss, and against the Emperor of Germany; but the emperor took him prisoner at the battle of Pavia.

- 5. There was no war with England during the reign of Francis the First; but he once held an interview with the English king, near Calais. So much magnificence was displayed on both sides, that the place of meeting was called the Field of the Cloth of Gold.
- 6. In 1560, Charles the Ninth became king of France. He was then a boy of ten years old. His reign was disgraced by one of the bloodiest scenes in history. It is called the Massacre of St. Bartholomew.
- 7. The Catholics (those who were attached to the Pope of Rome) had conspired to murder all the Protestants (those who did not like the Pope) throughout France. On the night of St. Bartholomew's day, 1572, their wicked project was put in execution. Some writers affirm that a hundred thousand Protestants were mardered.
- 8. The king himself sat at one of his palace windows with a musket in his hand, and shot some of the poor wretches. But he was soon called to receive the recompense of his crimes. After the massacre he was afflicted with disease, and he died in 1574.
- 9. The next king but one was Henry the Fourth, who seemded the throne in 1589. He was a good king, a brave warrior, and a generous man. His subjects leved him, and the French have cleary been proud of Henry the Fourth.
 - 10. Yet the affection of his people could not save his life.

One day he was riding through the streets of Paris in his coach. Seven courtiers were with him. Other vehicles were in the way, so that the coachman was compelled to stop the horses. The servants, meanwhile, went by a short cut, intending to join the coach when it had got through.

11. There was a man near the coach named Ravaillac. He was waiting for a chance to kill the king; and now, seeing him without his servants and off his guard, he drew a poniard, stepped upon the wheel, and leaned over into the coach. All the power of France could not now be of any avail. The first blow of the poniard wounded the king, and the second killed him.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the French people? The English? The French king? 2. What of Charles the Victorious? 3. What of Louis XI.? 4. When did Francis I. ascend the throne? What of him? 5. Describe the interview at Calais, 6. When did Charles IX. come to the throne? 7. Describe the Massacre of St. Bartholomew. 8. When did Charles IX. dic? 9. When did Henry IV. come to the throne? What of him? 11. How did he lose his life?

CHAP. CXX.—EUROPE continued.

THE REIGNS OF LOUIS THE GREAT AND HIS SUCCESSORS.

- 1. THE murdered Henry was succeeded by his son, Louis the Thirteenth. The government was chiefly directed by Cardinal Richelieu, an ambitious priest. He grew more powerful than the king himself.
- 2. The next king was Louis the Fourteenth, when the French called Louis the Great. He was a very proud at

haughty monarch. He endeavoured to make France the greatest country on earth; not that he really cared for the welfare of his subjects, but because he wished to exalt himself above all other kings.

- 3. He had a peculiar manner of walking, which would have been ridiculous in a common man, but was thought extremely majestic in a king. He used to wear a large curled wig, and nobody ever saw him without it. He would never pull off his wig until he had got into bed and closed the curtains.
- 4. This king began to reign at five years old, and reigned no less than seventy-two years. He was continually at war. In the early part of his reign, his armies achieved many splendid victories.
- 5. But, in the king's old age, the English Duke of Marlborough defeated his troops, and reduced his kingdom to great distress. The French people now grew weary of their great monarch.
- 6. And well they might be weary of him, for he had taken all their money, in order that he might have the means of going to war. He seemed to think it more necessary that he should have glory, than that they should have bread.
- 7. At last, in 1715, the old king died. As he had been so grand in his lifetime, his courtiers deemed it proper that he should carry as much grandeur with him to the tomb as possible. They therefore prepared a magnificent funeral.
- 8. But, wherever the procession passed, the people heaped curses on the royal corpse. They hissed so loudly that,

the king had not been stone-dead, he would have started up in his coffin. Thus ended the glorious reign of Louis the Great

- 9. All the sons and grandsons of old Louis the Great had died before him. He was therefore succeeded by his greatgrandson, a child of five years old, who now became Louis the Fifteenth.
- 10. Until the little king should become of age to take the sceptre into his own hands, the Duke of Orleans was declared regent of France. He was a profligate man. Instead of teaching the young king how to make his subjects properous and happy, he set him an example of all sorts of wickedness.
- 11. And Louis the Fifteenth turned out just such a king as might have been expected. In his whole reign of fifty-nine years, he seems to have thought of nothing but his own selfish pleasures.
- 12. His kingdom was almost ruined, and his subjects were starving. But, if an earthquake had swallowed France and all its inhabitants, the king would hardly have cared. The reign of this odious monarch prepared the French to have the very name of monarchy. He died in 1774, and we succeeded by his grandson, Louis the Sixteenth, who was then a young man of twenty.
- 13. Thus, by the extravagance of Louis XIV., and the profligacy of Louis XV., a foundation was laid for what is called the French Revolution, of which I shall tell you is the next chapter.

- 14. I should be very glad to pass by the story of that awful period, for I know it can give my reader no pleasure to read of violence and bloodshed. But it is necessary to read the dark as well as the bright pages of history.
- 15. We may learn from the French Revolution how much evil may be brought upon a country by bad rulers; and, as some of my young pupils will hereafter be men, and be called upon to assist in choosing rulers, they may be made to feel the duty of choosing good ones.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who succeeded Henry IV.? What of Cardinal Richelieu? 2. Who was the next king? What can you say of Louis the Great? 4. What of his wars? 5. What of the Duke of Marborough? 6. What of the French people? 7. When did Louis the Great die? Describe the funeral. 9. Who succeeded Louis XIV.? 10. What of the Duke of Orleans? 11. What of Louis XV.? 12. When did he die?

CHAP. CXXI.—EUROPE continued.

THE FRENCH REVOLUTION.

- 1. Leuis the Sixteenth had no talents which could render him fit to govern a nation. But he was a man of good heart, kind disposition, and upright intentions. With all his defects, there has seldom been a better king; for, if he was unable to do good, he was unwilling to do harm.
- 2. The king was married to an Austrian archduchess, named Marie Antoinette. She had great beauty and accomplishments; but she was never a favourite of the French people.

- 3. Not long after this king and queen were crowned, the American Revolution broke out. The United States declared themselves a free and independent republic. The people of France took a great interest in the affairs of America; and they began to think that a republic was a better kind of government than a monarchy.
- 4. They compared the tyranny under which they and their forefathers had ground for ages, with the freedom which made the Americans so prosperous and happy. The more they reflected upon the subject, the more discontented they became with their own condition.
- 5. The French are a people whose minds are easily excited; and, whenever any thing remarkable is going on among them, you would think that the whole nation is almost mad, or perhaps had been drinking too much wine. So it happened in this case. They now began to rave against the king, queen, and nobles, the priests, the gentlemen, and all others whom they had formerly respected; they even blasphemed against Heaven itself.
 - 6. In 1789, the mob of Paris tore down the Bastile. This was an old castle where the kings of France had been accustomed to confine such of their subjects as offended them Many a poor wretch had been thrown into the dungeons of the Bastile, and never again beheld the sunshine.
- 7. The destruction of the Bastile was a good thing; and so likewise were many other of the first movements of the French Revolution. But when the people had once begun

to change their ancient government, they knew not where to stop.

- 8. It was not long before blood began to flow. No man nor woman in the kingdom was now safe unless they wore a red cap upon their heads, which was called the cap of liberty.
- 9. At this period it was no uncommon thing to see a mob of men and women in the streets of Paris, carrying a bloody head upon a pole. And those who looked at the features would, perhaps, recognise the countenance of some great nobleman or beautiful princess.
- 10. In a little while longer there were so many heads to be cut off that the work could not be done fast enough in the ordinary way. It was therefore necessary to do it by machinery; and a horrible instrument, called the guillotine, was invented for the purpose.
- 11. This infernal contrivance was set to work upon the proud nobles, and the priests, and the beautiful ladies of France. Hundreds of their heads fell upon the pavement of Paris, and their blood ran like a river through the streets.
- 12. When many of the loftiest heads in the kingdom had been cut off, the people fixed their eyes on the head that wore a crown. "Off with the king's head, too!" cried they. So they dragged the poor harmless king before the National Convention, and he was forthwith sentenced to the guillotine.
- 13. As the poor king mounted the steps of the scaffold, he gazed round at the fierce and cruel multitude. It seemed

The second secon Then he looked at the guiwith the blood of the thousand thinks before him. is the suffering time on the suffering n incentini simes had abjured their God; Other subjects but The same and same and

The water to the unbappy king and The victim calculy laid his head age Local and the priest, " some

To Jeros and the by and the body! The state of the state of the state of N. Market. the state of many kings had by

THE REPORT OF THE PARTY OF THE

True of Land 2 Wheat of Marie The state of the s Street in the French appear when any Winds and Diese in 1789? Wi when it the old carde? What we will see the second se B. Sir was the guillotine The games in games the (

CHAP. CXXII.—EUROPE continued.

THE RISE OF NAPOLEON BONAPARTE.

- 1. The day of the king's execution was the 21st of January, 1793. Not many months afterwards, the queen was likewise beheaded. France was now ruled by a succession of bloody monsters, who, one day, were sending crowds to the guillotine, and the next day were sent thither themselves. This anarchy was what the French called a Republic.
- 2. In the mean time, war was breaking out on all sides. Austria, Prussia, England, Holland, Spain, and Russia, sent armies against France. The French raised a million of men, and bade defiance to all Europe.
- 3. In the French army there was a young lieutenant of artillery, named Napoleon Bonaparte. When the war began, he was an unknown and friendless youth. But he distinguished himself in every battle and every siege, till, in a very few years, the whole world had heard of Bonaparte.
- 4. When he was only twenty-six years old he conquered Italy. The next year he compelled the Emperor of Austria to make peace. In 1798 he invaded Egypt, and fought many battles in the sandy deserts and among the pyramids.
- 5. The French were now tired of being governed by men whose only engine of government was the guillotine. They wanted a ruler who would deserve their obedience by his agacity and energy, and not merely compel them to obedience by the fear of having their heads cut off.

- 6. Napoleon Bonaparte was such a man. He was not a good man, nor a truly wise one. He was a selfish and ambitious despot. But perhaps he was a more suitable ruler for such a people as the French, than if he had been a different man.
- 7. He saw that the French were now so excited that it would be difficult, perhaps impossible, to restrain them. He thought it better that they should make war on foreigners than slaughter each other, and with the sword rather than with the guillotine. So, partly because he could not help it, but chiefly because he was ambitious, Napoleon Bonaparte became a mighty conqueror.

QUESTIONS.—1. When was Louis XVI. beheaded? Describe the French Republic. 2. What countries now went to war with France? 3. What of Napoleon Bonaparte? 4. What acts did Napoleon perform?

5. What of the French people at this time? 6. What of Napoleon?

7. What were his thoughts upon the French? What did he become?

CHAP. CXXIII.—EUROPE continued.

THE FALL OF BONAPARTE.

- 1. In 1802, Bonaparte was elected consul of the French Republic for life. Two years afterwards he was proclaimed emperor, by the name of Napoleon. He had now more power than any of the ancient kings.
- 2. I cannot follow this great captain in his marches all over Europe, nor even number the victories which he was Wherever he went, monarchs humbled themselves with

- him. He drove them from their thrones, and placed his own brothers and chief officers there instead. He gave away royal diadems like playthings. He was called the Man of Destiny, because fate seemed to have ordained that he should always be victorious.
- 3. But, in 1812, the spell of his success began to be broken. He invaded Russia with a vast army, and penetrated to the city of Moscow. The Russians set the city on fire. Winter was coming on, and the French soldiers had nowhere to shelter themselves.
- 4. They retreated towards Poland. On their way thither they fought many battles with the Russians; and the weather was so bitter cold that the bodies of the slain were frozen stiff. The snow was crimsoned with their blood.
- 5. Before they reached the frontiers of Poland, three-fourths of the army were destroyed. The emperor Napoleon fled homeward in a sledge, and returned to Paris. He soon raised new armies, and was ready to take the field again.
- 6. But all the nations of Europe were now allied against him, and, after a few more battles, he was driven from Germany into France. The enemy followed him. They compelled him to surrender the imperial crown of France in exchange for the sovereignty of the little island of Elba, in the Mediterranean.
- 7. Napoleon went to Elba, and remained there almost a Fear. But in March, 1815, he suddenly landed again on the French coast. He was almost alone when he set his foot on

the shore. But there were a multitude of his grim old veterans throughout the country. These shouted for joy, and trampled on the white flag of the Bourbon king who had succeeded him. In a few days Napoleon's banner again waved triumphant all over France.

- 8. The nations of Europe now mustered their armies once more. They were led by the Duke of Wellington. Napoleon marched into Flanders, or Belgium, to meet them. He was followed by almost every young Frenchman that could shoulder a musket.
- 9. The Emperor Napoleon's last battle was fought at Waterloo, on the 18th of June, 1815. There he was utterly overthrown, and France was overthrown with him. The warlike emperor was sent to die on the island of St. Helena and the Bourbon king was again established on the throne of Louis the Sixteenth.

QUESTIONS.—1. What were the titles of Napoleon? 2. What happened wherever he went? What was he called? 3. What happened in 1812? What of the French army? 5. What of Napoleon 6. What happened to him? 7. How long did Napoleon remain at Elle What of him in 1815? Describe his landing in France? 8. Who the nations of Europe? What did Napoleon do? Who followed his 9. When was the battle of Waterleo fought? Fate of Mapoleon?

CHAP. CXXIV.—Europe continued. RECENT AFFAIRS OF PRANCE.

1. Louis the Eighteenth, the new king of France, was a quiet, respectable sort of old gentleman, and seems to

been chiefly distinguished for his love of oysters. He died in 1824, and was succeeded by his brother, Charles the Tenth.

- 2. But the Bourbons did not profit by past experience; and in 1830 Charles the Tenth forbade, among other things, the printing of any newspapers except such as praised his conduct and government.
- 3. The mob of Paris immediately rose in rebellion. They beat out the brains of the king's soldiers with paving-stones, and shot them from the windows of the houses, so that the old king began to tremble for his head.
- 4. In order to keep it on his shoulders, he took off his golden crown, and put it on the head of his grandson. But the French would not have the little fellow for their king. They drove Charles and his family out of the kingdom.
- 5. Their next step was to establish some other form of government, and they sought the advice of the celebrated La Fayette. He would have preferred a republic, but he knew such a government was not suited to the French peeple, and so he recommended the establishment of a limited monarchy, with Louis Philippe for King.
- 6. Louis Philippe was chosen king, and ascended the throne in 1830. He governed France prudently, and raised his kingdom to a high state of prosperity; but his fickle subjects got tired of him, and wanted a change. Accordingly, in 1848 they compelled him to quit the kingdom.
- 7. Sad confusion threatened to follow. Some patriotic men formed what is called a Provisional government; but

Republic for ten years, by upwards of seven millio votes. He was chosen hereditary Emperor by a number of votes, on November 21-22, 1852, and ason the throne as Napoleon III. Since which he may Eugenie, a Spanish lady of noble birth, and has gow France with vigour and success.

10. The Emperor Louis Napoleon largely contribut the establishment of the kingdom of Italy. He has go improved and beautified the City of Paris, and be prudent government has proved that his celebrated expre "The Empire is peace," was made in all sincerity. April 1, 1867, the Grand Exhibition was opened in a and has attracted visitors from all parts of the world assembly of crowned heads has been an extraordinar and nothing has marred the pleasure of the gathering be insane attempt made by a young Pole to shoot the Empire 1.

yette give? 6. What of Louis Philippe? 7. What followed his ition? 8. How did Prince Louis Napoleon gain the crown of e? 9. What can you tell of Napoleon III.? 10. What did he do aly? What for Paris? What was his famous speech? What of rand Exhibition? What happened then?

CHAP. CXXV.—EUROPE continued.

CHRONOLOGY OF FRANCE.

									B.C
Jaël, Gaïl, G	auls, Cel	ts or	rath	er Ko	elts, t	egan	to	migra	te
ito Europe fi	om Asia,	, as is	supp	osed,	abou	t.			2000
al migration	of the G	auls t	o diff	erent	parts	of E	urop	е.	397
ravaged by th	he Gauls,	and	Rome	take	n.				396
łauls make d	estructive	e incu	rsion	s into	Mac	edon	and		
reece .								280	to 278
ony of Belgæ	settled i	n Fra	nce						200
outhern part				е Мес	literr	ancai	1, co	n-	
nered by the			٠.				´.		to 122
e invaded by	Julius C	æsar							58
ance finally			the R	oman	ıs .				25
•					_	-	-	-	A.D.
e invaded by	the Gotl	as and	l othe	r Ger	mani	e trit	es	•	400
mond, a Fra	nk, becon	nes fir	st kir	ng of	Fran	ce	•	•	418
mond died			•				•	•	428
n died .				•	•	•	•		448
eus, head of	the Merc	vingi	an ra	ce, di	ed				458
ric died .				•					481
chy of Franc	ce establi	shed	•						486
baptized									496
died .									511
the Short, fi	rst of the	Carlo	vingi	an ra	ce				751
magne began	n to reign								772
magne crow	_								800

(Charlemagne died		•	٠	•	•	•
1	Hugh Capet, first of the Capetian	n race,	bega	n to 1	eign		
	Peter the Hermit heads the First				`	•	•
(Godfrey of Bouillon takes Jerusa	lem					
(Chivalry at its height	•	•	•	•	•	•
]	Last Crusade begun	•			•	-	
]	Philip the Fair begins to reign				•		
]	Battle of Cressy	•		•	•		
	John the Good ascends the thron	ıe.	•	•	•		
1	Battle of Poictiers			•		•	
1	Battle of Agincourt	. •		•	•		
į	Joan of Arc raises the siege of O	rleans		•	•		
]	Louis XI. ascended the throne						
]	Francis I. began to reign .						
(Charles IX. began to reign .			•			
]	Massacre of the Protestants .	•					
1	Death of Charles IX	•					
1	Henry IV. ascended the throne						
	Henry IV. killed by Ravaillac, a	Jesuit	;				
	Richelieu, minister of Louis XIII						
1	Louis XV. died	•					
1	The Bastile destroyed			•	•		
]	Execution of Louis XVI					_	
1	Napoleon took possession of Egy	pt			•		
1	Napoleon made first consul .	•			•		
1	Napoleon gained the battle of Ma	arengo					
1	Napoleon made consul for life						
1	Napoleon created Emperor of Fra	впсе		•			:
1	Battle of Trafalgar between Fran	ce and	Eng	Loal			
	Burning of Moscow					•	
	ouis XVIII., king of France	•					
B	attle of Waterloo, between Napo	leon ar	ədə bi	Duk	of W	ellin	gton !
	ath of Napoleon			•	•		,
	mar or reporter					•	•

	FRAN	ICE.					837
							A.D.
of the three gle			ance	•	•	•	1830
ippe ascended the	e throne		•	•	•	•	1830
a Fayette .	•			•	•		1834
and abdication of	of Louis	Philipp	рв		•	•-	1848
nis Napoleon elec	ted Pres	ident o	f the l	Frenci	h Rep	ublic	1849
oleon appointed	Presiden	it for te	n yea	rs	•		1852
obility restored			•			•	1852
made Emperor						•	1852
Iarshal Soult		•		•	•		1852
Japoleon marries	Madlle.	de Mo	ntijo	•		•	1853
pares for war age	ainst Ru	ssia.	•		•	•	1853
r to assassinate th	ie Empe	ror Naj	poleor	ı			1853
III. entertains th	e kings	of the	Belgia	ans ar	ad Po	r-	
and the Prince C	Consort o	of Engl	land,	at Bo	ulogi	10	1854
h Chambers auth	iorize a l	loan of	500,0	00,000) fran	CS	1854
iption to the abo	ve loan	amount	ts to 2	,175,0	000,00	00	1855
e-et-Bretagne, fro	om Rio J	aneiro,	anch	ored a	ıt Paı	ris .	1856
III. and the Emp	ress visi	t Quee:	n Vic	toria	•		1856
III. fired at by an	n assassi	n, Pian	ori			•	1856
bition of Industr	y opened	l by the	e Emp	eror		•	1856
ambers authorize	a loan	of 750,0	00,00	0 fran	1C8	•	1856
iption to the abo	ve loan	is 3,652	2,591,9	985 fr	ancs	•	1856
toria and Prince	Albert vi	isit the l	Empe	ror Na	pole	on	1856
Conferences ope	ned at P	Paris	•		•		1857
ugenie gives birt	h to the	Prince	Impe	rial			1857
ror and Empress	visit Qu	een Vi	ctoria	at Os	borne	з.	1857
assassinate the	Emperor	r and E	mpre	ss at]	Paris		1858
ror Napoleon refu	ases to e	encoura	ge th	e slav	e tra	le	1858
Austria, victories	of Mage	en ta a n	d Sol	ferino	•		1859
iercial treaty beti	ween Fr	ance an	d En	gland	•		1860
ween France and	Sardin	iaces	o goia	f Sar	oy s	'nġ	
o France .					٠.	• -	1887
Exhibition opened	l, Apcil	lst					1601

CHAP. CXXVI.—EUROPE continued.

- 1. The ancient empire of Germany, dissolved in divided into thirty-nine states; it was reconstituted federacy in 1815, and styled the *Deutsche Bunc* states were governed (internally) by independent so among whom the Emperor of Austria, the kings of of Bavaria, of Saxony, of Hanover and of Wurtemt the greatest powers, the remainder being governed dukes, dukes, princes, one elector (of Hesse-Cassel) landgrave (of Hesse-Homburg); five of these powafterwards absorbed by the others, either by he abdication, or extinction of the sovereign line.
- 2. These various states sent representatives to the Diet of Plenipotentiaries, which assembled in the frankfort-on-the-Maine, and this was as the Upper for the whole of the states. This system remained till 1866, when war broke out between Austria and and after a very short campaign Prussia was victor Austria was excluded from the Germanic Confe
- 3. Twenty of the states entered into a confedera Prussia, under the title of North Germany, six were by Prussia, six form the confederation of South under Bavaria, and two, though still belonging to manic empire, are not included in either confederacy are the Duchies of Luxemburg and Limburg, and a the dominion of the King of Holland.

- 4. The chief cities of Germany are Hamburg, the capital of a republic celebrated for its commerce; Munich, the capital of Bavaria, a handsome city in a fine country; Dresden the capital of Saxony, one of the best built towns in Europe; Carlsruhe (Charles's rest), the capital of Baden, and there are many others of nearly equal note. The chief rivers are the Danube, the Rhine, the Weser, the Elbe, the Oder, and the Main: these and more than forty others are navigable.
- 5. Germany is celebrated among other things for the manufacture of Toys in which many of you take much delight: musical instruments and clocks of various sorts are produced in large quantities, and from Leipsic we obtain many thousands of the coloured toy books which delight and instruct the younger children.
- 6. The Germans are very fond of music; and their children, both boys and girls, are taught it as part of their education. The German flute is well known everywhere, and is so called either because it was invented in Germany, or is greatly used by the Germans.

QUESTIONS.—1. When was the ancient Germanic Empire dissolved? How was it then arranged? How were these states governed? 2. When did the war between Prussia and Austria occur? What was the consequence? 3. How were the German states arranged after the war? Name the states now in either confederation and their ruler? 4. What are some of the chief cities in Germany? The rivers? 5. For what is Germany celebrated? 6. What of music and the German flute?

CHAP. CXXVII.—EUROPE continued.

ABOUT THE ANCIENT TRIBES OF GERMANY, CHARLEMAUNE, ETC.

- 1. In ancient days, Germany, as I have told you, was inhabited by numerous tribes of barbarians. Among these were the Goths, Visigoths, Vandals, Suevi, Cimbri, Teutones, Heruli, Alemanni, and many others. As there was no Peter Parley among them to write their history in early times, we know little or nothing of them till two or three hundred years before Christ.
- 2. At this time they were numerous, but they were mere savages. They were clothed in the skins of wild beasts, and seemed to delight only in war and plunder. In the time of Cæsar they were very powerful; but that famous conqueror marched against them, and, after many bloody battles, they were reduced to submission.
- 3. I have already told you, that wherever the Rozzni extended their arms, they carried their arts. Thus the rade tribes of Germany became partially civilized; many of the people exchanged their skins of beasts for the Roman tega or gown. They also learned how to make better weapons of war, how to build better houses, and how to live more comfortably.
- 4. But you will remember that four or five hundred year after Cæsar, poor old Rome was tottering to decay. It was therefore unable to keep these restless tribes of the north is

subjection; nay, Rome was now incapable even of defending herself.

- 5. The Germans soon discovered how matters stood. They saw that in Spain, Italy, and Greece, there were a great many rich cities, and pleasant towns, and fruitful valleys. They saw that in these countries the Romans had collected the wealth of the whole world, and these shrewd barbarians thought it would be a good speculation to go to these countries and live there.
- 6. They thought it would be much better to go and live in palaces and fine houses, and have plenty of wine, and plenty of gold, silver, and jewels, than to live in their own less fruitful country, and earn their bread by toil, or by plundering εach other.
- 7. Accordingly, some of them set out under their daring leaders, and marched into Italy. Others soon followed, and, in the course of a few years, these hordes had settled, like swarms of bees, in all the southern countries of Europe.
- 8. But still many remained behind in Germany, and thus increased, so that in the time of Charlemagne they were numerous and powerful. But he conquered them, as I have said in the history of France. Thus, having made himself master of Germany, he became its emperor, and resided there. You will recollect that his empire included France, Germany, and other countries.
- 9. The empire of Germany, thus established, was, howover, composed of many separate sovereignties, each of which

year 1806.

- 10. In 1056, Henry the Fourth was emperor. sharp quarrel with Pope Gregory the Seventh. power was so great that he compelled the emperto Italy to ask his pardon.
- 11. When Henry arrived at the gate of the p the weather was exceedingly cold, and there was ground. Pope Gregory was sitting by a comf. He sent the emperor word that he would have no to him, till he had stood three whole days baref snow, without tasting a mouthful of food.
- 12. This penance the poor emperor was coundergo. On the fourth day, Pope Gregory gas lution for his sins, and allowed him to warm him his dinner.
 - 13. Another emperor, also named Henry, v

idea of the spirit and manners of these pretended successors of St. Peter.

14. In 1273, Rodolph of Hapsburg, a native of Switzerland, was elected emperor of Germany. He was the ancestor of the present sovereigns of Austria. Most of the German emperors, since his reign, have been his descendants.

QUESTIONS.—1. How was Germany anciently inhabited? Mention some of the barbarian tribes. 2. What of them in ancient times? In the time of Cæsar? 3. What of the arts of the Romans? How did the rude tribes become partly civilized? What did they do? 4. What of Rome several hundred years after Cæsar? 5. What did the Germans soon discover? 6. What did they think? 7. What did some of them do? What happened in a few years? 8. What of the barbarians that remained in Germany? What of Charlemagne? What did his empire include? 9. What of the sovereignties of Germany? What was the custom in 912? What of the emperor? What was the government of Germany? 10. When was Henry IV. emperor? What of the pope? 11. What of the penance laid by the pope upon the king? 13. Relate the anecdote of Henry and Pope Celestinus. 14. Who was king of Germany in 1273? What of him?

CHAP. CXXVIII.—EUROPE continued.

AFFAIRS OF SWITZERLAND.

- 1. Until the year 1307, Switzerland was under the government of Germany. Switzerland, as you know, is a mountainous little country, which is hemmed in between Germany, France, and Italy.
 - 2. As I have many kind wishes for my young readers.

hope it may be their pleasant fortune some da visit Switzerland. When you go there, you w roads, but I advise you to travel on foot. many pleasant things to see, so many tall moun like white clouds up in the sky, so many littl seeming like mirrors encircled with frames ma many bright green valleys, so many old ruino short, so many interesting things to see that stopping every moment, and a carriage would tl great trouble.

- 3. I have been over this country myself, an foot. Switzerland seemed to me like a little we Every thing was strange, but still interesting. wild mountains, you would perhaps expect to wild and fierce people. Yet the Swiss are honest race. I should like to visit the count my old limbs will never more toil up and down
- 4. But I must now proceed with my brief at history of Switzerland. When Albert the emperor, in 1298, he acted like a tyrant towaland. He appointed governors who were worse himself. One of them, named Gesler, set his pole, and ordered all the people to bow down to
- 5. The famous peasant, William Tell, would a to Gesler's cap. My readers have heard the steller commanded Tell to shoot at an apple on lead, and how Tell hit the apple without hurting

- 6. When the Swiss rebelled against the emperor of Germany, Tell was their principal leader. After sixty pitched battles with the emperor's troops, the liberty of Switzerland was established, and it became a free and independent republic.
- 7. It is said that some of the Swiss still believe that William Tell is not yet dead, though it is nearly five hundred years since he was seen on earth. They suppose that he lies asleep in a cavern near the lake of Lucerne, with two other men who assisted in founding the republic.
- 8. These three slumberers are called the men of Grutli. If ever Switzerland shall be enslaved, it is fancied that they will start from their sleep, and come forth with their aucient garb and weapons, and rouse up the people to fight for their freedom.
- 9. Since the time of William Tell, who died in the year 1354, Switzerland has generally been a free country. But during the French Revolution it was conquered; it has since been restored to independence, yet the people are overawed by the kings that reign in the neighbouring countries.
- 10. Many of the Swiss leave their beautiful but poor country, to seek their fortunes in other lands. Some enter foreign armies as soldiers, and some go to Paris and London, to sing songs, or carry about shows, and thus get a little money. You often find a Swiss boy in the streets of these great cities, doing what he can to get a living.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the government of Switzerland? Where is Switzerland? 2. Describe the appearance of the country there. 3. What of the people? 4. What of Albert I.? What of Gesler? 5. What of William Tell? 6. How did Switzerland obtain her liberty? 7. What legend have the Swiss concerning William Tell and his two companions? 9. When did Tell die? What of Switzerland since the time of Tell? 10. What of the Swiss people?

CHAP. CXXIX.—EUROPE continued.

SEQUEL OF GERMAN HISTORY.

I WILL now proceed with the history of Germany. Charles the Fifth was the most renowned of the emperors of Germany. He was likewise king of Spain, and ruler of the Netherlands and part of Italy.

- 2. When this great potentate was fifty-seven years old, he grew weary of pomp and power. He therefore took of his crown, and gave it to his son Philip, and went to live in a monastery in E-tremadura, in Spain. He dressed very plainly, and busied himself in saying his prayers and working in a garden.
- 3. One day he wrapped himself in a shroud and lay dow in a coffin, stretching himself out as if he were dead. I then ordered his attendants to carry him to the tomb. T reader must not suppose that the emperor meant to be bur alive. He merely wished to remind himself that his must soon close. But the ceremony hastened his end; for brought on a fever, of which he died, in 1588.

- . Ferdinand the Second, who began to reign in 1619, was ed by the Catholics the Apostolic Emperor, because he a bitter persecutor of the Protestant inhabitants of Gerry. His cruelties forced them to ask the aid of the edish king, Gustavus Adolphus, who accordingly invaded many, and gained many victories.
- . The subsequent history of Germany does not abound h the sort of events which my young readers would be rous of knowing. Few or none of the latter emperors formed any remarkable actions. But they appear to have better than most sovereigns, for they cannot be accused reat crimes.
- . The emperor of Germany, as I have mentioned above, generally a prince of the Hapsburg family. The kingle of Austria was enlarged by the successive emperors, finally became great and powerful.
- . It was now able to carry on war by itself, and was at rent times engaged in struggles with Turkey, with nce and Spain, with Prussia, and sometimes with several he sovereign states of Germany.
- . In 1792, Francis the Second became emperor of Gery. He undertook a war against Napoleon Bonaparte; his armies were routed, and in 1806 he was compelled esign the title of Emperor of Germany. He was afterds called Emperor of Austria. His empire at the time is death, which took place in 1836, was one of the most

powerful sovereignties of Europe, and deserves a separate 348

9. The present confederation of Germany will probably undergo some changes in a few years; it is considered likely that the South German states will eventually elect to be chapter. united to North Germany, under the leadership of Pressia.

QUESTIONS.-1. What of Charles V.? 2. Relate an anecdots of him. 3. When did Charles V. die? When did Ferdinand II. begin to reign? What of him? What were the Protestants forced to do? 5. What of the late emperors of Germany? 6. What of the emperor of Germany? Kingdom of Austria? 7. With what countries has Austria waged war? 8. Who became emperor of Germany in 1792? What took place in 1806? What of the Austrian empire?

CHAP. CXXX.—EUROPE continued.

ABOUT AUSTRIA, HUNGARY, ETC.

1. Austria is an extensive and powerful empire, lying sont of Russia and Poland, and north of Turkey. is bounded by the German states, Switzerland, and Italy.

2. This country, which for so long a period claimed to the head of the Germanic Confederation, is now exclu from it, as the result of the war in 1866, having to ! precedence to Prussia with respect to Germany, and to Venice to Italy. The Austrian empire is divided into teen provinces, the population of which is about 33,000 The Roman Catholic is the state religion, and the church is next in importance; all other sects are toler Vienna is the capital of the German part of Austria, is one of the most splendid cities in Europe. It is ted on the Danube, which is a large river. In winter is frozen over, and the people amuse themselves by ag, skating, and driving upon it with various kinds of es or sleighs. The scene presented at such a time is gay and pleasant.

In summer the inhabitants resort to the public garwhich are extensive and beautiful. Here are fine
s, where you may see people of all kinds. There are
s and gentlemen taking the air, boys and girls scamig about, men with monkeys taught to dance, and a
itude of curious sports. The gentlemen of Austria are
addicted to hunting wild-boars, which are common in
country.

In the German part of Austria, which is the western on, the inhabitants speak the German language, and the manners and customs of Germany. The history of country has been partly told. In early times it was pied by tribes of barbarians. At a later period it formed of the states of the German empire.

At this time it was called an archduchy, and was rned by an archduke, who was, however, subject to the eror. Rodolph of Hapsburg succeeded to the governof the empire in 1273, as I have told you, and from the sovereigns of Austria have since descended. After time Austria rapidly increased in power, and its arch-

duke was at length considered as of course the emperor of all Germany.

- 7. It has since been engaged in many wars, particularly with Sweden, Turkey, and France. In 1688, the Turks pushed their arms into the heart of the empire, and laid siege to Vienna, but were finally driven back.
- 8. In 1809, Austria was involved in a war with Bonaparte. She had well-trained soldiers and able generals; but the French emperor beat them in several pitched battles, and finally entered Vienna. Here he made peace with the emperor, but took from him a large portion of his dominions. It has had many troubles of late years, arising from the discontent of its subjects. The chief of them has led to a civil war in the kingdom, which is still in a troubled state.
- 9. The war in 1866 added largely to the national debt of Austria, but the emperor seems to have turned his attention to developing the resources of the country. The Austria territory was largest in 1848. In 1859 the greater partitionally was ceded to Italy, and in 1866 Venetia and the remainder of Lombardy was ceded to the same power These took from the Austrian empire about 16,500 squardless, English measure.

QUESTIONS.—1. Where does Austrialie? Its boundaries? 2. has resulted from the war of 1866? 3. What of Vienna? We the Danube? Amusements? 4. What of the public gs. 5. What of the German part of Austria? What of it in times? At a later period? 6 What was it called time? Who succeeded to the crown in 1273? What of

and its archduke? 7. What of the wars of Austria? What happened in 1688? 8. What happened in 1809? What did Bonaparte do? 9. How may Austria be considered at the present day? What is a curious fact?

CHAP. CXXXI.—EUROPE continued. ABOUT HUNGARY, BOHEMIA, THE TYROL, ETC.

- 1. I MUST now give you a very brief account of some of the dependencies of Austria. Hungary is an extensive country, and includes several provinces. Buda, the capital, is a fine city, situated upon the Danube.
- 2. The climate of Hungary is pleasant, and the soil yields very fine grapes, of which some choice wines are made. The mountains afford considerable quantities of gold and silver. The inhabitants are divided into two classes, the rich and he poor. The former live in splendid palaces, and the atter are but little better than their slaves.
 - 3. The original inhabitants of Hungary consisted of veral fierce tribes, who appear to have come from Asia to Europe at a very early date, by crossing the Altai untains. They probably resembled those Tartar tribes, ed Turks, who fell upon the Saracen empire, and establed the empire of Turkey.

The principal of the Hungarian tribes were called Huns. rmy of these, you will recollect, was led into Italy, by herce and bloody Attila, about 450. He had already t many battles, and made the Greek empire a tributary.

The principal of the Hungarian tribes were called Huns.

of Italy, spread terror and desolation among the inlu-He approached the city of Rome, but was compretire. He died in 451.

- 5. For many years, Hungary was the scene of I wars. Its rulers did not acquire the title of king time of Stephen, who died in 1038. In 1563, I became a part of the Austrian empire, and the En Austria was crowned King of Hungary, June 8th, 1
- 6. Bohemia is a country surrounded by mountaining about four millions of inhabitants. It is mines of silver, tin, and precious stones. Many present inhabitants are Jews. There are also a gree of those strange, wandering people called Gipsies.
- 7. This country derives its name from a tribe from Asia, who settled there about 600 years B.C. 450 after Christ, it appears that the Celts had been out, for the people at that time were Germans, un government of a duke. Charlemagne rendered the tributary, but it afterwards became a kingdom. It became a possession of the house of Austria, continued so from that day.
- 8. I need not proceed to tell you more about the p belonging to the empire of Austria. I have alread you some account of Venice; and, if I had room, tell you of the brave Tyrolese, who live in the m between Italy and Germany, and many other tribe the government of Austria.

9. But, lest you should be weary of my stories, we will proceed to the history of Prussia. I must however remark, that the geography, as well as the history, of Germany is a great puzzle, and demands great study in order to be understood. The war of 1866 has greatly increased the puzzle.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of Hungary? Its capital? 2. Climate and soil of Hungary? Mountains? Inhabitants? 3. What of the original inhabitants? Their origin? Whom did they probably resemble? 4. What of the Huns? What of Attila? When did he die? 5. What of Hungary for many years? What of Stephen? What took place in 1563? 6. What of Bohemia? Population? Mines? Inhabitants? 7. What of a tribe of Celts? Who occupied the country in 450? What of Charlemagne? What took place in 1526? 8. Where do the Tyrolese live?

CHAP. CXXXII.—EUROPE continued.

ABOUT PRUSSIA.

- 1. PRUSSIA, previous to the war with Austria in 1866, had an area of 107,757 square miles, and a population of eighteen and a half millions, the addition of the kingdom of Hanover, and the states of Schleswig-Holstein and Lauenburg, Hesse-Cassel, Hesse-Homburg, Nassau, the city of Frankfort, portions of Bavaria and Hesse-Darmstadt, have increased her territory to 137,066 square miles, and her population to nearly twenty-three millions.
- 2. Prussia is the head of the Confederation of North Germany, which comprises the following states:—Saxony, Mecklenburg-Schwerin, Oldenburg, Brunswick, Saxe Weimar, Mecklenburg-Strelitz, Saxe-Meiningen, Anhalt, Saxe-Coburg

Gotha, Saxe-Altenburg, Waldeck, Lippe-Detmold, Schwarzburg-Rudolstadt, Schwarzburg-Sonderhausen, Reuss-Schl Schaumburg-Lippe, Hamburg, Lubeck, and Bremen. 'population is about twenty-eight millions.

- 3. These are "hard words" for some of my readers I h no doubt, but they seem necessary to be given after stupendous changes consequent on the recent brief v I must trouble my young friends with a few more "h words" in the names of the six states that compose the p sent confederation of South Germany, viz., Bavaria, W temburg, Baden, Hesse-Darmstadt, Reuss-Greiz, and Li tenstein. The population is about eight-and-a-half millior
- 4. Berlin, the capital of Prussia, is a fine city situated the river Spree, which is a sober stream, though it has a jovial name. Berlin is walled round, and has sixteen g Dantzic, the principal sea-port of Old Prussia, is stream, fortified, has many heavy guns, and a large garrison.
- 5. The inhabitants of Prussia are chiefly of German cand speak the German language. They are industrious a multitude of schools having been established, are to well educated. But they are not a free people; and out freedom, even education cannot make a nation he
- 6. Besides the German population, Prussia has many Jewish inhabitants. There are also the restribes that settled in the country long ago, who sporiginal languages. These people are generally igno appear unwilling to be taught.

Questions.—1. What was the former area of Prussia? Her population? What states have been annexed to Prussia? What is her present area? Population? 2. Name the states of the north Germanic confederation. What is their population? 3. Name the states of the south Germanic confederation. What is the population? Capital of Prussia? River Spree? 4. Dantzic? What of the fortress? 5. What of the inhabitants of Prussia? Schools? Of what blessing are the people in want? 6. What of Jews? Ancient tribes?

CHAP. CXXXII.—EUROPE continued.

HISTORY OF PRUSSIA.

- 1. PRUSSIA did not become a kingdom till the year 1701. Previous to that time it was governed by dukes. Its ancient inhabitants were called Borussi, from whom the country took the name of Prussia.
- 2. Frederic William the First, who ascended the throne in 1713, was a very odd sort of a king. He used to wear an old blue coat, which was ornamented with rows of copper buttons, reaching from his chin half-way down his legs. Whenever he got a new coat, he made the tailor sew on the same old copper buttons.
- 3. He prided himself greatly on a regiment of his guards, which consisted of very tall men, many of whom were seven feet high. These gigantic fellows came from all parts of Europe; and, if they would not come of their own accord, the king hired people to bring them by force.
- 4. Frederic William was in the habit of walking about the streets of Berlin with a big came in his hand, and, if he

happened to see any idle people, he would give them a sound thrashing. He beat his own son oftener than any body else. The princess, his daughter, got likewise a good many hard knocks.

- 5. When this ill-tempered old king was dead, his son Frederic came into possession of an enormous quantity of treasure, as well as an army of sixty thousand men. He soon found uses enough for his money and soldiers, in a war with Austria, Russia, and France.
- 6. The war between Prussia and these three kingdoms began in 1756, and was called the Seven Years' War. Saxony and Sweden joined the enemies of Frederic. At one time he seemed on the point of losing all his dominions. But he finally brought the war to an honourable close. He was then the most celebrated sovereign of his time, and is known in history by the title of Frederic the Great.
- 7. He was almost as peculiar in his dress as his father had been. He always wore a uniform, consisting of a blue cost faced with red, and a yellow waistcoat and breeches. But his clothes were often torn, and generally soiled with snuff. On his head was a very large cocked hat, and he wore a long queue behind.
- 8. When Frederic the Great was grown an old man, he used to sit on an easy-chair, wrapped in a large clock. F appeared to take no pleasure in his palace, nor in all the pomp and power of his kingdom.
 - 9. He looked very sad and wee-begone, and might

heard muttering to himself—"A little while longer, and I shall be gone!" He died in 1786, at the age of seventy-five.

- 10. He was succeeded by his nephew, Frederic William the Second, who reigned eleven years. The next king was Frederic William the Third. He had a large army, and thought himself powerful enough to withstand the Emperor Napoleon I.
- 11. But at the battle of Jena, in 1806, Napoleon worsted the Prussian army, and killed or wounded twenty thousand men. About forty thousand were taken prisoners. Frederic William was then deprived of a great part of his territories.
- 12. After the battle of Waterloo, and the final defeat of Napoleon, the losses of Prussia were repaired. Frederic William was a well-meaning man. He declared that there should be a Bible in every cottage in his kingdom, and I believe he tried to keep his word. He died in 1841, and was acceeded by his son Frederic William IV.
 - 13. In the year 1858, in consequence of the mental illness the king, his brother was appointed Regent of the kingn. The king never recovered his mental faculties, and I January 2, 1861, when he was succeeded by his brother, liam I. (previously Regent), whose eldest son, Prince eric William, married the Princess Royal of England, ary 25, 1858.

QUESTIONS.—1. When did Prussia become a kingdom? How was it previously governed? Its ancient inhabitants? 2. What of Frederic William I.? When did he ascend the throne? Give an account of him. 5. Who succeeded him? In what war did he engage? 6. What was began in 1756? What kingdoms joined the enemies of Frederic? What was he called? 7. What was the dress of Frederic the Great? 8. What of him when he had grown old? 9. When did he die? 10. What two kings succeeded him? What of Frederic William III.? 11. What took place at the battle of Jena? What of the Prussian king? 12. What took place after the battle of Waterloo? When did Frederic William III. die? Who succeeded him? 13. What can you say of this king? Who succeeded him? What happened?

CHAP. CXXXIV.—EUROPE continued. CHRONOLOGY OF GERMANY, AUSTRIA, HUNGARY, AND PRUSSIA.

THE Kelts settled in Bohemia 600 Russia possessed by the Venedi 320 Switzerland subdued by Cæsar 57 Hungary, anciently Pannonia, subject to the Romans 11 A.D. The Romans expelled from Germany 290 Germany conquered by the Huns . 432 Hungary possessed by the Huns under Attila 433 Attila leads the Huns into Italy . 450 The Kelts driven from Bohemia 450 Charlemagne master of Germany . 202 Switzerland became part of the kingdom of Burgundy 298 Emperors first chosen in Germany 912 Hungary annexed to Germany under Charlemagne 920 Stephen, first king of Hungary 1038 Belgic Gaul obtains the name of Austrasia 1040 Henry IV., emperor of Germany . 1056 Prussia subdued by Frederic IL. . 1915

RUSS	IA.						359
Prussia yielded to the power of Pol-	and.			_	_	_	A.D. 1219
Rodolph of Hapsburg governs Aust				•		-	1273
Albert I. reigns in Switzerland	-		•	•	•	-	1298
Cantons formed in Switzerland	•	•	•	•	•	-	1307
William Tell died	•	•				•	1354
Bohemia attached to Austria .	•	•	•	•	•	•	1526
Charles V., Emperor of Germany, d	lied	•	•	•		•	1598
Ferdinand II. of Germany began to		n	•	:	•		1619
The Turks lay siege to Vienna		<u>-</u>		•	•		1688
Prussia became a kingdom .			•	•		•	1701
Frederic William I., Emperor of Pr	• …aaia	•	•			•	1713
Hungary annexed to Germany	ubbia.		•	•	•	•	1739
War between Austria, Russia, Fran	•	nd P	• •=======		•	•	1756
Francis II. Emperor of Germany	ю, а	nu I	ubbia		•	•	1792
Switzerland conquered by the Fren	• oh	•	•	•	•	•	1798
	СП	•	•	•	•	•	1806
Napoleon defeats the Prussians	•	•	•	•	•	•	1809
Austria at war with France .	•	•	•	•	•	•	1835
Death of Francis II., Emperor of A			•	•	•	•	
Attempt to assassinate Emperor of			•	•	٠.	•	1853
Marriage of Emperor of Austria to	Arch	duch	ess of	Bav	aria	•	1854
Death of King of Saxony .	•	•	•	•	•	•	1854
Evangelical Conference at Berlin;					•	•	1857
The Princess Royal of England man	rried	to th	e Cro	wa P	rince	of	
Prussia	•	•		•		•	1858
Austria threatened with national be	ınkru	ptcy	and 1	evolt	8		1860
Hungary wishes to form a separate	kinge	dom	•		•		1861
War between Prussia and Austria	, and	l for	natio	n of	Nort	h	
and South Germany .	•	•					1966
-							

CHAP. CXXXV.—EUROPE continued.

DESCRIPTION OF RUSSIA.

1. The Russian empire, like that of Turkey, lies partly in Europe and partly in Asia. The whole of the northern parts

- of Asia belongs to Russia. This is thinly scattered ov a great number of different tribes, who chiefly wande from place to place in search of food for their cattle.
- 2. Siberia is a name given to nearly all the norther of Asia. It is a bleak, cold region, and almost man shiver to think of it. The people are poor, and dress skins of wild animals, and, for the most part, live huts. It is to this country of winter and poverty. Russian emperor banishes those of his subjects whom not like.
- 3. I will now tell you of that part of Russia which Europe. It is a vast territory, about equal in exter the United States, and embraces more land than all thingdoms of Europe. The population is not less the millions!
- 4. You will see by this that the Emperor of Ru very powerful king. He reigns over his subjects much as he pleases, there being no law superior to I but the present emperor has shown a desire to pron welfare of his people.
- 5. He has a great many palaces in different part empire, but he resides chiefly at St. Petersburg. an immense army, and is always surrounded with many soldiers.
- 6. By looking on a map, you will see that Rurope extends from the Northern or Frozen Ocean north, to the Black Sea on the south, a distance of

two thousand miles. On the east, it is separated from Asia by the Ural Mountains; on the west, it is bounded by the Gulf of Finland, the Baltic Sea, Prussia, Austria, and Turkey.

- 7. In such a vast territory as this, you may well suppose that the climate is various. Along the borders of the Frozen Ocean, the lakes are covered with ice for nine months in the year. In the middle parts of Russia, the winter is about as severe as in Canada; in the southern parts, the climate is very warm and pleasant. Here grapes grow in abundance, with many other nice fruits.
- 8. The capital of Russia is St. Petersburg, situated on the river Neva, which flows into the Gulf of Finland. It is a splendid city. There is no place in the world where you would see more strange sights than in St. Petersburg. Here are a great many palaces, inhabited by people so rich that some of them keep two or three hundred servants or slaves.
- 9. In the streets you see a great many soldiers gaily dressed, gilt coaches drawn by three or four horses, beggars covered with rags, and people dressed in all the strange fashions you can think of.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the Russian empire? What of Northern Asia? Tribes? 2. To what country is the name of Siberia given? What of the country? People? Russian emperor? 3. What of Russia in Europe? Its population? 4. What can you say of the emperor of Russia? 6. What is the extent of Russia in Europe? Boundaries? 7 Climate of Russia in Europe? Productions? 8. What of St. Petersburg? Palaces? People? 9. What may you see in the streets?

٠,

CHAP. CXXXVI.—EUROPE continued. DESCRIPTION OF BUSSIA CONTINUED.

- 1. Moscow is next to St. Petersburg in size. It is a famous old city, where the kings of Russia used to live. But, in 1812, a great part of it was burnt, in order to prevent Napoleon and his soldiers from wintering there, pretty much as people in America sometimes set fire to a heap of brush, in order to drive out a rabbit or a wood-chuck. In this way Moscow was nearly destroyed, but it has since been rebuilt.
- 2. St. Petersburg carries on a great deal of commerce by sea, and many of our ships go there to get hemp, iron, hides, tallow, and other things. But Moscow is situated far inland, and therefore carries on no trade by sea.
- 3. There is no king in the world who reigns over so many kinds of people as the czar, or emperor of Russia. In his European dominions he has at least sixty different tribes or nations under his sway, who speak different languages, and have different modes of life. In his Asiatic dominions be probably has as many more.
- 4. In the northern part of European Russia there are a good many tribes of short, swarthy people, called Laplanders, Samoiedes, &c. These live almost in a savage state. These that dwell near the sea live so much upon fish that they always carry about with them a fishy smell. These races

RUSSIA. 363

resemble the Esquimaux Indians, who occupy the northern parts of the American continent.

- 5. It would seem that these people would have a very dull time of it up in their cold country, where three-fourths of the time is winter, and where the nights are sometimes six months long. But they appear to enjoy themselves pretty well. They have no books, but they tell long stories, and crack their jokes as freely as other people.
- 8. They have no history, for they seem to keep no more record of what passes among them than a hive of bees. One generation succeeds another, and so things pass from age to age. They are not warlike, and have no great events to tell. Thus they go on, living now as their great-grandfathers lived before them. They acknowledge the authority of the emperor; but as the country is so cold he never comes among them, so they do pretty much as they please.
- 7. In the southern and western portions of European Russia are a good many Tartars, who are very fond of riding about on swift horses. Along the river Don there is a race of Cossacks. These, too, are fond of horses, and in battle fight terribly with long spears, which they hurl to the distance of two hundred feet.
- 8. Besides these tribes there are many Jews, several millions of Poles, a good many Germans, and some Gipsies, in Russia. In the cities, the people generally live pretty much as they like, each man pursuing what occupation he pleases.
 - 9. But the country people who till the land, are held in a

state of bondage similar to that of the vassals in old feudal times. These are called boors, and are in a sad state of ignorance and poverty. They belong either to the emperor or the rich people.

- 10. Like all other slaves, they are degraded and miserable, and, like other slaves, they grow worse rather than better. They are, in short, the property of their masters, who look upon them as animals made for their service, and they care little about them, except to get as much out of them as they can.
- 11. That golden rule, "Do to another as you would have another to do to you," seems never to have been thought of by these Russian masters, until the accession of the present Emperor or Czar, Alexander II., who has successfully commenced the great work of gradually emancipating the serfs.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of Moscow? What was done in 1812? 2. What of the commerce of St. Petersburg? What of Moscow? 3. What of the Czar of Russia? 4. What tribes live in European Russia? Whom do they resemble? What of their employments? Their life? 7. What of Tartars? Cossacks? 8. What of other inhabitants? 9. Who are the boors? What of them? 10. How are they like other alaves? 11. What rule did the masters of these slaves never practise? What is now going on? Who commenced the work of emancapation?

CHAP. CXXXVII.—EUROPE continued.

THE REIGN OF PETER THE GREAT.

- 1. ALTHOUGH Russia is such an immense empire its history will not detain us long. It was a country of barbarians till within little more than a hundred years. It cannot be said to have taken a rank among civilized nations till Peter the Great ascended the throne.
- 2. Peter was a very strange man, and, though he began the work of civilizing his empire, he found it a more difficult task to civilize himself. In fact, he was somewhat of a barbarian all his life.
- 8. The emperors of Russia are called Czars. When the Ozar Peter was twenty-five years old, he left his throne, and travelled over Europe in search of knowledge. He did not go to any of the learned universities, nor apply himself to the study of the dead languages.
 - 4. That was not the sort of knowledge which Peter anted. The first thing he did was to go to Holland, and it himself apprentice to a ship-carpenter. The house is ll standing where he used to live while there. He aftereds went to England, and followed the same trade as in bland.
 - . Besides learning the business of ship-carpentry, he
 - : lessons in other branches of mechanics, and also in
 - ry. In short, he neglected no kind of knowledge

which he thought would be useful to himself or to his subjects.

- 6. In a little more than a year, he heard that his sister was endeavouring to make herself empress of Russia. This intelligence compelled him to break off his studies and labours, and hasten back to the city of Moscow. On arriving there he put some of the conspirators to death, and confined his sister in prison.
- 7. His time was afterwards so much occupied in war, and in taking care of the empire, that he never had leisure to finish his education. But he had already learned a great deal, and the effect of his knowledge was soon seen in the improvement of Russia.
- 8. Peter used to rise at five in the morning, and busy himself all day about the affairs of the empire. But in the evening, when his work was over, he would seat himself beside a big round bottle of brandy, and drink till his reason was quite gone.
- 9. This habit, together with the natural violence of his temper, rendered him almost as dangerous to his friends to his enemies. He often said that he had corrected the faults of Russia, but that he could not correct his own.
- 10. Peter was in the habit of beating those who offende him with his cane. The highest noblemen in Russia offe underwent this punishment. Even the Empress Catherin his wife, sometimes got soundly beaten; but perhaps aftener than she deserved it!

11. It is supposed that the Czar Peter ordered his c son to be put to death, and that he was privately executin prison. He had many faults, and was guilty of sor great crimes, but his name stands high on the list sovereigns; for he was one of the very few who hav laboured hard for the welfare of their subjects. He did more for the good of Russia than all the Czars who went before and have come after him.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of Russia? Peter the Great? 2. What can you say of Peter? 3. Who are called Czars? Describe the manner in which the Czar Peter set about acquiring knowledge. 8. In what vice did Peter indulge? 10. What habit had he? 11. What is supposed to have been the fate of Peter's son? The character of the Czar Peter?

CHAP. CXXXVIII.—EUROPE continued.

THE SUCCESSORS OF PETER THE GREAT,

1. Peter died in 1725, at the age of fifty-three, and was acceeded by his wife, the Empress Catherine. She had en a country girl, and the Czar Peter had married her for sake of her beauty. In some respects, Catherine was a d sort of woman; but, among other faults, she was rather fond of wine.

She reigned only about two years, and was succeeded at husband's grandson, named Peter the Second. He in 1730, and left the throne to Anne Iwanowna, his The Empress Aune was a good sovereign, and Per-

formed many praiseworthy acts. None of her deeds, however, have been more famous than the building of a palace of ice.

- 3. This stately and beautiful structure was built on a frozen lake. Instead of wood, or hewn stone, it was composed entirely of blocks of ice. The furniture was likewise of ice; and even the beds were of the same material. When it was illuminated within, the whole edifice glittered and sparked as if it were made of diamonds.
- 4. Bright as it was, however, I would far rather dwell in the meanest mud cottage than in so cold a mansion. Yet, my dear readers, any other palace is almost as uncomfortable as the Empress Anne's palace of ice; there is little in them but cold and glittering grandeur.
- 5. The successor of Anne was the Princess Elizabeth, a daughter of Peter the Great. She ascended the throne in 1740, and reigned twenty-two years. Her successor was Peter the Third, who began to reign in 1792.
- 6. He, like Peter the Great, had a wife named Catheria. They had not long sat together on the throne when she contrived to depose Peter, and made herself sole ruler of Russia. It is supposed that she afterwards caused him to be murdered.
- 7. But, although so wicked a woman, Catherine was endowed with admirable talents, and she became one of the most illustrious sovereigns in the world. Some people called her Catherine the Great man; for many of her was

:3

ould have been more becoming in a man than a

96, when she died, Catherine was on the point of Turks from their territories. If she had succeeded, she would have governed the whole of the vast veen the Mediterranean Sea and the Arctic Ocean. leath hurried the great empress away, to answer rder of her husband, and many other crimes. She ded by her son Paul, who was then forty-three

Czar Paul possessed none of his mother's talents, a very stern and unamiable disposition. Feople him of being insane. His conduct grew so intat some of his principal nobles conspired to kill

l was succeeded by Alexander, his eldest son. ror reigned from 1801 till 1825. He was engaged he the Emperor Napoleon, who penetrated with his ecity of Moscow. But the Russians burnt that ital of their country; and its destruction ruined army.

present Czar of Russia is Alexander II. He sucfather Nicholas in 1855. He has since occupied promoting the industrial wealth of his empire by ion of railways, and the material happiness of his y the abolition or modification of serfdom. He ar, oruelly continued to oppress the Circumsus and having (by treachery) succeeded in capturing their and talented leader, Schamyl, has now completely contheir country, forcing them to leave their native land. wards of six hundred thousand have already left the Cau and are now scattered over all parts of the Turkish em

QUESTIONS.—1. When did the Czar Peter die? Who suchim? What of the Empress Catherine? 2. How long did she Who succeeded her? When did Peter II. die? Who succeeded What of the Empress Anne? 3. Describe a palace of ice. ! succeeded the Empress Anne? What of her? When did Pebegin to reign? 6. What of his wife? What can you say c 8. What plan had Catherine the Great before her death? WI she die? 9. Who succeeded her? 10. What of the Czar 11. Who succeeded him? What of Alexander? How was the army rained? 12. Who is the present Czar of Russia? What What war has he continued? Name the Circassian leader. He captured? What has been the fate of the Circassians sinc

CHAP. CXXXIX.—EUROPE continued. ABOUT SWEDEN.

- 1. THE Swedish territories at present comprise Norway, and part of Lapland. These are bounded the Arctic Ocean; east by Lapland, the Gulf of and the Baltic; south by the Baltic, the Kattege Skager Rack; and west by the Atlantic.
- 2. Sweden is a cold and mountainous country; for its iron, of which large quantities are brow country. The people are industrious, bold, francement. A large part of the inhabitants him

cheese, and fish. In winter they clothe themselves in furs and sheepskins.

- 3. The Swedes are a sensible people, and are disposed to make the best of every thing. When their long winter goes away, they celebrate the return of spring by dancing around a Maypole. They love their country, and insist that it is the pleasantest part of the world.
- 4. Though they dress in sheepskins, and live in a homespun sort of way, they are still very polite. They are, in short, much more amiable, respectable, and well-behaved than many of the kings and princes about whom I have been telling you.
- 5. I may not have a better opportunity to tell you that good manners are a great recommendation to every body; but they are especially necessary to people who are not rich. Rich people are sometimes haughty and proud. This is very wrong and very silly; and, though every body despises such people, still their wealth will bring flatterers around them.
- 6. But people in more humble circumstances cannot afford to throw away the happiness, respectability, and comfort which arise from being amiable, gentle, and polite to every body.
- 7. Not much is known about the early history of Sweden. In ancient times it was under the government of Denmark. A Danish queen, called Margaret, ruled over Denmark, Sweden, and Norway, in 1387.
- 8. In 1518, the Danish king, Christian, caused ninetyfour Swedish senators to be massacred in the city of Stock-

- holm. Gustavus Vasa, the son of one of these senators, incited the Swedes to revolt against Denmark.
- 9. The king of Denmark sent an army to put down the rebels. But the ships in which the Danish soldiers had embarked, got imbedded in the ice on the coast of Sweden. The inhabitants skated off from the shore, and set the ships on fire.
- 10. Gustavus Vasa succeeded in freeing his country, and was elected King. The next sovereign of Sweden who is worth mentioning, was Gustavus Adolphus. He began to reign in 1611, at the age of eighteen.
- 11. This king was a great warrior, who fought for the Protestant cause, and vanquished the best generals in the service of the Emperor of Germany. In 1633, he won the battle of Lutzen, but was killed at the moment of victory.
- 12. Gustavus Adolphus left a daughter named Christina, who was then only six years old. She was thought to possess remarkable talents, and great pains were taken with her education. But she was neither a good woman nor a good queen.
- 13. After reigning a considerable time, Queen Christina became weary of the cares of government. She therefore abdicated the throne, and set out to seek a residence in some pleasanter country than Sweden.
- 14. But her conduct was so bad that all the kings of Europe were ashamed to have such a woman in their dominions. At last she adopted the Cathelia religion, and the pope permitted her to reside at Roma.

QUESTIONS.—! What do the Swedish territories comprise? 2. What of Sweden? The people? 3. What of the Swedes? 4. Their dress? Manners? 5. What of good manners? What of the rich? 6. People in more humble life? 7. History of Sweden? Who ruled in 1387? What was done in 1518? What of Gustavus Vasa? 9. What of the king? The ships? 10. What of Gustavus Vasa? Who was king of Sweden in 1611? 11. What of Gustavus Adolphus? In what battle did he die? 12. What can you tell of Queen Christina? 14. Where was she permitted to reside?

CHAP. CXL.—EUROPE continued. CHARLES THE TWELFTH AND HIS SUCCESSORS.

- 1. The most famous sovereign that Sweden ever had, and one of the most famous in the world, was Charles the Twelfth. But my readers will long ago have become tired of hearing about conquerors, so that I shall speak very briefly of Charles.
- 2. He began to reign in 1697, at fifteen years of age. From his youth upward he thought of nothing but being a soldier. When he was only about seventeen years old, the Czar of Russia, and the Kings of Poland and Denmark, made war upon him.
- 3. Charles beat them all in the first campaign. When he heard the bullets whistling by his ears, he showed great delight, and exclaimed—"That shall be my music!" And, as long as he lived, he never wished for any other music.
- 4. But it is a sad thing for a people when their king loves the whistling of bullets. Charles the Twelfth was a scourge to all Europe, and to his own kingdom more than to any

- a great victory over him at Pultowa. Charles a escape into Turkey.
- 6. He continued in that country five years, althought safely have returned home. He seemed to car about his own dominions. When the Swedes sent t what they should do in his absence, Charles answ he would send one of his old boots to govern them!
- 7. At last, in 1714, he left Turkey and returned to His first business was to make war again. But hi was now drawing to a close.
- 8. One night, while besieging a fortress in No advanced in front of his troops to see how the going on. A cannon-shot struck him on the killed him. He was found grasping his sword, whalf drawn from the scabbard. Some, however, have that he was assassinated. Historians seem hardry whather to call Charles the Twelfth a here or a magnitude.

prince of Sweden, and heir to the throne. In 1818, when Charles the Thirteenth died, Bernadotte succeeded him.

11. Bernadotte proved to be a better king than most of the other European sovereigns. He died in 1844, and was succeeded by his son Oscar, who died in 1859, and was, in turn, succeeded by his son Charles XV. Population about 4,000,000.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was the most famous of the kings of Sweden?

2. When did he begin to reign? What did he principally think of when a boy? Who made war upon him?

3. What anecdote can you tell of him?

4. What can you say of him?

5. What of Charles XII. for the first few years of his reign? When was the battle of Pultowa? Where did Charles fly?

6. How long did he stay in Turkey? What answer did he send to a message from the Swedes?

7. When did Charles return to Sweden? What of him when there?

8. How did he meet his death? What do historians think of Charles XII.?

9. Who succeeded him? When did Gustavus III. die? When was Gustavus IV. dethroned?

10. Who was the next king? When did Bernadotte succeeded him? Name the present king.

CHAP. CXLI.—EUROPE continued. ABOUT LAPLAND, NORWAY, AND DENMARE.

- 1. LAPLAND is the most northern country of Europe, and is divided between Russia and Sweden. The country is so cold, that the hot liquor we call brandy sometimes freezes there. I am afraid, however, that the Lapps find means of thawing more of it than is good for them.
- 2. I have already told you something about the Laplanders. The men are but four feet high, and the women not

much taller than a cider barrel. The people have a many reindeer, whose flesh supplies food, and whose furnish clothing. They also take the place of horses, as the people over the snow in sledges, at a rapid rate, people have no history that is worthy of being related

- 3. Norway is an extensive country, bounded on the by the Atlantic Ocean, and on the east by Sweden. a cold, bleak, and barren region, but the inhabitar pretty comfortably. They have very fine cows, from they make the best butter in the world.
- 4. Bergen is the largest city, and has twenty the inhabitants. The houses are small, and generally twood. Fires sometimes do great damage, and the there are a good many watchmen, who walk about the at night muffled up in thick great-coats. Every hotogrout, "God preserve our good city of Bergen!"
- 5. Norway was early inhabited by rough tribes, adventurous seamen. There seems to have been, then, a pirate among them; for, in 860, a pira Nadodv discovered Iceland, which was afterwards the Norwegians.
- im 1080; but, six years after, it became independently years it was governed by its own king.

 was incorporated with Denmark, and continued the hingdom till 1814, when it was transferred a Denmark is a little kingdom lying between

- termany. It is a level country, nearly surrounded by the sa. Copenhagen, the capital, has one hundred and twenty housand inhabitants. The whole population of the kingdom two millious. The Danish language is spoken both in Denmark and Norway.
- 8. The three kingdoms of Denmark, Sweden, and Norway, rere anciently called Scandinavia. In very early times these rere occupied by tribes of Finns and Germans; afterwards no Goths conquered these countries. They were led by Edin, of whom very marvellous tales are told, and who seems have been worshipped as a kind of Jupiter among these orthern tribes. Skiold, the son of Odin, is said to have een the first king of Denmark.
- 9. All that we really know of Denmark at this early eriod is, that the people were composed of wild adventurous arriors, who were generally considered by the more southnations of Europe as pirates.
- 10. These bold freebooters sailed forth in their little essels, and made conquests in different countries. Some of them settled in England, some in that part of France called ormandy, and some of them reached Spain and Italy.
- 11. In 920, the several Danish tribes appear to have been nited under one government. Canute conquered England at a part of Scotland in 1016, and subdued Norway in 130. Since his time, Denmark has had a great many vereigns, and been engaged in several wars; the last being is in defence of its territory against the combined attack.

out

and

are,

112.01

LOU

E 16

ĽГ

: **:**

=

٤:

٠.

the Prussians and Austrians, in which the two latter owers were successful, and the brave Danes have been compelled (being overpowered by numbers) to submit to the annexation of the duchies of Sohleswig and Holstein to Germany. They are now part of the kingdom of Prussia.

QUESTIONS. -1. Where is Lapland? What of the climate? 2. What of the Laplanders? Reindeer? History? 3. Where is Norway? What of the country? The people? Butter? 4. What of Bergen? Its population? What of the houses? Are fires frequent? What of the watchmen? 5. How was Norway early inhabited? What was done in 860? 6. When was Norway conquered, and by whom? When did it become independent? What of it in 1397? In 1814? 7. Where is Denmark? What of it? What of Copenhagen? Its population? Population of the Danish kingdom? What language is spoken in Norway and Denmark? 8. What three countries were called Seandinavia? Who occupied it? Who led these tribes? the first king of Denmark? What of Denmark at this early period? What people were called Normans? 10. What of these freebooters? Where did they settle? 11. What took place in 920? Canute? History of Denmark? What of its last war? The copsequences?

CHAP. CXLII.—EUROPE continued. BRIEF NOTICES OF SEVERAL KINGDOMS AND STATES.

1. There are several countries of Europe, of which my limits will not permit me to give a separate history. Some of them have been spoken of in connection with other king doms. The rest must be briefly noticed in one chapter.

2. If I had time I could make a long story about Holland, a country once covered by the sea, but which is now with out by vast dykes. The people of Holland are called Dutch, and are known all the world over as great smokers. They are, however, an industrious people, and I know of nothing more comfortable than the inside of a thrifty Dutchman's house in his own country. Amsterdam, the capital, contains two hundred thousand inhabitants.

- 3. Belgium is an interesting country. Its capital is Brussels, a handsome city. Under the fostering care of the late King Leopold I., the first King of Belgium, great progress has been made in trade and manufactures. The country is pleasant, and in some parts beautiful.
- 4. The Netherlands, or Holland and Belgium, were formerly one country. The whole territory is bounded on the north by the North Sea, east by Germany, south by France, and west by the British Channel and the North Sea. These territories belonged at one time to Rome, afterwards to Germany, and finally to Spain.
- 5. In 1581, the seven northern provinces revolted against Philip of Spain, and formed themselves into a republic, which was then called Holland. During the seventeenth century it was a very powerful nation, especially by sea. At this time her ships often disputed, and sometimes successfully, with the British fleets.
- 6. The remaining provinces of the Netherlands were long under the government of Austria. In 1810, Holland was united to France; but Holland and the Low Countries were afterwards formed into a separate kingdom. In 1830 there

was a revolution, and the southern provinces new comp the kingdom of Belgium.

- 7. Poland was once a nation of Europe, but it is now longer so. It was bounded north and east by the Russ dominions, south by the river Dneister, and west by Prus In 1772, the sovereigns of Russia, Prussia, and Aust seized upon Poland, and divided the greater part of territories among themselves. In 1795 they seized t remainder. The inhabitants have struggled bravely for the freedom, but in vain. They have been cruelly treated by t Emperor of Russia, who has sent thousands into exile, a banished thousands into other countries. Some of the Pol have fled from oppression to this country.
- 8. I have already given you a short account of the stat of Italy. It may be well, however, to repeat a few thin here. The republic of Venice, as you will recollect, w founded in the fifth century. It at first comprehended on some marshy islands at the head of the Gulf of Venic Afterwards, a considerable tract of territory on the mainlest was annexed to its government.
- 9. Venice carried on an extensive commerce; and, in thirteenth century, the republic was very powerful. It would customary for the Doge of Venice, who was the chief rules, espouse the sea as a wife, with pompous ceremonies. Venice is still the admiration of travellers, though it has long be decaying. There is, however, some hope that it will partal of the prosperity of Italy, of which it now forms a part

- 10. Genoa, on the north-western coast of Italy, formerly resembled Venice in its government, although it never was so powerful. In 1815, it was annexed to the territories of Sardinia. Sardinia is an island in the Mediterranean Sea, and has been a kingdom since the year 1720.
- 11. The former kingdom of Naples was generally called the kingdom of the Two Sicilies. Its territories comprised all the south of Italy, besides the island of Sicily, and some small islands in the neighbourhood. The former sovereigns of Naples came from Spain.
- 12. In 1808, the Emperor Napoleon gave the kingdom of Naples to one of his most distinguished generals, named Joachim Murat, who was the son of a pastrycook. King Joachim was shot in 1816, and the Two Sicilies were restored to the old king, Ferdinand. It is now part of the united kingdom of Italy.

QUESTIONS.—2. What of Holland? The people? What is the population of Amsterdam? 3. What of Belgium? The late king?

4. What of Holland and Belgium? How is the territory bounded?

To whom has it belonged at different times? 5. What took place in 1581? When was Holland very powerful? 6. What of the remaining provinces of the Netherlands? What took place in 1810? In 1830? 7. What of Poland? Its boundaries? What took place in 1772? In 1795? What of the Poles? 8. What of Venice?

•. When was it powerful? What was an annual ceremony? What of Venice now? 10. What of Genoa? Sardinia? Since when has it been a kingdom? 11. What was the kingdom of Naples generally called? 12. What of Napoleon? King Joachim? King Ferdinand?

CHAP. CXLIII.—EUROPE continued

CHRONOLOGY OF RUSSIA, SWED	EN,	LAPL	LND,	NOR	WAY,	DEX	MARK
HOLLAND,	BEL	GIUM, I	ETC.				
							A.D
VENICE established	•	•	•	•	•	•	42
Kingdom of Sweden began .	•	•	•	•	•	•	48
The first king reigns in Denmark			•	•	•	•	714
Venice becomes an independent			•	•	•	٠.	803
Iceland discovered by the Norwe	_	8.	•	•	•		860
Christianity introduced into Russ		•	•	•		•	958
Canute, king of Denmark, conqu	ered	Engla	ınd	•	•		1016
Norway conquered by Canute	•	•	•	•	•	•	1030
Russia conquered by the Crim Ta	artai	rs .	•	•	•		1237
Norway incorporated with Denma	ark	•	•	•	•	•	1397
Russia independent of the Tartar	8	•	•	•	•		1462
Massacre in Sweden	•	•	•	•			1518
Gustavus Vasa expelled the Dane	es fr	om Sw	eder	١.	•		1525
Gustavus Vasa ascended the thro	ne c	f Swed	len	•	•		1596
The first Czar reigned in Russia		•					1553
Republic of Holland founded				•		•	1581
Gustavus Adolphus king of Swed	en	•		•			1611
Battle of Lutzen, and death of G	usta	vus Ad	lolpl	ıus			1633
Peter the Great begins to reign			•				1696
Charles XII. begins to reign in S	wed	en					1097
Peter the Great defeats Charles 2			tow	B			1700
Charles XII. returns to Sweden	•	•	•			•	1714
Russia becomes an empire .		-		•	•	•	1721
Peter the Great died				•	-	•	1725
Peter II. died		•	-	·	•	•	1730
Elizabeth ascends the throne of			•	•	•	•	1740
Peter III. ascends the throne			٠.	•	•.	•	1763
			. `	. `	``.		1777
Partition of Poland		•		-	- '	-	-

CHRONOLOGY OF RUSSIA, ETC.							383	
Gustavus III. died							A.D 1799	
Russia declared war against France	•	•	•	•		•	1792	
Catherine II. died	В	•	•	•	•	•	1792	
	•	•	•	•	•	•		
Paul, Emperor of Russia, died	1: .1.	•	•	•	•	•	1801	
Copenhagen bombarded by the English Manager and Manage		•	•	•	•	•	1807	
Jeachim Murat made King of Napl		•	•	•	•	•		
Gustavus IV. of Sweden, dethroned Holland united to France	OL.	•	•	•	•	•	.1809	
	•	•	•	•	•	•	1810	
The city of Moscow burnt .	•	•	•	•	•	•	1812	
Norway transferred to Sweden	•	•	•	•	•	•	1814	
Genea annexed to Sardinia .	•	•	•	•	•	•	1814	
Sardinia has Savoy, &c., restored	• 	. 1 T.	• · • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		•	•	1815	
Commercial treaty between Denma		ia Ei			•	•	1824	
Alexander, Emperor of Russia, dies Nicholas ascends the throne of Rus		•	•	•	•	•	1825	
					n. 1. •	•	1825	
Revolution in Netherlands: divided								
Russian army crosses the Pruth to o			IGSTATS	a anu	AA STIT	аспи		
Russia defeated by the Turks at Ol			•	•	•	•	1853	
Negotiation between Sweden and I					War		1854 1854	
Russians defeated by the Turks at	Czita	te	•	•	•	•		
lussians cross the Danube .	•	•	.1		•	•	1854	
ussian ports of Riga, Libau, and V	Wida	a pio	скас	ea	•	•	1854	
ussians retreat from Silistria	•	•	•	•	•	•	1854	
ussians defeated at Giurgevo	•	•	•	•	•	•	1854	
seians retreat from Bucharest	•	•	•	•	•	•	1854	
ssians defeat the Turks in Armer		٠.	•	•	•	•	1854	
render of Bomarsund, 2000 Rus		•		•	•	•	1854	
sians defeated at the Alma and				•	•	•	1854	
nolas orders a levy of ten men					đ	•	1854	
imperial ukase orders the armir					•	•	1855	
h of Emperor of Russia. Acce				•			182	
Russian steamers and 240 sail	ing v	9889	is des	groye	ai be	0ds	`	
lan of Arof								

						Ľ
Defeat of the Russians on the Tchernaya		•	•	•.	. 10	H
Sebastopol evacuated, September 8	•		•	•	. 18	ij
Capitulation of Kars	•			•	. 18	15
Peace between Russia, France, England,	Aus	rie,	and I	Carke	y 18	5
Coronation of Alexander II	•	•	•	•	. 18	5
Abolition of the Sound dues by Denmark	:				. 18	5
Grand Duke Constantine visits Queen Vi	ictori	8	•		. 18	5
Schamyl, the Circassian chief, taken prise	oner,	and	prom	cht to	SŁ	
Petersburg			•	•	. 18	si
Russia and Poland at variance					. 18	61
Schleswig-Holstein taken from Denmark	-	-		_	. 18	e
• · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			•	•	•	-

CHAP. CXLIV.—EUROPE continued.

KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRRLAND.

- 1. I HAVE now come to the most interesting country is Europe; the country where there is more comfort, more goo sense, more thorough civilization, more true religion, then any other land in Europe, in Asia, or Africa.
- 2. The kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland embre England, Wales, Scotland, and Ireland. The three of countries are upon the island of Great Britain. This is is on the western coast of Europe, and is separated by British Channel from France. At the narrowest part channel is twenty-five miles wide. Ireland lies we Great Britain, at the distance of about sixty miles; a part it, however, is much nearer to Scotland.
- 3. These two islands are small in extent, but they contribute twenty-nine millions of inhabitants. Bear





kingdom has colonies in various parts of America, Africa, Asia, so that the queen rules over nearly one hundred fifty millions of people. Great Britain may be considered richest and most powerful kingdom on the face of the pe.

- . England has a queen who has several magnificent ices. England, too, has a great many noblemen who in costly country-seats, and who are, for the most part, racterized by honourable dealing towards their tenants, patriotism towards their country.
- . In all great cities there is a great deal of poverty and ering, and the cities of England do not form an exception; the condition of the poorer classes has been much alleviated the efforts of private liberality, and the operation of the :-laws, and perhaps there is no country in the world where e money is given away for the relief of the poor.

TESTIONS.—1. Which is the most extraordinary country in Europe? That is embraced in the kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland? It of the island of Great Britain? What of the British Channel? and? 3. Population of Great Britain? Ireland? Colonies of Great in? 4. What of the queen? Noblemen? 5. What of poverty in and? What can you say of England? Where is London? Directof the following places from London:—Manchester? Birmingham? field? Edinburgh? Dublin? Wales?

CHAP. CXLV.—EUROPE continued.

ABOUT LONDON AND OTHER CITIES OF ENGLAND, WALES, SCOTLAND, AND IRELAND.

- 1. London is the largest and finest city in Europe, and with its outskirts contains above two millions and a half of inhabitants. The Thames, a considerable river, runs through it. Across this there are a number of handsome stone and iron bridges. London has no wall around it, like Paris, Berlin, and most large cities of the continent; but it is encircled by a beautiful country, dotted with villages, villas, and country-seats.
 - 2. London seems like a world of itself; you might walk about for a year, and go into some new street every day. In some parts of the city there are such streams of people that it always seems there like a fair. The shops are filled with beautiful things, and the streets are crowded with coaches and carriages of all sorts.
 - 3. The palace of St. James is a dark old building, but the queen resides in Buckingham Palace. Westminster Abbey is an old Gothic church, which strikes every beholder with admiration and wonder. St. Paul's Cathedral is more modern, and is very handsome.
- 4. I have not time to tell you of the other wonderful things in London, nor can I tell you of the other beautiful towns and cities in England. You must read shoul then in

my Tales about England, or come and see me some long winter's night.

- 5. I will then tell you of Manchester, where they make beautiful ginghams, calicoes, and other goods; of Birmingham, where they make guns, pistols, swords, locks, and lamps; of Sheffield, where they make knives, forks, and scissors; and of other places, where they make a great variety of articles.
- 6. Wales is a country of mountains, lying on the west of England. Most of the people speak the Welsh language, which you could not understand. They are very industrious, and live in a comfortable manner. Their mountains are celebrated for producing coal, tin, iron, copper, and slate.
- 7. Scotland is also a land of mountains. In the southern part the people speak the Scotch language, which perhaps you could partly understand. But, in the highlands of the north, the inhabitants speak Gaelic, which would be as strange to you as the language of an Arab.
- 8. The capital of Scotland is Edinburgh, a fine smoky old city, with an immense high castle in the midst of it. Besides this, there are many fine towns in Scotland. Glasgow is a large place, and celebrated for its manufactures.
- 9. Ireland is a bright, green island, containing seven millions of people. It is the native land of those cheerful, witty Irishmen who emigrate to America in such great members. If their country was more prosperous, they would not emigrate; but the truth is, that Ireland felt the mixed

ries of bad government for many years, and a large potthe people had therefore fallen into a state of distripoverty. Great improvement in her situation is, how daily taking place.

- 10. The Irish, however, are a very interesting people home or abroad, they seem to be full of wit and hospit It is by their lively disposition, and cheerful turn of that they seem to soften the evils which too often p them.
- 11. Dublin is the capital of Ireland, and some streets are magnificent; but many portions of it are with inhabitants who present the most woful asperaggedness and misery. Beggary is common in all parthe kingdom.

QUESTIONS.—1. Population of London? The Thames? Coaround London? 2. Describe the appearance of London. 3. 1 of St. James. Westminster Abbey. St. Paul's. 5. What of chester? Birmingham? Sheffield? 6. Where is Wales? We the people? Mountains? 7. What of Scotland? Language? 8. of Edinburgh? Glasgow? 9. What of Ireland? Govern: 10. What of the Irish people? 11. What of Dublin?

CHAP. CXLVI.—EUROPE continued.

ORIGIN OF THE BRITISH NATION. THE DRUIDS.

1. It is supposed that Great Britain and Ireland were ginally settled by a colony from Gaul. These were a Gaels, Celts, or rather Kelts. Their descendants and

- at this day, in Ireland and Wales, and the highlands of Scotland. Some of these still speak the ancient Gaelic, or Keltic, language.
- 2. Very little is known about these islands till the time of Julius Cæsar. He invaded England in the year 55 before the Christian era. The country was then called Britannia, or Britain. It was inhabited by barbarians, some of whom wore the skins of wild beasts, while others were entirely naked. They were painted like the American Indians. Their weapons were clubs, spears, and swords, with which they fiercely attacked the Roman invaders.
- 3. The ancient Britons, like the other northern nations of Europe, were idolaters. Their priests were called Druids. Their places of worship were in the open air, and consisted of huge stone pillars, standing in a circle. A large stone in the middle was used as an altar, and human victims were sacrificed upon it. The ruins of one of these temples still remain at Stonehenge, and are very wonderful.
- 4. The Druids considered the oak a sacred tree. They set a great value on the mistletoe, a sort of plant which sometimes grows on the oak. Wherever they found the mistletoe, they held a banquet beneath the spreading branches of the oak on which it grew.
- 5. The Druids incited the Britons to oppose the Roman power. They fought fiercely, and the country was not entirely subdued till sixty years after the Christian era. Suctonius, a Roman general, then cut down the sacred groves

UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

destroyed the temples, and threw the Druids into s which they had themselves kindled to reast the s.

he Scots, who inhabited the northern part of the were a fierce people, and were still unconquered event them from making incursions into Britain, the ins built a wall from the river Tyne to the Frith of ay.

The Britons remained quietly under the government ome for nearly five centuries after the Christian er, oting, during this period, many of the Roman customs y never attempted to free themselves. But, at last, the man empire became so weak that the Emperor Valentinian indrew his troops from Britain.

- 3. The inhabitants had grown so unwarlike, that who Roman soldiers were gone, they found themselves unable resist the Scots. They therefore asked the assistance do tribes of people from Germany, called Saxons and igles.
-). These people drove back the Scots into their own part the island. Then, instead of returning to Germany, they k possession of Britain by the right of the strongest. It is divided by them into seven small kingdoms, called the kon Heptarchy.

DESTIONS.—1. What of the Gaels or Kelts? 2. When did Court de England? What was Great Britain then called? What of the '-o a. Religion of the ancient Britain? Who were the Desid?

What the D duel! Roma pire of S. Wh

1.]
ioms (
ide go
in Eng
2. F
in Frai
in rep
Luring
ide Dai
verran
3. Al
in took
in took
in Dan
4. Thi

What of their places of worship? 4. How was the oak considered by the Druids? The mistletoe? 5. When was the country entirely subdued? What of Suctonius? 6. What of the Scots? What did the Romans do? 7. How long did Rome govern Britain? What of the empire of Valentinian? 8. Whose aid did the Britons ask against the Scots? 9. What did these two tribes do? How was Britain then divided?

CHAP. CXLVII.—EUROPE continued.

SAXON AND DANISH KINGS OF ENGLAND.

- 1. In the year 827 of the Christian era, all the seven kingdoms of the Saxon Heptarchy were united into one, under the government of Egbert. He was, therefore, the first king of England.
- 2. Egbert was a native of England, but had been educated in France, at the court of Charlemagne. He was therefore more polished and enlightened than most of the Saxon kings. During the reign of Egbert, and for many years afterwards, he Danes made incursions into England. They sometimes verran the whole country.
 - 3. Alfred, who ascended the throne in 872, fought fifty-battles with them by sea and land. On one occasion, he at into the camp of the Danes in the disguise of a harper. took notice of every thing, and planned an attack upon amp. Returning to his own men, he led them against Danes, whom he completely routed.

This king was called Alfred the Great; and he had a right to the epithet of Great than most other kings.

who have borne it. He made wise laws, and instituted the custom of trial by jury. He likewise founded the university of Oxford. Nearly a hundred years after his death, the Danes again broke into England. There was now no Alfred to oppose them. They were accordingly victorious, and three Danish kings governed the country in succession.

- 5. Canute the Great was one of them. He appears to have been an old pirate, or, as they were called in those days, a seaking. One day, when he and his courtiers were walking on the shore, they called him king of the sea, and told him that he had but to command and the waves would obey him.
- 6. Canute, in order to shame their flattery, desired a chair of state to be brought and placed on the hard smooth sand. Then, seating himself in the chair, he stretched out his sceptre over the waves with a very commanding aspect.
- 7. "Roll back thy waves, thou sea!" cried Canute. "I am thy king and master! How darest thou foam and thurder in my presence?" But the sea, nowise abashed, came roaring and whitening onward, and threw a sheet of spray over Canute and all the courtiers. The giant waves rolled upward on the beach, far beyond the monarch's chair. They would soon have swallowed him up, together with his courtiers, if they had not all scampered to the dry land.
- 8. In the year 1041, the Danes were driven out of England, and another Saxon king, called Edward the Confessor, was placed upon the throne. At his death, in 1066, Harold, who was also a Saxon, became king.

- 9. But he was the last of the Saxon kings. No sooner had he mounted the throne, than William, Duke of Normandy in France, invaded England, at the head of sixty thousand men, and landed at Pevensey Bay, in 1066.
- 10. Harold led an army of Saxons against the Norman invaders, and fought with them at Hastings. In the midst of the battle an arrow was shot through his steel helmet, and penetrated his brain. The Duke of Normandy gained the victory, and became King of England.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was the first king of England? What kingdoms did he govern? 2. What of Egbert? What of the Danes? 3. When did Alfred ascend the throne? What did he do? 4. Why was he called Alfred the Great? What of the Danes after his death? 5, 6, 7. Tell a story of Canute. 8. When were the Danes driven out of England? Who was then placed upon the throne? When did Harold become king? 9. Who now invaded England? 10. Where was the battle fought between Harold and William? Who became king of England?

CHAP. CXLVIII.—EUROPE continued.

NORMAN KINGS OF ENGLAND.

- 1. WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR (as the Duke of Normandy was now called) reigned about twenty years. He was succeeded by his second son, William Rufus, or the Red, who was so named from the colour of his hair.
- 2. The red king was very fond of hunting. One day, while he was chasing a deer in the forest, a gentleman of

the name of Walter Tyrrel let fly an arrow. It glanced against a tree and hit the king on the breast, so that he fell from his horse and died.

- 3. This took place in the year 1100, and William Rufus was succeeded by his brother Henry. This king was called Beauclerk, or Excellent Scholar, because he was able to write his name. Kings were not expected to have much learning in those days. On the death of King Henry Beauclerk, in 1135, the throne was usurped by Stephen of Blois But he died in 1154, and was succeeded by Henry the Second, who was son to the former Henry.
- 4. This monarch had a violent quarrel with Thomas à Becket, archbishop of Canterbury. Hoping to please the king, four knights went to Canterbury, and murdered Becket at the foot of the altar. But this bloody deed was a cause of great trouble to King Henry; for the Pope threatened to excommunicate him.
- 5. In order to pacify his Holiness, the king set out on a pilgrimage to the tomb of Becket. When he entered the abbey where the tomb was situated, the whole community of monks assaulted him with rods. The king, being afraid to resist them, was soundly whipped; and, as a reward for his patience, he received the Pope's pardon.
- 6. During the reign of this king Ireland was conquered, and annexed to the realms of England. It had previously been divided into several separate kingdoms.
- 7. Richard the Lion-hearted was crowned King of Farland

- in 1189. He was a valiant man, and possessed prodigious strength; and he delighted in nothing so much as battle and slaughter. After gaining great renown in Palestine, he was, on his way back, taken and imprisoned for two years by the Duke of Austria.
- 8. The English obtained Richard's release by paying a heavy ransom; but soon afterwards, while besieging a castle in Normandy, he was killed by an arrow from a crossbow. The next king was Richard's brother John, surnamed Lackland, or Loseland.
- 9. This epithet was bestowed on John because he lost the territories which the English kings had hitherto possessed in France. John was one of the worst kings that ever England had. Among other crimes he murdered his nephew, Arthur of Bretagne, who was rightful heir to the crown.
- 10. The barons of England were so disgusted with the conduct of John, that they assembled at Runnymede, and compelled him to sign a written deed called Magna Charta. This famous charter was dated the 19th of June, 1215. It is considered the foundation of English liberty. It deprived John and all his successors of the despotic power which former kings had exercised.
- 11. King John died in 1216, and left the crown to his son who was then only nine years old. He was called Henry the Third. His reign continued fifty-five years; but, though be was a well-meaning man, he had not sufficient window and firmness for a ruler.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who succeeded William the Conqueror? 2. Wh was the fate of William Rufus? 3. When did Henry Beauclerk beg his reign? When did Stephen succeed to the throne? When did I die? 4. Who murdered Thomas à Becket? 5. What happened Henry II.? 6. What of Ireland? 7. When was Richard made king England? What of him? 8. How was he killed? 9. Why was Jot called Lackland? What of him? His crimes? 10. Who signed Magn Charta? How is it considered? 11. When did King John die? Whof Henry III.?

CHAP. CXLIX.—EUROPE, continued,

ENGLISH WARS AND REBELLIONS.

- 1. The next king, Edward the First, was crowned in 127: The people gave him the nickname of Longshanks, because his legs were of unusual length. He was a great warric and fought bravely in Palestine and in the civil wars England.
- 2. Edward conquered Wales, which had hitherto bee separate kingdom. He attempted to conquer Scotland I wise, but did not entirely succeed. The illustrious William Wallace resisted 1 im, and beat the English t in many battles. But, at last, Wallace was taken pri and carried in chains to London, and there executed.
- 3. Robert Bruce laid claim to the crown of Scotlan renewed the war against Edward. But old Longshar determined not to let go his hold of poor Scotlan mustered an immense army, and was marching nowhen a sudden sickness put an end to his life.

- 4. His son, Edward the Second, ascended the throne in 1307. He led an army of a hundred thousand men into Scotland. But he was not such a warrior as his father. Robert Bruce encountered him at Bannockburn with only thirty thousand men, and gained a glorious victory. By this Scotland was set free. Edward the Second reigned about twenty years. He was a foolish and miserable king. His own wife made war against him, and took him prisoner. By her instigation, he was cruelly murdered in prison.
- 5. His son, Edward the Third, began to reign in 1327, at the age of eighteen. He had not long been on the throne, before he showed himself very unlike his father. He beat the Scots at Halidown Hill, and afterwards invaded France. I have spoken of the French wars in the history of France.
- 6. The king's son, surnamed the Black Prince, was even more valiant than his father. He was also as kind and generous as he was brave. He conquered King John of France, and took him prisoner; but he did not exult over him. When they entered London together, the Black Prince rode bareheaded by the side of the captive monarch, as if he were merely an attendant instead of a conqueror.
- 7. This brave prince died in 1376, and his father lived only one year longer. The next king was Richard the Second, a boy of eleven years old. When he grew up, Richard neglected the government, and cared for nothing but his own pleasures.

Ì

- 8. During his reign, a rebellion was headed by a black. smith named Wat Tyler. The rebels had also other leaders, nicknamed Jack Straw and Hob Carter. They marched to London with a hundred thousand followers, and did a great
 - 9. The king, attended by a few of his nobles, rode out to hold a conference with Wat Tyler. The blacksmith was very rude, and treated King Richard as if he were no better deal of mischief. than a common man, or perhaps not quite so good. He even
 - 10. William Walworth, the lord mayor of London, was threatened the king with a drawn sword. standing near the king. He was so offended at Wat Tyler's insolence, that he uplifted a mace or club, and smote Wat to

the ground. A knight then killed him with a sword. 11. When the rebels saw that the valiant blacksmith we

beaten down and slain, they gave an angry shout, and we rushing forward to attack the king's party. But Ki Richard rode boldly to meet them, and waved his h

12. "Be not troubled for the death of your leader, "I, your king, will be a better leader than with a majestic air. Tyler." The king's words and look made such an in sion, that the rebels immediately submitted, and Tyler's murder was unavenged.

What of him? S. What of Wash Goodand? Fore of William Wallacon obert Bruce? Death of Edward Longshanks? 4. What of Edward.? Battle of Bannockburn? How was Scotland set free? What ippened to Edward II.? 5. What of Edward III.? When did he gin to reign? 6. What of the Black Prince? How did he treat in of France? 7. What of Richard II.? 8, 9. What of Wat rier's rebellion? 10. What did William Walworth do? 11. What the rebels when Wat Tyler was killed? What did Richard do?

CHAP. CL.—EUROPE continued.

THE LANCASTRIAN KINGS OF ENGLAND.

- 1. Notwithstanding his promise to the rebels, King ichard was not a good ruler. His subjects grew more and ore discontented, and his cousin, the Duke of Lancaster, rmed the preject of making himself king. Richard was throned and imprisoned at Pontefract castle, where he was ther killed or starved to death. The Duke of Lancaster gan to reign in the year 1400, and was called Henry the parth.
- 2. There were two rebellions against this king. One was aded by the Earl of Northumberland, and the other by the rchbishop of York; for, in those times, bishops often put armour and turned soldiers. Henry conquered the rebels, at reigned several years in peace.
- 3. As long as his father lived, the king's eldest son was a lid and dissipated young man; but no sooner was the old my dead than his character underwent a complete change is now threw off his dissipation, and devoted himself care.

illy to the business of governing his kingdom. He wa crowned as Henry the Fifth, in 1413. Two years after wards he invaded France.

- 4. I have already told, in the history of France, how Henry vanquished the French in the famous battle of Agin court, and how he afterwards became master of the whole kingdom of France. His death took place in 1422, in the midst of his triumphs, at the age of thirty-four.
- 5. The new king of England, Henry the Sixth, was baby only nine months old. At that tender age, while he was still in his nurse's arms, the heavy crowns of England and France were put upon his head. The ceremony of this poor child's coronation was performed in the city of Paris He soon lost the crown of France; but the crown of England continued a torment to him as long as he lived, and caused his death at last.
- 6. When he grew up, he turned out to be a mild, qui simple sort of man, with barely sense enough to get al respectably as a private person. As a king, he was an ol of contempt. His wife had far more manhood than him and she governed him like a child.
- 7. During this king's reign began the war of the J The reader will recollect that the Duke of Lancaste unlawfully taken the crown from Richard the Second he and his son reigned without much opposition, they were warlike men, and could have defended the with their swords.

2 D

- 8. Henry the Sixth, on the contrary, was soft, meek, and peaceable, without spirit enough to fight for the crown which his father left him. The heirs of Richard the Second therefore thought this a proper time to get back their lawful inheritance. The Duke of York was the nearest heir.
- 9. He began a war in 1455. If there had been nobody but Henry the Sixth to resist him, he might have got the crown at once. But Henry's wife, (whose name was Margaret,) and many of the nobility, took up arms for the king. Other noblemen lent assistance to the Duke of York.
- 10. All the Yorkists, or partisans of the Duke of York, wore white roses either in their hats or at their breasts. The Lancastrians, or those of the king's party, wore a redrose in the same manner. Whenever two persons happened to meet, one wearing a red rose and the other a white, they drew their swords and fought.
- 11. Thus the people of England were divided into two great parties, who were ready to cut each other's throats, merely for the difference between a red and white rose.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of England under Richard? Who dethroned him? His fate? Who was Henry IV.? When did he begin to reign?
2. What rebellions were there against this king? 3. What of Henry V.? When did he invade France? 4. Who fought the battle of Agineourt? When did Henry V. die? 5. Describe the coronation of Henry VI.
6. What of him? His queen? 7. What of the Duke of Lancaster? His son, Henry V.? 8. What did the heirs of Richard II. do? 9. When did the Duke of York begin the war? Who took up arms for Henry?
10. What did the followers of the Duke of York wear? Those of the king? What often happened?

CHAP. CLI.—EUROPE continued.

WARS OF THE ROSES.

- 1. The Wars of the Roses lasted thirty years. Sometine white rose was uppermost and sometimes the red. I most celebrated general in these wars was the Earl of W wick. It was chiefly by his means that the soldiers of white rose gained a decisive victory at Towton, in whithirty-six thousand of the red rose men were killed. I young Duke of York was then proclaimed king, under a name of Edward the Fourth.
- 2. This was in 1461. But, not long afterwards, the K of Warwick quarrelled with King Edward, and quitted party of Yorkists. He took King Henry the Sixth ov prison, and placed him on the throne again, and Edward compelled to flee over to France.
- 8. As the Earl of Warwick showed himself so power pulling down kings and setting them up again, he gain name of the king-maker. But he was finally killed in while fighting bravely for the Lancastrians; and the white rose flourished again.
- 4. Henry the Sixth and his son were murdered is and Edward the Fourth became the undisputed England. He had fought bravely for the crown; I that he had got firm possession of it, he became voluntuous.

- 5. He was a cruel tyrant too. Having resolved to put one of his brothers to death, he gave him the choice of dying in whatever manner he pleased. His brother, who was a great lover of good liquor, chose to be drowned in a hogshead of wine.
- 6. Edward the Fourth died in 1483. He left two young children, the eldest of whom now became King Edward the Fifth. But these poor children had a wicked uncle, Richard Duke of Gloucester, for a guardian. Most historians say that he was a horrible figure to look at, having a humpback, a withered arm, and a very ugly face; while more modern writers insist that he was a bold, clever man, determined to carry out his own designs, and unscrupulous as to the means he used to that end. This personage was determined to make himself king.
- 7. He took care that the little King Edward and his brother should lodge in the Tower of London. One night, while the two children were sound asleep in each other's arms, some villains came and smothered them with the bolsters of the bed. They were buried at the foot of a staircase. So Richard of Gloucester became king of England. He is said to have committed many crimes for the sake of getting the crown, but he did not keep it long. But it is now generally understood that more evil deeds were laid to the charge of Richard than he was really guilty of.
- 8. Henry Tudor, the young Earl of Richmond, was now the only remaining heir of King Henry the Sixth. The French supplied him with the means of making war against

Richard Crookback. He landed in England, and gained a victory at Bosworth.

- 9. When the soldiers of Richmond examined the dead bodies that lay in heaps on the battle-field, they found that King Richard was among them, with the golden crown upon his head. They put it on the head of Richmond, and hailed him King Henry the Seventh.
- 10. The new king married a daughter of Edward the Fourth; and, at their wedding they each wore a red rose intertwined with a white one, for the Wars of the Roses were now over.

QUESTIONS.—1. How long did the Wars of the Roses last? What of the Earl of Warwick? 2. When was Edward IV. made king? What did Warwick do? 3. What was he called? How was he killed? When did the party of the White Rose flourish again? 4. What of Edward IV.? 5. How did he treat his brother? 6. When did he die? What children did he leave? Describe Richard Crookback. 7. What cruelty did he commit? Did he become king? 8. Who gained the battle of Bosworth? 9. Where was Richard found? 10. Whom did Heary VII. marry? Why were the Wars of the Roses now at an end?

CHAP. CLIL-EUROPE continued.

REIGNS OF THE TUDOR PRINCES.

1. Henry the Seventh (the former Earl of Richmond) began his reign in 1485. He was a crafty king, and cared much more for his own power and wealth then for the happiness

of his subjects. But, for his own sake, he desired to reign peaceably, without foreign wars or civil commotions.

- 2. During his reign, two impostors appeared in England, each of whom pretended that he had a better right to the crown than Henry the Seventh had. One was Lambert Simnel, the son of a baker; but he called himself a nephew of Edward the Fourth. The other was Perkin Warbeck, the son of a Flemish butcher. He pretended to be one of the little princes whom King Richard had smothered in the Tower.
- 3. Many knights and noblemen of England were led into rebellion by each of these impostors. But finally they were both taken prisoners. Perkin Warbeck was hanged, and Lambert Simnel was set to washing dishes in the king's kitchen.
- 4. Henry the Seventh died in 1509. He had been a great lover of money, and put all that he could lay his hands on into his own purse. A sum, equal to ten millions of bounds sterling, was found in his palace after his death.
 - 5. His son, Henry the Eighth, began to reign at the age feighteen. He was a haughty, stern, and tyrannical king. Thenever he got angry, and that was not seldom, the heads some of his subjects were sure to be cut off. This king d six wives! One died a natural death; he was divorced m two; cut off the heads of two others; and one outlived.

The reign of Henry the Eighth was chiefly remarkable

on account of the Reformation in England. By meant the substitution of the Protestant religion the Roman Catholic. Until this period, the P had claimed authority over England.

- 7. But Henry the Eighth took all the power If any of his subjects dared to have a religious king's, they were either beheaded or burnt. To so proud of his religious character, that, after with the Pope, he still called himself Defender though the title had been given him for defauthority.
- 8. The old tyrant died in 1547, at the age One of his last acts was to cause the Earl of i beheaded, although he was guilty of no crime that innocent blood upon his soul, King Henry was summoned to the judgment-seat.
- 9. His son, Edward the Sixth, was but nine old when he ascended the throne. He was promising boy, but lived only to the age of a sister Mary succeeded him, in 1553.
- 10. She bears the dreadful title of Bloody (Being a Roman Catholic, she caused persons alive who denied the authority of the Pope. I and godly ministers thus perished at the stake.
- 11. But, even in the midst of the ilames happier than the tyrannical Queen. It see fire were consuming her miserable heart. Si

every body hated her, and, after a reign of only five years she died of mere trouble and anguish.

QUESTIONS.—1. When did Henry VII. begin to reign? What of him? 2. What of two impostors? Their names? Who did they pretend to be? 3. What became of them? 4. What of the riches of Henry VII.? 5. When did Henry VIII. begin to reign? What of him? What of his wives? 6. What great event occurred in his reign? What is meant by the Reformation? Who had claimed authority over England? 7. Why was the king called Defender of the Faith? 8. When did Henry VIII. die? What was the last act of his reign? 9. What of Edward VI.? When did Mary begin to reign? 10. Why is she called Bloody Mary? 11. How long did she reign?

CHAP. CLIII.—EUROPE continued. THE BEIGN OF ELIZABETH.

- 1. The famous Elizabeth, sister to Mary, became queen in 1558. She was a Protestant, and therefore there were fewer martyrdoms in England.
- 2. Elizabeth was truly a great queen, and England was never more respected than while this mighty woman held the sceptre in her hand. But she possessed hardly any of the kind of virtues that a woman ought to have. Yet she prided herself greatly on her beauty.
- 3. Many princes and great men desired to marry Elizabeth; but she chose to remain sole mistress of her person and her kingdom. And, as she herself refused to take a husband, it made her very angry whenever any of the ladies of her court got married.

beautiful queen of Scots, fled into Englime for the caused her to be imprisoned eighteen years, those long and weary years, the poor queen was condemned to die.

- 6. Elizabeth was resolved upon her death, b loath to incur the odium of such a crime. She endeavoured to persuade the jailer to murder her, steadfastly refused, Elizabeth signed the death-w the unfortunate Mary was beheaded.
- 7. When Queen Elizabeth grew old, she could look at her gray hairs, and withered and wrinkle a glass. Her maids of honour, therefore, had all of dressing her. Part of their business was to pai The queen of course expected them to make her red and rosy.
 - 8. But, instead of putting the red paint on

tending to be in love with her, even when she was old enough to be their grandmother. Among others, the Earl of Essex paid his addresses to her, and became her chief favourite. But at last he offended her, and was sentenced to lose his head.

- 10. When the Earl of Essex was dead and gone, Queen Elizabeth bitterly repented of her cruelty. She was now very old, and she knew that nobody loved her, and there were mone that she could love. She pined away, and never held up her head again; and in her seventieth year she died.
- 11. The bishops, and the wise and learned men of her court, came to look at her dead body. They were sad, for they doubted whether England would ever be so prosperous again as while it was under the government of this mighty queen. And in truth, of all the monarchs who have held the sceptre since that day, there has not been one who could sway it like the grayhaired woman whose spirit had now passed into eternity.
- QUESTIONS.—1. When did Elizabeth ascend the throne? What was her religion? 2. What of her? 3. Why did she not marry? What made her angry? 4 What of Philip of Spain? What of the Invincible Armada? 5. What was one of the worst actions of Queen Elizabeth? 6. What was the fate of Mary Queen of Scots? 7, 8. What trick did the maids of honour put upon Queen Elizabeth? 9. What of the Earl of Essex? 10. How did Elizabeth feel after his death? 11. How did the great men of the court feel when they saw Elizabeth's dead body? What may be said of her government?

CHAP. CLIV.—EUROPE continued. ACCESSION OF THE HOUSE OF STUART.

- 1. ELIZABETH was succeeded by James Stur Scotland. He was the sixth James that had rul kingdom, but was James the First of England. reign in 1603. James inherited the English or he was the grandson of a daughter of Henry i His mother was Mary Queen of Scots, whom E beheaded.
- 2. The whole island of Great Britain was no same government. This event put an end to the had raged between England and Scotland durir turies. But it was a long time before the Scotch could live together like brethren.
- 3. As for King James, he was much fitter master than for a king. He had a good deal c wrote several books. He delighted to talk Greek, and Latin; and his courtiers were c understand him.
- 4. James thought himself as wise as 8 must be owned that he possessed a sort c greatly resembled wisdom. This was seer of the Gunpowder Plot. The Roman C plan to blow up the parliament house, and all the members of

assembled there. If it had succeeded, the whole government of England would have been destroyed.

- 5. But King James suspected the plot. He set people on the watch, and they caught a man of the name of Guy Fawkes in a cellar, where thirty-six barrels of gunpowder were concealed. The ceremonies of the 5th November have reference to this discovery. Fawkes told the king the names of eighty of his accomplices. He and they were all put to death.
- 6. James had one good quality which kings have not very often possessed. He hated war. His reign was therefore peaceable. He died in 1625, and was succeeded by his son, Charles I.
- 7. It was easy to foresee that this king would have a more troublesome reign than his father. There were now many Puritans in England. These people were opposed to the Church of England, to the bishops, and to all the ceremonies which had not been cast off when the Roman Catholic faith was abolished.
- 8. They likewise thought that the kings of England had too much power. They were determined that, thenceforward, the king should not reign merely for his own pleasure and glory, but for the good of the people. Charles, on the other hand, seemed to think that the common people were created only that kings might have subjects to rule over.
- 9. In the early part of his reign, the king persecuted the Puritans. He would not allow the Puritan ministers to preach, nor the people to attend their meetings. Their suf-

ferings were great, although the king dared not burn them as Queen Mary would have done.

10. Many of them crossed the ocean, and sought religious freedom in New England. John Hampden, John Pym and Oliver Cromwell, were once on the point of going to America. But the king prevented them, and these three persons afterwards became his most powerful enemies.

QUESTIONS.—1. When did James I. begin to reign? Who was he 2. What put an end to the wars between England and Scotland 3. What of King James? 4. What plot had the Roman Catholics laid 5. How did James discover the plot? What of Guy Fawkes? 6. What good quality did James possess? When did he die? Who succeede him? 7. What of the Puritans? 8. What did they think? What of Charles? 9. How did he treat the Puritans? 10. What did many them do? What of the three principal enemies of Charles?

CHAP. CLV.—EUROPE continued.

WARS OF THE KING AND PARLIAMENT.

- 1. Till the reign of Charles the First, the English parment had hardly ever dared to oppose the wishes of the I But now there were continual disputes between the king parliament. And if Charles dissolved one parliament next was sure to be still more obstinate.
- 2. Matters went on in this way, till at length the querew too violent to be settled by mere words. Both then betook themselves to their weapons. The kin

supported by a great majority of the lords and gentlemen of England and Scotland, and by all the bishops and clergy of the English church. All the gay and wild young men in the kingdom likewise drew their swords for the crown. The whole of King Charles's party were called Cavaliers.

- 3. Some of the noblemen and gentry took the side of the parliament; but its adherents were chiefly mechanics, tradesmen, and common people. Because their hair was cropped close to their skulls, their enemies gave them the nickname of Roundheads. The Cavaliers dressed magnificently, and wore long hair hanging in love-locks down their temples. They drank wine, and sang songs, and rode merrily to the battle-field.
- 4. The Roundheads were steeple-crowned hats and sadcoloured garments. They sang nothing but psalms, and
 spent much of their leisure time in praying and hearing
 sermons. They were a stern and resolute set of men; and
 when they had once made up their minds to tear down the
 throne, it must be done, though the realm of England should
 be rent asunder in the struggle.
- 5. The civil war between the Cavaliers and Roundheads began in 1642. Many battles were fought, and rivers of English blood were shed on both sides.
- 6. It was not long before Oliver Cromwell began to be a famous leader on the side of the parliament. He professed to fight only for religion and the good of the people. But he

was an ambitious man, and managed to place hi king's empty seat.

- 7. Cromwell gained one battle after another from step to step till there was no man so prenowned as he. Finally, in 1645, he defeate army at the bloody battle of Naseby. King (wards surrendered himself to the Scots, and the him to the parliament.
- 8. The parliament brought the king to trial The court that tried him consisted of a hundre three persons. They declared him guilty, and so to lose his head. When the people of Englar sentence they trembled,
- 9. For it was a great and terrible thing that the sovereign should die the death of a traitor. M is true, had died by the hands of their enemies always been in darkness and secresy. But E was tried and condemned in the face of all the v
- 10. On the thirtieth of January, 1649, they king from his palace to the scaffold. It was

away my corruptible crown," said he, "but I go to receive an incorruptible one."

- 12. When King Charles had knelt down and prayed, he cast a pitying glance upon the people round the scaffold; for he feared that direful judgments would come upon the land, which was now to be stained with its monarch's blood.
- 13. But, as he saw that his enemies were resolved to slay him, he calmly laid his head upon the block. The executioner raised his axe, and smote off the king's head at a single blow. Then, lifting it in his hand, he cried aloud— This is the head of a traitor!" But the people shuddered; for they doubted whether it was the head of a traitor, and they knew that it was the head of a king.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the parliaments during the reign of Charles I.? 2. How was the king supported? What were the king's party called? 3. Who were on the side of the parliament? Describe the Cavaliers. 4. What of the Roundheads? 5. What war began in 1642? 6. What of Oliver Cromwell? 7. When was the battle of Naseby fought? 1. What was done to King Charles? How did the people when he was sentenced to death? 10, 11, 12, 13. Describe the Cavaliers.

CHAP. CLVI.—EUROPE continued. THE PROTECTORATE AND THE RESTORATION.

- 1. And now the throne of England was empty. indeed had left a son; but, if he had shown himself he would soon have died the same death as his fa young prince was defeated in battle, and compe At one time his enemies pressed him so has climbed up among the thick branches of an oal saved his life.
- 2. The government, at this period, was called There was no king, no lords, no bishops; noth house of commons, or the lower house of parlia the real power of the kingdom was possessed Cromwell, because he was at the head of the arm
- 3. No sooner did the parliament dare to oppos wishes than he led three hundred soldiers into the they were sitting. He told the parliament me were a pack of traitors, and bade them get out. When they were gone, he summoned another the principal man in it was called Praise-(This name sounded so well, that it was be whole parliament.
- 4. But Praise-God Barebone's parliament together a great while. At the end of five aght Cromwell to send them about the

take the government into his own hands. This was just what Cromwell wanted.

- 5. In 1654 he was proclaimed Lord Protector of the Commonwealth of England. He held this high office four years. He was a sagacious and powerful ruler, and made himself feared and respected, both in England and foreign countries.
- 6. But he had no peace nor quiet as long as he lived. He constantly wore iron armour under his clothes, dreading that some of his enemies would attempt to stab him. He never enjoyed any quiet sleep; for the thought always haunted him that conspirators might be hidden in the closet or under the bed.
- 7. Cromwell was released from this miserable way of life by a slow fever, of which he died in 1658, at the age of fifty-nine. His son Richard succeeded him in the office of lord protector; but he had not ability enough to keep the kingdom in subjection.
- 8. Richard Cromwell soon resigned his office, and the government then became unsettled. The people began to think that England would never be prosperous again unless the hereditary sovereigns were re-established on the throne.
- 9. The man who had most influence in the army, after Oliver Cromwell's death, was General George Monk. He invited the eldest son of Charles the First to return to England, promising that the soldiers would assist in making him king.

- 10. The banished prince had been living in different parts of Europe, and was reduced to great poverty. He lost no time in coming to England, and entered London in triumph. At sight of their new king, it seemed as if the people were mad with joy. He was crowned in 1660 by the title of Charles the Second.
- 11. Many of the persons who had assisted in dethroning and beheading the king's father were hanged. The body of Oliver Cromwell was taken out of the grave and hung upon the gallows, and afterwards buried beneath it. Yet it would have been well for England if that stern but valiant ruler could have come to life again.

QUESTIONS.—What of King Charles's son? 2. What was the government called at this time? Who had all the power? 3. Describe the dispersing of the parliament by Cromwell. What parliament was thes called? 4. What of it? 5. When was Cromwell proclaimed Lord Pretector? How long did he hold the office? What was his character? 6. What fears deprived him of peace? 7. When did he die? Who succeeded him? 8. What of Richard Cromwell? 9. What did General Monk do? 10. What of the banished prince? When was Charles IL crowned? 11. What of the body of Cromwell?

CHAP. CLVII.—EUROPE continued.

THE REVOLUTION OF 1688, AND OTHER MATTERS.

. 1. CHARLES the Second had lived a careless and vicious life during his benishment, and his babits did not improve, see

hat he was on the throne. He spent whole days and nig a drinking wine, and in all sorts of profligate pleasures.

- 2. In the year 1665 there was a great plague in Londof which nearly one hundred thousand persons died. The ext year a terrible fire broke out, which consumed a great of the city. But neither of these calamities made any appreciation on the king.
- 3. He suffered the nation to be ruled by unprincipled and ricked men. It was safer to be wicked in those days than o be virtuous and upright. Virtue and religion were looked pon as treason in the reign of Charles the Second. This cod-for-nothing monarch died, in the midst of his drunkeness and debauchery, in the year 1685. His brother succeeded him, and was called James the Second.
 - 4. James was a Roman Catholic; and, from the moment at he ascended the throne, he thought of nothing but how bring Great Britain again under the power of the Pope of ne. This project rendered him hateful to his subjects.

He had not been on the throne more than three years, some of the greatest men in England determined to d of him. They invited William, Prince of Orange, to over from Holland and be their king.

This prince had no title to the crown, except that he rried the daughter of James II. But no sooner had ad in England, than all the courtiers left King James, ried to pay obeisance to the Prince of Orange. Ho wife were crowned in 1689, as King William and

Queen Mary. James had made his escape into France. Some of his adherents endeavoured to set him on the throne again, but without success.

- 7. This change of government of which I have been speaking, is generally called the Glorious Revolution of 1688. Some regulations were now adopted in order to restrain the royal power.
- 8. King William was very fond of hunting, and this amusement hastened his death. He was thrown from his horse in the year 1702, and died in about a month. His queen had died some years before him.
- 9. Anne, another daughter of the banished James, now ascended the throne. The reign of this queen was a glorious one for England. The renowned Duke of Murlborough gained many splendid victories over the French. But the chief glory of the age proceeded from the great writers who lived in her time.
- 10. Queen Anne reigned twelve years, and died in 1714, at the age of forty-nine. She was the last sovereign of England who belonged to the family of the Stuarts, which, so you remember, began to reign in England in 1603.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of Charles II. during his banishment? 2. What of the plague? What of a great fire? 3. What was the state of morals and religion during this reign? When did he die? Who succeeded him? 4. What did James wish to do? 5. What did some of the great men do? Whom did they invite from Holland? 6. What title had William to the throne? When was he crowned? What di King James? 7. What of the Revolution of 1688? 8. When did William de? S. When

of Anne? Her reign? What of the Duke of Marlborough? What was the chief glory of Anne's reign? 10. When did Anne die? When did the Stuarts begin to reign?

CHAP. CLVIII.—EUROPE continued.

THE HANOVERIAN KINGS OF GREAT BRITAIN.

- 1. The old banished king, James, had died in France in the year 1701. He left a son, whom Louis the Fourteenth caused to be proclaimed king of England. But the English people called him the Pretender. They were determined not to have a Roman Catholic king. The nearest Protestant heir to the throne was the elector of Hanover, a German prince, whose mother was a grand-daughter of James the First. He was now about fifty-five years old.
- 2. This old German elector was proclaimed king of England, by the title of George the First. With him began the dynasty of the house of Hanover. He could not speak a word of English, and knew nothing about the kingdom which he was to govern.
 - 3. He spent much of his time in his native country, for e dearly loved Hanover, and could never feel at home in the palace of the English kings. He died in 1727, and was ceeded by his son, George the Second, who was likewise native of Germany.
 - 4. During part of George the Second's reign, England was var with Spain and France. The king commanded his

army in person. The English were victorious in the battl of Dettingen, but they lost the battle of Fontency.

- 5. In 1745, the grandson of James the Second attempte to win back the crown of his ancestors. He landed i Scotland, and marched into England with a small army of Scotlish mountaineers. But he was at last defeated, an forced to fly; and many of his adherents were beheaded changed.
- 6. In 1755, another war began between the French an English, and some of their principal battles were fought i America. The city of Quebec and the Canadas were ox quered by the English during the war. Shortly after the event, George the Second died, at the age of seventy-seven.
- 7. His grandson, George the Third, began to reign i 1760, when he was about twenty-one years old. No kis ever ascended the throne with better prospects. Yet, many misfortunes befell him, that it would have been better for him to have died on his coronation day.
- 8. George the Third was a man of respectable comsense. In his private conduct he was much better thar generality of kings. But he was very obstinate, and would not take the advice of men wiser than himself. he done so, it is probable that the American Revo would not have happened in his reign.
- I shall speak of this great event hereafter. T
 of America, together with many other troubles, cont
 drive George the Third to madness. His fir

fit of derangement happened in 1788, and lasted several months.

- 10. In 1804 he had another attack, and a third in 1810. From this latter period he continued insane till his dying day. While the armies of England were gaining glorious victories, and grand events were continually taking place, the poor king knew nothing of the matter. Death released him from this miserable condition in the eighty-second year of his age.
- 11. The son of George the Third was very wild in his youth. He had been declared Prince Regent in consequence of his father's insanity. In 1820 he was crowned as King George the Fourth.
- 12. Even when he was quite an old man, this king cared as much about dress as he had done in youth, and he had a great deal of taste in such matters. His manners were also elegant, and he was fond of the fine arts, but a great voluptuary.
- 13. During his regency and reign, England combated the power of Bonaparte. With her gigantic power, and aided by the other kingdoms of Europe, that famous conquercr was finally overthrown. The other events of King George's reign are so recent that they scarcely yet belong to history. He died in 1830, and was succeeded by his brother, William the Fourth, during whose reign the Reform Bill was passed. He died in 1837, and was succeeded by his niece, the Princess Victoria, who is now queen of England, greatly honoured and beloved by all her subjects.

QUESTIONS.—When and where did James II. die? What did the English call James's son? Who was the nearest heir to the throne? 2. Who was George I.? What of him? 3. When did George II come to the throne? 4. With what countries was England at was during this reign? What battle did the English gain? What did they lose? 5. What took place in 1745? 6. What of the war in 1755? What of Quebec and the Canadas? 7. When did George III. begin to reign? 8. Character of George III.? 9. What happened to him? 10. What of his insanity? When did he die? 11. When was George IV. crowned? 12. What of his taste in dress? 13. What events took place during his reign? When did he die? Who succeeded him? Who reigns now?

CHAP. CLIX.—Europe continued.

THE STORY OF WALES.

- 1. Ir you ever go to Wales and mingle with the people you will hardly believe that you are in any part of Greaterian. The names of the inhabitants are very different from English names. What do you think of Mr. Llewelly ap Griffith ap Jones, and Mrs. Catesby ap Catesby! Y such names were common in Wales.
- 2. Many of the people now speak English, and the langue that was spoken by their ancestors is gradually dying aw though there are still considerable numbers who know other. The Welsh language is nearly the same as the I and Gaelic. This seems to show that the people are o same stock as the Irish and the Scotch Highlanders.
- 3. The early history of Wales is involved in obscr When the Romans came to Britain, the Welsh mor

ere inhabited by a rough set of people, who gave terrible ows with their clubs. These defended their mountains fiercely that the Romans never got possession of the untry.

- 4. When the Saxons came, they subdued all England and small portion of Wales; but the greater part held out ainst them to the last. Thus the Welsh princes mainined their independence, as well against the Roman as the ixon invaders. These princes appear to have lived in rong stone castles, which, in time of war, were defended the people around them. The ruins of some of these stles are still to be seen.
- 5. In these ancient times there was a strange set of men Wales called bards. These sang songs, and told stories out the brave deeds of the Welsh princes and heroes. he people loved to listen to these men, for their tales related fierce war and bloody battles, of which such rude nations e ever fond.
- 6. Some of these bards had a wonderful gift for singing and story-telling. These were often taken into the castles the princes, and here they led a merry life, between singg and feasting. In order to keep up their influence, they etended to be prophets, and both the people and the princes lieved they could foretell future events. Perhaps, too, the ards believed it themselves, for nothing is more easy than lf-deception. At all events, the people paid them the eatest reverence.

- 7. There is nothing so troublesome to a ki people maintaining their independence in his: His pride is mortified, his indignation rou people thus set up for themselves. He this ought to bow to power, and feels towards their air old hunter does toward a family of wolve persist in living among the rocks near him, in efforts to kill them.
- 8. So it was with the kings of England Wales. With a view, therefore, to subdue th and gain possession of their mountains, they ser armies against them. But the mountaineers ning to be caught, until about the year 128! First was then King of England, and Llew Wales.
- 9. The bards were always great lovers of and therefore they incited the Welsh prince deeds. Llewellyn had been told by one of the should become master of the whole island
- 10. Accordingly, when the army of Edcame against him, he rashly led his little as English, and was defeated and slain. He whis brother David, but he, too, was taken a gibbet, for the crime of bravely defending his
- 11. King Edward was very angry at the be up the people to resist his arms. He the have caused them all to be assembled a

These acts did not make the king a favourite; but the next king was born in Wales, and received the title of Prince of Wales. They appear to have liked him a little better. From this time the eldest son of the King of England has been called Prince of Wales.

12. Thus, with the death of David ended the line of Welsh princes, and thus ended the independence of Wales. And now they devote their energies to the cultivation of their lands, and the development of the peaceful arts. Wales possesses valuable mines of coal and iron, and is celebrated for its quarries of slate.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the names in Wales? 2. Their language? Of what stock are the Welsh people? 3. What of the early history of Wales? The ancient inhabitants? 4. What of the Saxons? What of the Welsh princes? 5. 6. What of the bards? 7. What is very troublesome to a king? 8. What did the kings of England do? Who was Prince of Wales in 1285? 9. What did the bards do? What did one of them tell Llewellyn? 10. What did Llewellyn do? His fate? Who defeated him? What of his brother David? 11. What did king Edward do to the bards? Where was the next king of England born? 12. Since when have the Welsh become a part of the British nation? What of the Welsh people now? What are the mineral resources of Wales?

CHAP. CLX.—EUROPE continued.

THE STORY OF SCOTLAND.

1. THE first inhabitants of Scotland appear to have been Gaels or Kelts, and probably were the same as the carly

Britons, Welsh, and Irish. They defended themselves against the Romans, who could never subdue the people of the Highlands. They were so troublesome that the Roman generals caused a wall to be built from the Solway Frith to the river Tyne.

- 2. This wall was not altogether sufficient to separate the contending parties, and frequent inroads were made on each side. In three or four hundred years after Christ, a tribe of Goths, called Picts, came over from the continent and settled in this country. These inhabited the Lowlands, and lived by agriculture. The Scots dwelt in the mountains, carrying on war, and subsisting by the chase.
- 3. Thus the nation became divided into Highlanders and Lowlanders, between whom there were continual battles; and thus, to some extent, the people remain to this day, though a better feeling has grown up with the spread of education, and the better understanding of mutual interests. I cannot undertake to tell you of their battles, and indeed we know but little about them.
- 4. In 839, it is said that Kenneth the Second, who was a Highland leader, subdued the Picts, and became the first king of Scotland. From his time to Edward the First of England, there were a good many sovereigns, but their story is not of sufficient interest to bear relation here.
- 5. I have told you in the history of England how Edward Longshanks, the same that subdued Wales, made war up at the Scotch, imprisoned Wallace, and had prepared a great

army for the final subjugation of Scotland, when he died. I have told you how his son, Edward the Second, was beaten by Robert Bruce at the glorious battle of Bannockburn. This event occurred in 1313, and secured the freedom of Scotland, which had been threatened by the English kings.

- 6. From this time, the history of Scotland tells of little but civil wars and dreadful battles with England, till the time of James the Fifth. He assumed the reins of government in 1513, at the age of thirteen years. He lost the confidence of his army, and they deserted him in the hour of need. This broke his heart, and he starved himself to death at the age of thirty-one.
- 7. His daughter was the beautiful and unfortunate Mary queen of Scots, as she is called, and whom I have mentioned in the history of England. She was educated in France, and was not only very handsome, but she was very accomplished. While she was yet a young lady, she was taken to Scotland and became queen.
- 8. But beauty, accomplishments, and power cannot ensure happiness. Mary's kingdom was in a state of great trouble; the people were divided among themselves, and Mary found it impossible to govern them. At length she became afraid that they would kill her; and, to save her life, she set out for England, and placed herself under the protection of Elizabeth.
 - 9. This was a great mistake on the part of the Scottish

44 ...

queen; for Elizabeth treated Mary very much as a spider would a fly who falls into his power. She caused her to be put in prison, and finally took her life.

- 10. The son of Mary, James the Sixth of Scotland, succeeded his mother; and, after the death of Elizabeth, he became king of England also, under the title of James the First. Though he lived in England, he did not forget Scotland. He loved learning, and caused schools to be established in his native country, where all the boys and girls might learn to read and write. These schools are continued to this day, and therefore it is very uncommon to meet with an entirely uneducated Scotchman.
- 11. From the time of King James, in 1603, Scotland has been attached to the British crown. She has sometimes rebelled, and in the cause of the Stuarts she fought a good many battles. But for many ages Scotland has been a peaceful portion of the British kingdom.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the first inhabitants of Scotland? What did the Roman generals do? 2. What of the Picts? The Scots? & How was the nation divided? How did they live in the early times? 4. Who was king of Scotland in 839? 5. What can you tell of Edward Longshauks? Of Edward II.? When was the battle of Rannockburn? Its effects? 6. How long were the Scots at war with the English? When did James V. begin to reign? His fate? 7, 8, 9. Tell the story of Mary of Scotland. 10. Who succeeded Mary? What did James do? 11. What of Scotland since 1603?

CHAP. CLXI.—EUROPE continued.

ABOUT IRELAND.

- 1. The history of Ireland, or "Green Erin," as it is called, is full of interesting matter, and I am sorry that I can only bestow upon it one brief chapter. The first inhabitants, like the Britons, were hard-fisted Kelts, who fought with clubs, and seemed to love fighting better than feasting.
- 2. They were divided into many tribes, and their leaders were called kings. These were constantly quarrelling with each other, and thus the people had plenty of their favourite sport. The early Irish, like the other Keltic tribes, were devoted to the religion of the Druids; but about the year 550, a Christian missionary came into the country, whose name was Patrick.
- 3. He seems to have been a wise and good man, and the people liked him very much. So they adopted Christianity, and under its influence gradually became somewhat civilized. Patrick lived to a great age, but at length he died, and was harried at Doune.
- 4. When he was gone, the people told wonderful stories about him, and finally they considered him more holy than other men, and called him a saint. To this day, they consider St. Patrick as in heaven, watching over the interests of Ireland. They pray to him, and, to do him honour, they seek

apart one day in the year for going to church, drinking whisky, and breaking each other's heads with clubs.

- 5. Among the curious notions still entertained by the Irish with regard to St. Patrick, is this: In Ireland there are no serpents or venomous reptiles, and the people firmly believe that St. Patrick put an end to them, and freed the island from them all for ever.
- 6. At the lake of Killarney, the peasants still preserve the following ludicrous tradition. When the labours of St. Patrick were drawing to a close, there was one enormous serpent who sturdily refused to emigrate, and baffled the attempts of the good saint for a long time.
- 7. He haunted the romantic shores of Killarney, and was so well pleased with his place of residence, that he never contemplated the prospect of removing without a deep sigh. At length St. Patrick, having procured a large oaken chest, with nine strong bolts to secure its lid, took it on his shoulder one fine sunshiny morning, and trudged over to Killarney, where he found the serpent basking in the sun.
- 8. "Good-morrow to ye!" cried the saint. "Bad luck to ye!" replied the serpent. "Not so, my friend," replied the good saint; "you speak unwisely; I'm your friend. To prove which, haven't I brought you over this beautiful house as a shelter to ye! So be asy, my darlint." But the serpent, being a cunning reptile, understood what blowery meant as well as the saint himself.

- 9. Still, not wishing to affront his apparently friendly visitor, he said, by way of excuse, that the chest was not large enough for him. St. Patrick assured him that it would accommodate him very well. "Just get into it, my darlint, and see how aisy you'll be." The serpent thought to cheat the saint, so he whipped into the chest, but left an inch or two of his tail hanging out over the side.
- 10. "I told you so," said he; "there's not room for the whole of me"—"Take care of your tail, my darlint!" cried the saint, as he whacked the lid down upon the serpent. In an instant the tail disappeared, and St. Patrick proceeded to fasten all the bolts. He then took the chest on his shoulders. "Let me out," cried the serpent. "Aisy," cried the saint; "I'll let you out to-morrow."
- 11. So saying, he threw the box into the waters of the ake, to the bottom of which it sank to rise no more. But or ever afterwards the fishermen affirmed that they heard he voice of the poor cheated reptile eagerly inquiring, "Is -morrow come yet? Is to-morrow come yet?" So much . St. Patrick.
 - 12. In the time of Henry the Second of England, Ireland conquered, and since that period has been under the clish kings. It has, however, been very ill-governed. g James the First did something towards improving the ition of the people; but neither he nor any subsequent has been able to get St. Patrick out of their heads.

The saint was a Roman Catholic, and the greater part of the people are Catholics to this day.

QUESTIONS.—1. What is Ireland called? Who were its first inhabitants? 2. What of the Kelts? Religion of the early Irish? What took place in 550? 3. What of Patrick? What influence civilized the people? 4. What did the people think of Patrick? How do they consider him? How do they honour him? 5. What curious notions have the Irish with respect to St. Patrick? 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11. Tell the story of the saint and the serpent on the lake of Killarney. 12. When was Ireland conquered? How has it since been governed? What of King James I.? What is the religion of Ireland?

CHAP. CLXII.—EUROPE continued.

MATTERS AND THINGS.

- 1. I HAVE now told you something about England, Wales, Scotland, and Ireland; but it is impossible to do justice to so great a subject in this little book. I have told you something about the kings, and the battles that have been fought
- 2. But there are a great many interesting stories that I have been obliged to omit. If I had time, I could give you a more particular account of the Keltic religion taught by the Druids, which was very curious, together with the manners of these Kelts in other respects, which you would find very amusing.
- 3. I could tell you of Odin, or Woden, the Scandinavian hero, who established a strange mythology, which pervaded the northern nations of Europe, and became, for a time, the

ligion of some of the inhabitants of Britain. I could tell bu how Christianity was introduced into England, sixty ears after Christ; and how at first the people built rude surches of wood, and how they afterwards constructed those to Gothic buildings in which the people worship now.

- 4. If I had time, I could tell you of the gipsies, a strange ce of people to be found in most countries of Europe, but rticularly in England, Spain, Hungary, and Bohemia; who ander from place to place, having no fixed homes; who me from some far land, but whether from Egypt or Asia one can tell; who continue from age to age the same, while e nations among which they wander rise and fall, flourish d decay.
- 5. If I had time, I could tell you some curious stories out a famous robber by the name of Robin Hood, who d in the woods and performed strange things. I could tell you of many celebrated people more worthy of being embered than this freebooter.

I could tell you of Dr. Watts, who wrote that beautiful book entitled Divine Songs for Children; a work which ven more pleasure, and done more good, than all the 3 of the greatest conqueror that ever lived.

could tell you of Hannah More, who wrote that ul story entitled the Shepherd of Salisbury Plain;
1 Bunyan, who wrote the Pilgrim's Progress; and De Foe, the author of that most interesting story, atures of Robinson Crusoe.

- 8. It would be very pleasant to read about these people: they seem like friends to us, and we should like to know where they lived, how they looked, and what adventures they met with. But these and other matters relating to the history of this beautiful and interesting country, I must leave for the present.
- 9. I have then only to add, that while you can read the history of the British nation in books, you can best study the character and manners of the people at home, in their own country. An Englishman is very agreeable in his own house, but there are many individuals who, when they travel in foreign countries, are too often disagreeable and unreasonable.
- 10. The Scotch are a shrewd, money-saving race, and if you will go to their wild country, and pay well for what you want, you will be well served. If a Scotchman leaves his own country it is to better his fortune, and he generally returns to it to enjoy the riches which he has gained.
- 11. The Irish are much the same, wherever they may be; cheerful, witty, and generous. They live for to-day, and think little of to-morrow. But the character of the people is much altered for the better, by the spread of the gospel, and education.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was Woden? What did his mythology became? When was Christianity introduced into England? 4. What of the gipsies? Where do they live? 5. Who was Robin Hood? 6. What of Dr. Watts? 7. What other celebrated writers could be mentioned? 8. What of Englishmen? 10. What of the Scotch? 11. What of the Irish?

ENGLAND.	43	7

CHAP. CLXIII.—EUROPE continued.

CHRONOLOGY OF (REAT B	RITA	IN.			B.C.
England invaded by Cæsar	•	•	•	•	•	J 5
England finally subdued by Claudius	2					A.D 44
Christianity introduced into England		•	•	•	•	60
Scotland received the Christian Fait		•	•	•	•	203
	п.	•	•	•	•	
The Saxons conquer England .	•	•	•	•	•	455
Patrick visits Ireland	-	•	•	•	•	550
Edwal first King of Wales	•	•	•	•	•	690
Egbert I., King of England	•	•	•	•	•	827
Kenneth II., first King of Scotland	•	•	•	•	•	839
Alfred ascends the English throne	•	•	•	•	•	872
The Danes conquer England .	•	•	•		•	877
Recovered by Alfred		•	•	•		880
Alfred the Great died						900
Canute invaded England						1015
Danes driven out of England .						1041
Harold became King of England .						1066
William the Conqueror ascends the	throne					1066
Wales conquered, and divided by W		he C	onaue	ror		1091
Death of William Rufus, King of Er		•			•	1100
Death of Henry Beauclerk, King of	England	đ				1135
Griffith, last King of Wales, died .	٠.					1137
Death of Stephen, King of England	_			_	Ž	1154
Richard ascends the throne	-	•	•	•	•	1189
Magna Charta granted by King John	n ,	•	•	•	•	1215
John died		•	•	•	•	1216
Edward I. ascends the English thron	٠.	•	•	•	•	1272
Wales annexed to the crown of Eng		•	•	•	•	
0	iana	•	•	•	•	1283
Sir William Wallace executed .	•	•	•	•	•	1305
Battle of Bannockburn	•	•	•	•	•	1313
Edward III. King of England .	•	•	•	•	•	1327
Battle of Cressy	•	•	•	•	•	1346
Black Prince died .						,53

								A.D.
Henry IV., King of England		•		•	•	•		1400
Henry V., King of England		•		•	•	•	•	1413
Henry V. died				•		•	•	1422
Wars of York and Lancaster 1	beg	un		•				1455
Edward IV., King of England	l					•	•	1461
Edward IV. died					•			1483
Richard Crookback died .				•				1485
Henry VII. died								1509
James V., King of Scotland						•		1513
Henry VIII. died								1547
Bloody Mary, Queen of Engla	ind							1553
Elizabeth ascends the throne					•			1558
Destruction of the Spanish A	rma	da						1588
James I. ascends the throne								1613
Charles I. ascends the throne								1625
Civil War began in Englar	ıd	betwe	en t	he C	avali	ers	and	
Roundheads				•		•		1643
Battle of Naseby								1645
Charles I. beheaded .								1649
Cromwell made Lord Protecto	or				•			1654
Cromwell died				•	•			1658
Charles II., King of England		•						1660
Great Plague in London								1665
Great Fire in London .								1666
James II., King of England		•		•				1685
The Glorious Revolution				•				1688
William and Mary crowned in	E	igland	i		•			1689
Anne ascended the throne								1702
Anne died								1714
George I. died								1727
Feorge III., King of England.					•			1760
eorge III. became deranged					•			1786
eorge IV. made king .							•	1830
rilliam III assembled the th	v.co.	. ea			٠,			1834

EUROPE.				439
New London Bridge opened				A.D. 1831
Slavery abolished throughout the British Colonie		•	•	1834
Victoria ascended the throne	٥.	•	•	1837
		•	•	1851
First Crystal Palace opened for Industry of all N	atioi	15 •	•	
Death of Duke of Wellington	•	•	•	1852
Death of Sir Charles Napier	•	•	•	1853
Alliance between England, France, and Turkey		•		1854
England declares war against Russia				1854
Battles of the Alma, Balaklava, and Inkerman				1854
Crystal Palace, Sydenham, opened by Queen Vic	toria			1854
Fall of Sebastopol			•	1855
Peace with Russia celebrated	•		•	1856
Victoria Cross, order of merit, instituted .				1856
Freaty of peace with Persia after a short war				1857
General Havelock died, after relieving Lucknow,	and	gaini	ng te	n
victories in eighty days		•	•	1858
Message from the Queen to United States by Ele	ctric	Teleg	raph	1858
Jews admitted to Parliament			•	1858
Numerous Volunteer Rifle Corps formed for Nati	ional	defen	ICA	1859
New treaty of commerce with France		40.0.		1860
	•			
Prince Albert, Consort of Queen Victoria, died D	ecem	iber i	+ .	1861
Prince of Wales married	•	•	•	1863

CHAP. CLXIV.—EUROPE continued.

REVIEW. THE DARK AGES. IMPORTANT INVENTIONS, ETC.

1. Such is my brief story about Europe. I hope I have told you enough to excite your curiosity, and lead you to read larger works than mine about the nations I have mentioned. You will find the subject very interesting, and worthy of your careful study. I have room now only to mention a few things that have been omitted in the progress of my story.

- 2. You will remember that Greece was settled before any other portion of Europe, and that the Greeks became a polished and powerful people. You will remember that Rome became a mighty empire, and extended its sway over nearly all parts of the world that were then known.
- 3. You will remember that, four or five hundred years after Christ, the Roman empire was dismembered, and that the northern tribes of Europe spread themselves over Spain, Italy, and Greece. Thus the arts, learning, and refinement, which had been cultivated in these countries, were for a time extinguished, and all Europe was reduced to a nearly barbarous state.
- 4. This period is called the Dark Ages, because the nations were generally ignorant, fierce, and barbarous. So things continued till about five hundred years ago, when the light of learning began to return. Since that time, society has advanced in civilization, till it has reached a higher state of improvement than was ever known before.
- 5. The history of the church of Christ is a subject at which I have been able only to take an occasional glance. After our Saviour's death, in the year 33, his apostles proceeded to spread the gospel throughout different countries. Paul was the most active and successful of these missionaries. He went several times through Asia Minor, travelled to Greece, and finally to Rome; every where preaching the truths of the Christian religion. He died at Rome, about A.D. 62.
- 6. At first, the Christians were persecuted by the Rosses

emperors, but the gospel continued to flourish until it pervaded most parts of the Roman empire. It was introduced into Britain in the year 60, and into most other parts of Europe at an early period. But it was not till the year 306, when Constantine adopted it, that it found favour with any king or prince in Europe.

- 7. From this period it advanced rapidly. The mythology of Greece and Rome gave way before it. The horrid sacrifices and gloomy superstitions of the Druids yielded to the gentle worship of one God, and the mysterious rites of Odin were forsaken for the religion of the Cross.
- 8. In the course of time, the Popes of Rome, finding that the Christian religion was going to pervade the world, pretended to place themselves at the head of it, that they might thus obtain an influence over mankind. They gradually acquired immense power, which they often used to the worst purposes.
- 9. In process of time their authority was lessened, and a large part of the people of Christendom protested against their authority, and were thence called Protestants. At the present day, the Pope of Rome has but little power.
- 10. I have mentioned the Inquisition in the history of Spain. This was a secret court, whose business it was to arrest and bring to trial those who were suspected of not being true followers of the Popish or Catholic religion.
- 11. It appears that this institution was sanctioned by Pope Innocent III, in the year 1215. From that time it was

gradually extended, and at length was established in Spain, in 1481. Here it acquired great power, and became the most cruel tribunal that has been known upon the face of the earth.

- 12. It was for many years a favourite instrument by which the Pope of Rome carried on his schemes of tyranny. It was introduced into most countries of Europe where the Catholic religion prevailed; but in no country did it exercise its terrible power with such cruel despotism as in Spain. It was not finally abolished till the year 1820.
- 13. I have not had an opportunity to mention the abbeys and monasteries of Europe. These curious institutions, however, deserve notice. It appears that in most countries there have ever been some people who retire from the active business of life, and shut themselves up for religious contemplation. Such has been the case in Asia; and among the worshippers of Brama, Fo, Lama, and Mahomet they are still found. Such was also the case among the idolaters of ancient Egypt, Greece, and Rome. Such was the case among the ancient Jews, and such has been the case among believers in Christ, from very early ages.
- 14. The first monastery was founded by St. Authony, in Upper Egypt, A.D. 305. This consisted of a number of huts, in which several hermits dwelt, devoting themselves to penance and prayer. Another monastery was established in France, in the year 360, by St. Martin. From this time these institutions were multiplied, and became established in

all Catholic countries. From the eighth to the fifteenth century they received great encouragement, and many splendid edifices were erected for their use.

- 15. Some were called abbeys, and some monasteries. Many of them were filled with monks and friars, and others with females called nuns. The splendid remains of many of these edifices are still to be found in England, France, Germany, and other parts of Europe. At first, the inhabitants of monasteries lived in a simple manner, and devoted themselves to religious contemplation. But, in after times, the abbeys and monasteries became the seats of voluptuousness. None were permitted to enter them but the monks and nuns; these, therefore, while they pretended to be engaged in religious duties, screened from the eyes of the world, often gave themselves up to luxurious pleasures.
- 16. These institutions were, however, greatly encouraged by the Popes; and it was not until the monstrous corruptions of the Catholic religion brought on the Reformation, in the sixteenth century, that monastic institutions began to decline. They were abolished in England in 1539, and in France in 1790. In several other countries of Europe they have ceased, but still continue in Italy and Spain.
- 17. In the early ages war was carried on without guns and cannon. The Greeks and Romans were armed with swords, spears, and battle-axes, and they carried shields for defence. The troops of Egypt, Carthage, and Persix were armed in a similar manner. In the year 1330, gunpowder



soon the whole art of war was changed. Bows a spears and shields, were thrown aside; and contend instead of coming up close to each other, and fight face, learned to shoot each other down at a distan

- 19. One of the greatest discoveries of modern ti quality of the mariner's compass by which it alway the north pole. This useful instrument, which e seaman to traverse the trackless deep, appears to in use as early as 1180.
- 20. But a still more important invention w printing, in 1441. Previous to that time all I written with the pen. A copy of the Bible was much in ancient times as a good house or a go now. Of course, very few people could learn to next of backs. If Peter Peylor had lived in the

7. What of the progress of Christianity? 8. What of the Popes? 9. Who were called Protestants? What of the Pope at the present day? 10. What was the Inquisition? 11. By what Pope was it sanctioned? When? When was it established in Spain? What did it there become? 12. Into what countries was the Inquisition introduced? Where was its power most cruelly exercised? 13. What appears to be the case in most countries? Mention some instances? 14. Who founded the first monastery? When? Of what did it consist? When and by whom was a monastery established in France? What of monasteries from this time? 15. Who inhabited them? How did the monks and nuns fomerly live? How in later times? 16. By whom were these institutions encouraged? When did monastic institutions begin to decline? When were they abolished in England? In France? Where do they still exist? 17. What of war in early times? Arms? When was gunpowder invented? When were cannon first used by the English? 18. What happened from this time? 19. What is a great discovery of modern times? When was the mariner's compass first used? 20 When was printing invented? How were books formerly made?

CHAP. CLXV.—EUROPE continued.

GENERAL C	HRON	OLOG	T OF	EURC	PE.			B.C.
GREECE settled by Inachus	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	1856
Argonautic expedition .	•			•	•	•		1263
Greece subjected by Cassand	er			•				1193
Phonicians trade to Spain						•		906
Building of Rome				•				752
The Kelts settle in Bohemia				•		•		600
Tarquins expelled from Rom	18		•	•				509
Rome taken by the Gauls								385
Russia possessed by the Ven	edi							312
All Italy submits to Rome								510
Spain subjected to Rome								<i>30€</i>
A colony of Belge settled in	Fran	CO						. 30

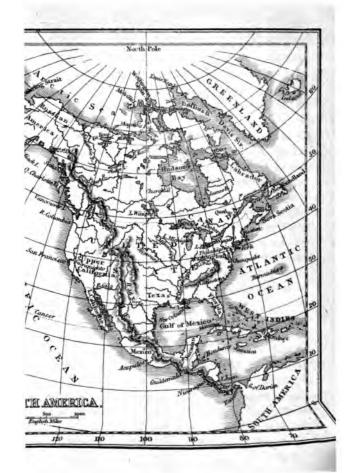
Cartnage destroyed	•	•	•			•	•
Greece becomes a Roman prov	ince			•	•	•	
England invaded by Cæsar	•	•					•
Gaul finally conquered by the	Roma	ns		•			
Hungary, anciently Pannonia,	anne	xed t	o Ge	rman	7		
					•		•
England finally subdued by Cla			•	•		•	•
Christianity introduced into E			٠.	•	•	•	•
Hygenus, first bishop of Rome			made	pope	3	•	•
Christianity introduced into So		ıd	•	•	•	•	•
Christianity adopted at Rome		•	•	•	•	•	•
Rome divided into the Eastern	and	Wes	tern e	empir	es	•	•
Rome taken by Alaric .	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Pharamond first king of France		•		•	•	•	•
Kingdom of the Visigoths foun	ided i	in Sp	ain	•		•	
Venice founded		•	•		•	•	
Germany conquered by the Hu	ıns						
The Saxons conquer England				•			
Rome taken by Odoacer .	•	•		•	•		
Kingdom of Sweden began							
French monarchy established							
The Pope's temporal power est	tablis	hed					
First king of Denmark .							
Charlemagne began to reign							
Charlemagne master of Germa	ny						
Venice becomes independent				1		•	
City of Venice built							
Egbert first king of England							. 1
Kenneth first king of Scotland							, (
Iceland discovered							, 8
The Danes conquer England							. 8
Norway conquered by Canute							10
anes driven out of England		٠.		٠.			. 10
Miles Gliven of the sales and sales	 Aa ah	a the	onio.c	is Eni	dani.	٠. ١	. ,
TANKA TELEFORMANTE BASEMENT	us W	C AND	· · · ·		0		

BUI	ROP E.		:				447
usade	_		_	_	_	_	A.D. 1096
rs under Godfrey of I	3ouill	on tal	ke Je	rusale	em	٠.	1099
Portugal founded	•	•	•	•	•		1139
ts height	•	•	•	•		•	1200
a signed by King Jol	n of	Engla	and				1215
ed to England .		•	•				1283
oire founded .	•		•				1299
raises the siege of Or	leans						1428
onstantinople .							1458
k and Lancaster in E	nglan	d					1455
stablished in Spain	•						1478
overed by Columbus							1492
iscover Brazil .		•		•			1501
by Luther							1517
Russia							1553
ieen of England .			•				1558
he Protestants in Fra	ance						1572
Iolland founded .							1581
omes independent							1604
lled							1610
expelled from Spain							1620
England between Ca	valier	s and	Rou	ndhea	ads		1642
nes a kingdom .							1701
exed to Germany							1739
yed by an earthquak	е						1755
'oland							1772
wed							1789
ubdued by the Frenc	h						1798
de Emperor of Franc					•		1804
algar			-	•			1805
ed to France .		,					1:10
oleon			-			٠,	1831
he Janizaries in Turk	ey	•	•	.•	•	•	1826 .

Accession of Otho to the throne of Greece	•	. 1
Netherlands divided into Holland and Belgium .		
Louis Philippe ascended the throne of France .		. :
Coronation of Queen Victoria		
The Royal Family and Ministers effect their escape fr	om F	rance
Abd el-Kader, a captive in France, set at liberty by	the I	Prince-
President		•
The Prince-President declared Emperor of the French	١.	
Death of the Duke of Wellington		
Marriage of the French Emperor with Eugenia, Coun	tess '	Téba
Departure of English and French naval forces against		
Fall of Sebastopol		
Peace with Russia ratified		
Evangelical Alliance held at Berlin, and attended by	the E	Cing
New expedition to enforce the last treaty with China		
Peace with China	-	

CHAP. CLXVI.—AMERICA. ABOUT AMERICA.

- 1. WE have long been occupied with the three great d sions of the Eastern continent, Asia, Africa, and Eur Let us now leave those countries, cross the Atlantic, visit the continent of America.
- 2. This continent, as you will see by the maps, consist two parts, North and South America. These are united I narrow strip of land called the Isthmus of Darien, as sixty miles in width; at the narrowest part it is but this seven miles. This vast continent is about nine thous miles in length, and is nearly equal in extent to Asia. I whole population is estimated at nearly forty millions.



It the inh lies to the lies to

- 3. The northern part of America is excessively cold. It is there bounded by the sea, and does not extend to the north pole, as was thought. Greenland, the coldest inhabited country on the globe, was formerly considered a part of that continent, but it is now known to be distinct.
- 4. The countries in North America are, the island of Iceland, Greenland, the Polar Regions, inhabited by the Esquimaux and other tribes of Indians, British America, Russian America, the United States, Mexico, and Guatimala.
- 5. Between North and South America are a number of beautiful islands called the West Indies. South America is divided into Venezuela, New Grenada, Equator, Peru, Bolivia, Chili, and the United Provinces. These are republics. Brazil was a province of Portugal, but it is now independent, and is called an empire; and Patagonia, at the southern end of South America, is a land thinly settled by uncivilized tribes.
- 6. I have said that it was extremely cold at the northern part of North America. In this dreary region no trees are to be found, no plants flourish. For nine months in the year the sea is frozen, and scarcely a living thing is able to dwell there. Even in summer nothing is seen but now and then a lonely white bear, or a solitary reindeer feeding upon moss.
- 7. As you proceed south you meet with a few willows, and birch-trees, and some hardy plants. Still farther south, the regetation improves, wild animals become abundant, and

wild birds are seen swimming in the waters or ho the air.

- 8. Here you meet with tribes of Esquimaux a pewa Indians. When you get to Canada, you find country. When you get as far south as the Unite the climate becomes pleasant. In the West Indie the Gulf of Mexico, and throughout all the north of South America, the climate is that of perpetual summer.
- 9. As you go farther south it grows cold; and veget to Cape Horn you will find it a frozen country winter reigns three-fourths of the year. The wild of America are very numerous. The bison, wild gesheep, antelope, many kinds of deer, several kinds wolves, foxes, and many smaller quadrupeds, toget birds of many kinds, are natives of America.
- 10. Most of the American domestic animals found there when the country was first discovered. that the Newfoundland dog, and one or two other are natives of that country. But its domestic cattl breeds of sheep, its horses, asses, mules, goats, hens, were originally brought from Europe. The domestic goose, and duck, are native birds.
- 11. The people of America may be divided into t increase. First, the Indians, who were found scattered the American continent when it was first divided consisted of many tribes, living separately, as

ing different languages. And, second, the descendants of the Europeans who went to that country at various times, and settled there. To these we might add several millions of negroes who were brought from Africa as slaves, or their descendants.

12. America is remarkable for three things; it has the largest lakes, the longest rivers, and the longest chain of mountains to be found in the world. The largest lake is Lake Superior, the longest river is the Mississippi, the longest chain of mountains is that which extends nearly the whole length of the continent, being called the Andes in South America, the Cordilleras in Guatimala and Mexico, and the Rocky Mountains in the United States.

QUESTIONS.—2. What does the continent of America consist of? What of the Isthmus of Darien? Extent and population of America?

3. What is known of the northern part of America? What of Greenland?

4. Countries of North America? 5. What of the West Indies? Divisions of South America? Brazil?

6. What of the northern part of North America?

7. What of vegetation as you proceed south?

8. What of Indian tribes? What of the climate as you proceed south to the north of South America?

9. What of Cape Horn? Animals of America? Birds?

10. What animals were found there? What of cattle? Native birds?

11. Describe the two classes of people in America.

12. For what is America remarkable? What of Lake Superior? Mississippi river? The Andes?

Answer the following from the Map of the Western Hemisphere, p. 8.

How is the continent of America bounded on the east? On the west? Where is Cape Horn? West Indies? Greenland? The Sandwich Islands? In which direction is Cape Horn from New York? Where are Behring's Straits?

CHAP. CLXVII.—AMERICA continued.

THE FIRST INHABITANTS OF AMERICA.

- 1. When the traveller beholds such fine cities as Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore, New Orleans, Louisville, and Cincinnati, and sees a country of such immense extent dotted all over with towns, cities, and villages, he can scarcely believe that, three hundred and sixty years ago, the whole continent of America was unknown to the inhabitants of Europe, Asia, and Africa.
- 2. Yet such is the fact. The country was indeed inhabited by many tribes of Indians, but these people had no books and knew nothing of the rest of the world. Where they came from, or when they first settled in America, no one can certainly tell.
- 3. It appears that the northern portions of North America are inhabited by a race of people called Esquimaux. These differ from all the other Indians, and bear a close resemblance to the Laplanders. It seems likely, therefore, that these polar regions were settled by people who came from Europe in book, many centuries since.
- 4. That such a thing is possible, appears from the fact that the Norwegians are known to have discovered Iceland in the eighth century, and that they actually made settlements in Greenland in the ninth century. It appears, then, that portions of America were actually visited by these series.

Europeans, who possessed no other than small vessels, and little knowledge in the art of navigation.

- 5. But how did the other Indians get to this country? If you will look on a map of the Pacific Ocean, you will see, at the northern part, that America and Asia come very close together. They are separated only by Behring's Straits, which are but eighteen miles wide.
- 6. Across the narrow channel, the people of the present day, living in the neighbourhood, are accustomed to pass in their little boats. There is reason to believe, then, that many ages since, some of the Asiatic tribes of Tartars wandered to Behring's Straits, and crossed over to America. These may have been numerous, and consisting of different tribes; a foundation may thus have been laid for the peopling of the American continent.
- 7. But it is also thought that the people of Southern Asia have reached the central part of America by passing from island to island, across the great Pacific Ocean, which they can do, as many of the islanders in the Ocean build and manage very beautiful canoes.
- 8: There is considerable resemblance between the American Indians and some Asiatic tribes, and they appear to possess some singular customs known in Asia. Thus it would seem that Asia, which furnished the first inhabitants of Africa and Europe, also supplied America with the first human beings that trod its shores.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of America three hundred and sixty years ago?
2. What of the Indians? 3. The Esquimaux? What seems probable?
4. What of the Norwegians? 5. What straits separate Asia and America? Their width? 6. What is there reason to believe? 7. How is it supposed that the central part of America became peopled? 8. Whom do our Indians resemble? How was America probably first peopled?

CHAP. CLXVIII.—AMERICA continued.

DISCOVERY OF AMERICA BY COLUMBUS.

1. It has been conjectured that the ancient Carthaginians discovered South America, and made settlements there. It has, indeed, been said that a Punic inscription was due up at Monte Video; but the truth of this is very doubtful; and, at all events, the discovery had been forgotten for two or three thousand years. But it is now certain that the Danish Northmen first went to Iceland, then to Greenland, and afterward to that part of America which is now the United States: this happened about A.D. 1000. ticulars of these expeditions were not known to the rest of Europe till a very few years ago. The first inhabitant of the Old World who gave any information of what was called the New World, as it is now known, was Christopher Columbus. He may therefore fairly be called the discoverer of America.

.

岩

.

7

2. This illustrious person was born at Genoa, in Italy, in 1442. As he grew up, he paid great attention to the study of geography. The idea entered his mind that there was

be vast tracts of undiscovered country somewhere on the face of the wide ocean.

- 3. Columbus was poor, and had not the means of sailing in search of these unknown lands. He applied for assistance to the rulers of his native country; but they refused it. He next went to Portugal; but there he met with no better success.
- 4. At last he came to the court of Spain. Ferdinand and Isabella were king and queen of that country. The king, like almost every body else, treated Columbus with neglect and scorn.
- 5. But the queen thought so favourably of his project, that she sold her jewels to defray the expenses of the voyage. These small vessels were equipped with ninety men, and with provisions for one year. Columbus took the command, and sailed from Spain on the 3rd of August, 1492.
- 6. He first held his course southward, and touched at the Canary islands. Thence he steered straight towards the west. After a few weeks, his men became alarmed; they feared that they should never again behold their native country, nor any land whatever, but should perish in the trackless sea.
- 7. Columbus did his utmost to encourage them. He promised to turn back if land were not discovered within three days. On the evening of the last day, at about ten o'clock, he looked from the deck of his vessel, and beheld a light gleaming over the sea. He knew that this light must

be on land. In the morning an island was seen, to which Columbus gave the name of St. Salvador. The native name is Guanahana.

- 8. This is one of the Bahama islands. The natives thronged to the shore, and gazed with wonder at the three ships. Perhaps they mistook them for living monsters, and thought that their white sails were wings.
- 9. Columbus clothed himself magnificently, and landed with a drawn sword in his hand. His first act was to kneel down and kiss the shore. He then erected a cross as a symbol that Christianity was now to take the place of pagarism. He declared the island to be the property of Queen Isabella. He then visited other islands, and returned to Spain, giving an account of the wonderful things he had seen. He made a second, but it was not till his third voyage that he discovered the continent of America.
- 10. No sooner had Columbus proved that there really was a new world beyond the sea, than several other navigators made voyages thitherwards. Americus Vespucius, a native of Florence, went there, and contrived to have the whole continent called by his name.
- 11. By degrees, discoveries were made along the whole coast of North and South America. People went from various nations of Europe, and formed settlements there. Is relating the history of these settlements, I shall begin with the most northerly, although the earliest colonies were planted in the tropical regions.

QUESTIONS.—1. What has been conjectured? When did the Danes sit America? What of Christopher Columbus? 2. When and where as he born? Tell the story of Columbus till the time when he set sail. Which way did he first steer his course? What of his men? 7. How d Columbus encourage them? What land was first discovered? 8. hat of the people? 9. What did Columbus now do? 10. What of nericus Vespucius? 11. What of other discoveries?

CHAP. CLXIX.—AMERICA continued.

FEW WORDS ABOUT ICELAND AND GREENLAND. SETTLEMENTS OF THE FRENCH IN AMERICA.

- 1. I have already told you that the island of Iceland was scovered by a Norwegian pirate in 860. After this, the prwegians sent people to settle there. It is a cold, dreary untry, and there is a terrible mountain in the island, lled Hecla, which sometimes sends out fire, smoke, and hee, and shakes the whole island with its frightful rumings.
- 2. But still the inhabitants increased, and Christianity was troduced in 981. From that time to the present, they have ntinued a quiet, honest set of people. Their number is fifty thousand, and they are under the government of enmark.
- 8. Greenland was discovered about the same time as sland, and settled soon after. Two settlements were med. The colony continued to flourish till the Texts.

1379, when the western settlement was destroyed by the natives. About 1409, disturbances in Denmark put a stop to the annual sending of ships to Greenland, and, as the colonies had no vessels, all intercourse was at an end The eastern settlement is supposed, like the western, w have been destroyed by the hostility of the natives. not till 1721 that a new Danish settlement was made in The settlement now Greenland, on the southern coast. consists of ten missionary establishments and twenty-eight factories, &c. About a hundred and fifty Europeans, and six thousand Greenlanders, constitute the population. At this time the winter was so severe as to block up the sea, and since that time nothing has been known of the colory of settlers. It is probable they all perished long since This settlement was on the northern part of Greenland Another colony was settled in the south-western part of Greenland; this continued to the present day, but the ishabitants are few in number. Most of them are native Esquimaux; the rest are the descendants of the Norwegian settlers.

- 4. The portion of America which is now under the government of Great Britain consists of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Newfoundland, Upper and Lower Canada, and New Britain.
- 5. All these provinces together compose a tract of country equal in extent to the United States. They are bounded north by the Arctic Sea and Baffin's Bay, can't by the

- clantic, south by the United States, and west by Russian nerica and the Pacific Ocean.
- 6. The first people who formed settlements in America, to northward of the present limits of the United States, re the French. Nearly three hundred years ago, they re in the habit of sending fishing-vessels to this coast.
- 7. In 1524, a Frenchmau, named James Cartier, sailed up

 St. Lawrence, and built a fort, in which he passed the

 nter. Settlements were soon after formed in Canada and

 va Scotia. King Henry the Fourth of France appointed

 Marquis de la Roche to be governor-general of Canada

 d the neighbouring territories.
- 8. The city of Quebec was founded in the year 1608. It nds on the river St. Lawrence, about five hundred miles m the sea. Its foundation is on a high rock of limestone d slate.
- 9. The French settlers were on very friendly terms with Indians. They purchased the furs which the red men tained in their hunting expeditions. These were sent to trope, and sold at a great profit. Some of the French re married to Indian wives.
- 10. When the English began to form settlements to the 1thward of Canada, the French incited the savages to 1ke war upon them. Parties of French and Indians would 1metimes come from Quebec or Montreal, and burn the 1metimes were killed, or carried captive to Canada.

- 11. In 1629, Sir David Keith, a British officer, took Quebec; but it was afterwards restored to the French. The people of New England made several attempts to get it back again.
- 12. In 1711, the British government sent a strong fleet up the St. Lawrence, under the command of Admiral Sir Hovendon Walker. There was an army of seven thousand men on board the ships.
- 13. If they had landed in safety, they would probably have succeeded in taking Quebec. But, when they were entering the river, the vessels became involved in a fog. A strong wind began to blow, and drove eight or nine of them upon the rocky shore...
- 14. The next morning the French found the dead bodies of a thousand men in scarlet coats, heaped among the rocks. These were the drowned English soldiers. This sad event caused the English to give up the design of conquering Canada.

QUESTIONS.—1. When was Iceland discovered? What of it? Mount Hecla? 2. When was Christianity introduced into Iceland? People? What of Greenland? 3. Colony at Greenland? When was it last heard of? Colony in the south? The people? 4. What does British America consist of? 5. How large is it? Boundaries? 6. What the French? 7. What was done in 1524? Who was appointed governor of Canada? 8. When and where was Quebec founded? 4. What of the French and Indians? 10. In what way were the English treated by them? 11. When and by whom was Quebec taken? 13, 14. What was done in 1711? Give an account of the expedition.

CHAP. CLXX.—AMERICA continued.

THE FRENCH COLONIES CONQUERED BY THE ENGLISH.

- 1. Whenever there was war between France and Old gland, there was likewise a war between New England 1 the French provinces in America. The French builting fortresses, and the English or Americans made great orts to take them.
- 2. The French had carefully fortified the city of Louising, on the island of Cape Breton. In 1745, the New gland people formed a project of taking it. They raised trong army, and gave the command to a Boston merchant, ned William Pepperell.
- 3. The army sailed under the escort of an English fleet, I landed on the island of Cape Breton. General Peppers men were merely farmers and mechanics; and he himf knew little about taking fortresses.
- 1. But if the New Englanders had no skill, they had nty of courage. They erected batteries and cannonaded city for about a fortnight; and then the French comnder hauled down his flag. The conquest of Louisbourg a considered a very brilliant exploit.
- 5. Louisbourg was restored to the French at the close of war; but it was again taken by General Wolfe in 58. The same general soon afterwards led an army winst Quebec.

- 6. This city was so strongly fortified that it a almost impossible to take it. It had a citadel, wh built on a rock several hundred feet high; and the strong walls all around the city. And, besides the garrison within the walls, there was a large French; the outside.
- 7. But General Wolfe was determined to take or lose his life in the attempt. After trying vario methods, he led his army from the shore of the riv steep precipice. When they reached the top, they a level with the walls of Quebec.
- 8. This bold movement was performed in the nig soon as the Marquis de Montcalm, who comman French army, heard of it, he marched to meet the A battle was begun immediately.
- 9. General Wolfe put himself at the head of his and led them bravely onward. Though he had received wounds, he refused to quit the field. At last a bal him in the body, and stretched him on the ground.
- 10. A few of his soldiers carried him to the rear though the hand of death was on him, General thought only of the battle that was raging aroun heard a voice shouting—"They run! they run!" saked who it was that fled.
- 11. "It is the French!" said a soldier. "They are!
 The victory is ours!" A glad smile appeared on they
 face. "Then I die happy!" he cried, and expire!

- 12. The victory was complete. The Marquis de Montcalm vas mortally wounded. In a few days after the battle, Juebec was surrendered. The whole province, and all the rench possessions in the north, soon fell into the hands of he British.
- 13. They have ever since continued under the British overnment. When the other American territories of Great Britain became independent, these old French colonies coninued attached to the crown of Britain.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the consequence of a war between France nd England? 2. Where was Louisbourg? What was done in 1745? Describe the capture of Louisbourg. 5. When was it restored to the Trench? When taken by General Wolfe? 6. Describe the capture of Inebec. 8. Who commanded the French army? Describe General Volfe's death. 12. Consequence of the victory? French possessions? 3. To what are the old French colonies attached?

CHAP. CLXXI.—AMERICA continued.

DESCRIPTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

- 1. We will now proceed to talk of America; but, in the st place, let us go to a map, for the first step in studying he history of a country should be to learn its situation, bundaries, shape, rivers, mountains, &c.
- 2. The United States, originally thirteen in number, are unded on the north by the British possessions, east by the States ocean, south by the Gulf of Mexico and the States. Mexico, and west by the Pacific Ocean. The whole

country is about as extensive as all Europe, and centains about thirty-two millions of inhabitants.

- 3. Not much more than half of this wast country is settled. Most of the western portion is unoccupied, or only thinly scattered over with Indian tribes. The United States now consists of thirty-four states, each having a governor, and a legislature to make laws; the whole being united under a national government, over which a President is placed a chief ruler.
- 4. The United States are frequently spoken of under four sections. The North-Eastern, or New England states, are Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut. The Middle States are New York New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, and Federal district of Columbia. The Southern states are Virginia North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Tennessee, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Texas. The Northern and Western states are Wisconsin, Iowa, Missouri, Illinois Indiana, Michigan, Ohio, Kentucky, Arkansas, California Minnesota, Kansas, and Oregon. There are also sever territories, viz.: New Mexico, Nebraska, Utah. Colors Dacota, Columbia, Nevada, and Washington. These, their population reaches a certain number, will become at It is in the state of California that the great discovery of took place in 1848.
- 5. The United States are favoured by a great man rivers flowing through fertile valleys. There we

mountains, but none are so lofty as the Andes of South America, the Alps of Europe, or the Himalaya mountains of Asia. The climate of the north is temperate, and the soil yields apples, pears, peaches, and other fruits. In the south it is warm, and oranges, figs, and lemons flourish.

QUESTIONS.—1. What is necessary in studying the history of a country? 2. Boundaries of the United States? Extent? Population? 3. How large a portion is settled? What of the government? 4. Divisions of the United States? 5. Face of the country? Climate? Soil? Productions?

CHAP. CLXXII.—America continued.

- 1. Before speaking of the United States as one whole country, I must give a brief account of the settlements of the several colonies. I shall begin with New England, because that section of the Union is the most northerly, though not first settled.
- 2. New England, as I have said, contains the states of Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut. It is bounded north by Lower Canada, east by New Brunswick and the Atlantic Ocean, south by the Atlantic and Long Island Sound, and west by New York.
- 3. In the year 1620, a ship called the Mayflower arrived on the coast of New England with a number of ministers, and pious men and women, and their children. They had

been driven from England by persecution, and had gone to the dreary wilderness, in order to worship God according to their own consciences.

- 4. It was the cold, wintry month of December, when the Mayflower anchored in the harbour of Plymouth. The people went on shore, and the rock on which they landed has ever since been considered sacred.
- 5. They went to work, and built themselves some poor huts. At first they met with great difficulties and hardships. Many of them fell sick and died. The survivors were often in want of food, and were forced to dig for shell-tish on the seashore.
- 6. In addition to their other troubles, the Indians sometimes threatened to attack them. But the Pilgrims were as brave and patient as they were pious. They put their trust in God, and steadily pursued their design of making a permenent settlement in the country.
- 7. Soon after this settlement at Plymouth, other companies of religious persons landed in different parts of New England Some settled at Salem, and others at Boston.
- 8. In the year 1635, sixty men, women, and children journeyed from Massachusetts to Connecticut, to make settlement there. They went through the woods on foot, we drove their cattle before them, and had no shelter at nip but the boughs of the trees. When they reached the Connecticut niver, they began to build Windsor, Hartford, and of the connecticut.

 These were the first settlements in the Council

- 9. In 1636, a pious minister of Baptist sentiments, and a friend of the poet Milton, named Roger Williams, was banished from Massachusetts. He went to Rhode Island, and settled at Providence, where he established perfect religious liberty, which till then was nowhere to be found. This good man was a great friend to the Indians, and they had a strong affection for him.
- 10. By degrees, villages were built all along the sea-coast of New England, and settlements began to be formed on the inland rivers. But a thick and dreary forest still overshadowed the greater part of the country, and bears and wolves often prowled around the cottages.

QUESTIONS.—2. What of New England? Boundaries? 3. What took place in 1620? Describe the settlement of Plymouth. 7. What of other settlements? What took place in 1635? 9. When and by whom was Providence settled? 10. What was done by degrees? What of the greater part of New England?

CHAP. CLXXIII.—AMERICA continued.

AFFAIRS OF NEW ENGLAND CONTINUED.

- 1. The settlers of New England were good and pious people; but many of them seemed to have pretty much the same feelings towards the Indians that they had towards the bears and wolves. They considered them a sort of wild animal, er, if men, very wicked ones.
- 2. The best friend that ever the red men had was John Eliot. He considered them his fellow-beings, and went about

preaching to them; and so he was called the apostle of the Indians. He spent a great many years in translating the Bible into their language, and in teaching the Indians to read it.

- 3. There were, however, very few white men that loved the Indians, and the latter looked upon the settlers as their enemies. They were afraid that, in time, they would cut down all the trees of the forest, and change their huntinggrounds into cultivated fields.
- 4. The settlers had, therefore, many wars with the Indians; but the most terrible one broke out in the year 1675, and was called King Philip's war. King Philip, though an Indian, was a man of great sagacity; and it was his design to destroy all the settlers, and make New England a wilderness again.
- 5. King Philip first made an attack on the people of Swanzey, in Massachusetts, as they were coming out of the meeting-house on Fast-day. Eight or nine persons were shot. Many others were killed and scalped in different parts of the country, and many houses were set on fire.
- 6. Almost every man in New England now shouldered his musket, and went out to fight King Philip. Even the ministers, instead of teaching the Indians to read the Bible as John Eliot did, now took their guns, and joined in the warfare, whenever they had a chance.
- 7. In the course of the next winter, the settlers formed themselves into an army of nearly two thousand men, and drove King Philip and the other Indiana into a strong for in Rhode Island. It stood in the midst of a swamp, and

contained six hundred wigwams or huts. All the Indian women and children had taken refuge there.

- 8. Four thousand Indian warriors were in the fort. But the settlers boldly attacked them, broke into the fort, and set the wigwams on fire. Many of the old and infirm Indians, as well as the women and poor helpless children, were burnt alive.
- 9. A thousand Indian warriors were killed and wounded, and several hundred were taken prisoners. The remainder fled. The fort presented a horrible spectacle, with half-burnt bodies of men, women, and children, strewn among the ashes of the wigwams.
- 10. But still the war was not at an end, for King Philip was alive. The next summer it was known that he had taken refuge at Mount Hope, in Rhode Island. Captain Church pursued him thither with a small party of men, and he was shot by an Indian of the American party.
- 11. After this war the Indians were never again able to do so much mischief to the New England people. But, for many years afterwards, they would sometimes steal out of the woods by night, set the villages on fire, and slaughter the inhabitants. The New England colonies, however, increased rapidly, and in time the country had many pleasant towns and villages.

QUESTIONS.—1. How were the Indians considered by the settlers?
2. What of John Eliot? 3. How did the Indians consider the white men? 4. When did King Philip's war begin? What of King Philip's

5. When did he first attack the Americans? 6. What did the do? 7. What did they do the next winter? What of the fo 9. Describe the destruction of the fort. 10. Describe the end Philip. 11. What of the Indians after this war?

CHAP. CLXXIV .- A MERICA continued.

EARLY HISTORY OF VIRGINIA.

- 1. THE colony of Virginia was settled some years New England. Sir Walter Raleigh fixed a colony th 1584, but it was destroyed by sickness. Jamestov James river, was founded by Captain Christopher No in 1607. The Indians gave the settlers great troubl would probably have destroyed them if it had not be Captain John Smith.
- 2. Captain Smith was a gallant man, who, beficame to Virginia, had fought bravely against the Turks showed himself equally valiant in his engagements windians.
- 3. But one day, when Captain Smith was retreating a large party of savages, he sunk up almost to his nec swamp. The Indians pulled him out, and carried their king, Powhatan.
- 4. Powhatan was rejoiced to have him in his powhe he had been more afraid of him than of all the other Emen together, and he determined immediately to product the Accordingly, Captain Smith's hands were

and he was stretched on the ground, with his head on a large stone.

- 5. King Powhatan, who was a man of immense size and strength, then seized a great club, intending to kill Captain Smith; but, just as the blow was falling, his daughter Pocahontas rushed forward.
- 6. This beautiful Indian maiden threw herself upon the body of Captain Smith, and besought her father to have mercy; and the fierce Indian could not resist her tears and entreaties.
- 7. Captain Smith was therefore released and sent back to Jamestown. The name of Pocahontas will always be honoured in Virginia. She was afterwards married to one of the English settlers, and her descendants are living in Virginia to this day.
- 8. I must pass over the remainder of the history of Virginia till the time of the old French war. This began in 1755. The principal event in this war, as far as relates to Virginia, was the defeat of the English general, Braddock, who fell into an ambuscade of the French and Americans, and was killed, with great numbers of his men. Colonel Washington, who was afterwards the celebrated general, gained much reputation in covering the retreat of the routed troops.

QUESTIONS.—1. When was Jamestown settled? 2. What of the Indians? 3, 4, 5. Relate the adventure of Captain Smith with the Indians? 5.7. What of Pocahontas? 8. What of Braddock?

7

CHAP. CLXXV.—AMERICA continued. SETTLEMENT OF THE OTHER COLONIES.

- 1. I SHALL now proceed to speak of the other colonies. The first settlement in New York was made in 1613, on the shores of the Hudson river, where Albany now stands. The city of New York, founded about the same time, was at first called New Amsterdam; it derived its name from the capital of Holland, for the early settlers were natives of that country.
- 2. In 1664, the province of New York was surrendered by the Dutch into the hands of the English. It grew and prospered very fast, and became one of the most powerful of the colonies.
- 3. Pennsylvania was settled in 1681. Its founder was William Penn, a Quaker, and all the earliest settlers likewise belonged to the sect of Quakers. When William Penn arrived in the country, he bought lands of the Indians, and made a treaty with them.
- 4. This treaty was always held sacred. The Indians saw that the Quakers were men of peace, and therefore they were careful never to do them any injury. There are no stories of Indian warfare with the Quakers of Pennsylvania.
- 5. The province of Maryland was given by Charles the First to Lord Baltimore. He was a Roman Catholic, and in 1634, he brought over two hundred people of the same raligion, and made the first settlement in Maryland.

Carolina first began to be permanently settled in 1680. 1729, it was divided into North and South Carolina. first settlement in Georgia was made in 1733. The cipal founder was General James Oglethorpe. He came 1 England with one hundred and sixteen settlers, and in to build the city of Savannah. All the other states 1 been established since England acknowledged the indelence of America.

restions.—1. When and where was the first settlement in New ? What was the city of New York first called? 2. What of the ince of New York? 3. When and by whom was Pennsylvania ad? How did William Penn treat the Indians? 4. What was the equence of his treaty with them? 5. Who gave Maryland to Lord more? What of Lord Baltimore? When did he settle Maryland? hen was Carolina settled? When divided? First settlement in ina? Who founded it? What city did he build? What of the states?

CHAP. CLXXVI.—AMERICA continued.

CAUSES WHICH LED TO THE REVOLUTION.

TE reader will have learned, by the preceding chapters, e whole of the sea-coast, between New Brunswick orida, became covered with colonies, which were all he government of Great Britain. The inhabitants owing numerous.

nen the king of Great Britain and his ministers ne prosperous condition of the colonies, they deterderive some profit from them. For this purpose,



consent.

- 3. They made so strong an opposition to the that parliament was forced to repeal it. But a afterwards laid on tea; and soldiers were sent enforce the payment of the duty.
- 4. In the year 1770, a quarrel took place be these soldiers and the inhabitants of Boston, i Americans were killed and five wounded. E being affrighted by this bloodshed, the peop determined in their resistance.
- 5. In the year 1773, some ships were sent from the colonies, laden with cargoes of tea. Three arrived in the harbour of Boston. One night persons went on board in the disguise of India all the tea overboard.
- 6. When tidings of this event were carried to

CHAP. CLXXVII.—AMERICA continued.

THE AMERICAN WAR.

- 1. THE Americans, being resolved not to pay taxes which were laid on them by the British parliament, now prepared to defend themselves against the soldiers who had been sent from Europe. To manage their affairs they elected a body of men, which was called the Congress.
- 2. The first blood was shed on the night of the 18th of April, 1775, at Lexington, near Boston. The English general, Gage, sent eight hundred soldiers to seize some American cannon and ammunition, at a place called Concord; but the English, assailed on all sides, were obliged to retreat.
- 3. The American army then posted itself on Bunker Hill, which overlooks Boston, and there they raised works, from which they intended to fire on the English garrison and fleet. The English attacked them, and, after a terrible battle, the Americans were driven out; but the English lost an immense number of soldiers.
- 4. It was about a fortnight after this battle that General Washington took the command of the American forces.
- 5. The Americans were so much encouraged by the stand which they had made, that, on the 4th of July, 1776, the Congress declared the United States independent. On their doing this, France and Spain, and then Holland, formed an alliance with the Americans.

- 6. In 1777 the Americans gained a very great ad General Burgoyne advanced against them from Canal a large army, but he was hemmed in, and was computerender at Saratoga to General Gates. This suduced the French to send a fleet and army to a Americans.
- 7. The Americans were placed in great danger, by the treachery of General Arnold, who joined the and had intended to give up to them the important of West Point. On this occasion Major André, a officer, was employed to negotiate with Arnold. taken by the Americans, and executed as a spy.
- 8. Many battles were fought between the two pa most of which the English were conquerors; but impossible for them to put down the general re which they met with in such an extensive country. could keep possession of little more ground than which they stood.
- 9. The final blow to the hopes of the English wa by the surrender of Lord Cornwallis's army at Town, in Virginia, on the 19th of October, 1781. I was, indeed, continued till 1783, but nothing im occurred. In the summer and autumn of that year, British troops sailed homewards.
- 10. Thus you see that the war, which began by the of Lexington, was terminated after having continuing the terminated after having continuing the search of the search of

QUESTIONS.—1. What did the Americans determine on? What did they do? What was the name of the body which they elected? What was that body chosen for? 2. Where and when was the first blood spilt? How did the skirmish terminate? 3. Where did the American army post itself? What took place? 4. When did Washington take the command? 5. What did the Congress do? What did France, Spain, and Holland do? 6. What great advantage did the Americans gain? When, where, and over what British general? 7. How were the Americans placed in great danger? By whom? What British officer was put to death? 8. Were many battles fought? Which party had most success in them? What prevented the English from overcoming the Americans? 9. What was the final blow to the hopes of the English? What English general surrendered, and where? 10. By what battle did the war begin? How long did the war last?

CHAP. CLXXVIII. - AMERICA continued.

AFFAIRS OF THE UNITED STATES SINCE THE REVOLUTION.

- 1. When the war was over, the people of the United States found it necessary to adopt a constitution of government. The present federal constitution was prepared by some of the wisest men in the country. It came into operation in 1789.
- 2. The good and illustrious Washington was the first President. He came into office in 1789, and was re-elected at the end of four years. He died in 1799, at the age of sixty-eight, universally lamented. In 1797, John Adams was chosen to succeed him, and became the second president of the United States.
 - 3. The next president was Thomas Jefferson. He served

during two terms of office, and was succeeded by James Madison in 1809. The most remarkable event of Jefferson's administration was the purchase of Louisiana from France, in the year 1803. This immense territory included the country between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains. It was bought for fifteen millions of dollars. During the administration of Madison, the United States were on ill terms with Great Britain, and there was great reason to fear that hostilities would ensue.

- 4. Accordingly, on the 18th of June, 1812, Congress made a declaration of war. Troops were sent to invade Canada. There were several gallant conflicts on the Canadian frontier; but the Americans were more than once defeated, and did not succeed in conquering the province Several victories were, however, won by the American nav, both on the ocean and the lakes. On land, the English were often successful; and, among other exploits, they captured the American capital, after having defeated a very superior force.
- 5. The last event of the war was the battle of New Orleans. On the morning of the 8th of January, 1815, strong British army advanced to take the city. But the were driven back with immense slaughter by the American under General Jackson. Peace took place in a very sheet time after this battle. The United States have not since he any wars except with the Indian tribes and with Mexica.

 6. In 1817, President Madison retired from the said.

is succeeded by James Munroe. The succeeding presidents re J. Quincy Adams, in 1825; Andrew Jackson, in 1829, rected in 1833; M. Van Buren, in 1837; J. K. Polk, in 1845; Taylor, in 1849; M. Fillmore, in 1850; F. Pierce, in 1853; s. Buchanan, in 1857; A. Lincoln, in 1861, re-elected, 1864. 7. For some years a feeling of uneasiness and disaffection d been growing up between the Northern and Southern ites of America, and in the year 1861 the States of nth Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, and uisiana, and afterwards Virginia, North Carolina, Tenssee, Arkansas, and Texas, determined to secede from the nion, and, under the Presidency of Jefferson Davis, drew a constitution founded on that of the United States. The orthern States being unwilling to submit to the disruption, horrid civil war began, which lasted four years, and ded in the defeat of the Confederate states. In the hour victory, President Lincoln was assassinated by a madman med Booth. This vast country is still in an unsettled state. QUESTIONS.—1. When was the constitution of government formed? Who was the first President? When did he come into office? When Washington's death take place? Effect of his death? When was hn Adams chosen? 3. What did Jefferson purchase of the French? what year? How large a country was it? What did it cost? When s Madison made President? What of the United States during his ninistration? 4. When was war declared? What of wars in Canada? lat of naval battles? What of land battles? Describe the battle of w Orleans. When did it take place? 6. When did Munroe become sident? Mention the others that succeeded him. 7. Name the eding States. What was the consequence of secession?

CHAP. CLXXIX .- AMERICA continued.

GENERAL REMARKS UPON THE HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

- 1. I HAVE now told you a short story about the Unite States of America. You will notice that the first settlemen made by the white people in the United States was at Viginia, in 1607; the next in New York, by the Dutch, in 1613; the next by the Puritans, or, as they are often called the Pilgrims, at Plymouth, in Massachusetts, in 1620.
- 2. Other parts of the country were soon settled, chiefly by people from England; but colonies were established also by Swedes, Germans, and French. Thus the whole country along the Atlantic border became inhabited. By degrees the settlers went farther and farther into the wilderness until towns and cities rose up throughout the whole interior of the land.
- 3. Thus you will observe that, about two hundred and fifty years ago, there was not a white inhabitant throughout that vast country. The Indian tribes were numerous and their whole number, within the present boundary of the United States, might have been two hundred thousand.
- 4. But these lords of the forest gradually disappears before the white people. Many of them were slain in battle with the settlers; the others gradually retired as the forest were cut down and the lands cleared.
 - 5. They lived by hunting wild deer, bears, bullaboo, and

wild turkeys; and, as these animals fled from towns and cities, and took refuge in the forests, so the Indians went with them.

- 6. In this way the red men vanished from the settled portions of the country, and at this day there are few of them to be seen except in the far western wilderness. There herds of wild deer, vast flocks of bisons, bears, wild turkeys, and other wild animals, are to be found, and there is now the home of the Indians.
- 7. Well, as the Indians retired, the white people increased, being all under the government of the King of England. At the time of the revolution they were three millions in number; and, as the king wished to tax them without their consent, they threw off his authority and set up a government for themselves.
- 8. This government, or constitution, was formed in 1789, and the little nation of three millions has now become thirty-two millions strong; of these about one-seventh were slaves; but in 1865 slavery was abolished in all the States.

QUESTIONS.—1. Where and when was the first settlement in the United States? The next? The next? 2. What of other parts of the country? 3. What of the United States two hundred and thirty years ago? What of the Indians? 4, 5. Tell the story of the Indians. 6. Where are they now principally to be seen? What of animals? 7. What of the white people? Their numbers at the time of the revelation? 8. When was the American government completed? Population of the United States at this time? When was alartery abolished.

CHAP. CLXXX.—AMERICA continued.

ABOUT SOUTH AMERICA. EL DORADO, AND THE FOUNTAIN OF TOUTE.

- 1. No sooner had Columbus discovered America than the Pope of Rome claimed it all as his own. None of the Catholic kings of Europe were supposed to have any right to plant colonies there unless his holiness granted them permission.
- 2. Alexander the Sixth was pope at that time. He very generously bestowed one-half of the new world on the King of Spain, and the other half on the King of Portugal. These kings then sent out ships and men, who conquered immense territories, and reduced many of the inhabitants to slavery.
- 3. The Spaniards first took possession of the West Indies. They built the city of Havannah, on the island of Cuba, and the Spanish governor had his residence there. Other nations afterwards took possession of these islands. The great object of all who came to America at this period, was to get gold and silver. The most wonderful stories were told about the abundance of those metals in some parts of the western continent.
- 4. There was supposed to be a kingdom, called El Dorado, or the Gilded, which was thus described:—The king was every day covered with powdered gold, so that he looked like a golden image. The palace of this glittering monarch was built of brilliant marble as white as abow. The pillars of palace were porphyry and alabester. Its entrance we





arded by two lions, who were fastened to a tall column by ains of massive gold.

- 5. After passing the lions, a fountain was seen, from which shed a continual shower of liquid silver, through four large pes of gold. The interior of the palace was too splendid to described.
- 6. It contained an altar of solid silver, on which was an imense golden sun. Lamps were continually burning, and eir dazzling radiance was reflected from innumerable obsts of silver and gold. Such was the splendid fiction, vented by somebody, and believed in Europe.
- 7. Numbers of adventurers went in search of El Dorado, d some pretended that they had really visited this golden 19dom. But it has long since been ascertained that no such gdom ever existed.
 - . Another thing which the Spaniards expected to find in erica, was the Fountain of Youth. Far away beneath the ows of the forest, they believed that there was a founthe bright waters of which would wash away wrinkles, urn grey hair dark again.

rions.—1. What of the Pope of Rome? 2. What did Pope ler do? What of the Kings of Spain and Portugal? 3. What spaniards? What was the great object of all who came to? What of gold and silver? 4, 5, 6. Describe the kingdom ado as it was supposed to exist. 8. Describe the Fountain

CHAP. CLXXXI.—AMERICA continued.

history of the Mexican Territories. Sultimala.

- 1. Though there was no El Dorado in America, there was gold enough to satisfy even the Spaniards, if such rapacious people ever could be satisfied. The empire of Mexico contained immense riches.
- 2. This country is in the southern part of North America. It extends across from the Gulf of Mexico to the Pacific Ocean. Its capital city, which is likewise called Mexico, is one of the most magnificent in the world.
- 3. When America was first discovered, the city of Mexico was even more splendid than it is now. It had stately temples and houses, which were profusely ornamented with gold. Its inhabitants were more civilized than any other natives of America.
- 4. In the year 1519, Fernando Cortez, a Spaniard, h-vaded Mexico with only about six hundred men. But as his followers were iron armour, and had muskets and cannot, they were able to fight whole armies of the Mexicana.
- 5. The Emperor of Mexico was named Montesons. He received Cortez and his men with great civility, for its was afraid to quarrel with them. But, after a short time Cortez threw Montezuma into prison, and loaded him with chains.
 - 6. Finding himself in so unhappy a situation, Musicana

onsented to become a vassal of the King of Spain. But the fexicans raised an insurrection, and, when Montezuma ndsavoured to quiet them, they uttered shouts of scorn and nger.

- 7. So offended were they that they discharged arrows and tones at him. One arrow struck poor Montezuma in the reast, and stretched him on the ground. He would not after the would to be dressed, and, in a few days, this illuted emperor died.
- 8. The Mexicans elected Guatimozin, son-in-law of Monzuma, to succeed him. He made a vigorous attack on the paniards, and drove them from the city of Mexico. But ortez soon came back with an army, and conquered the hole country.
- 9. It has been affirmed that Cortez and his soldiers killed our millions of the Mexicans in completing the conquest of he country. He pretended that his only object was to conert the people to the Christian religion. But he and his oldiers acted like fiends rather than Christians.
- 10. From the time of its conquest by Cortez, the Mexican mpire continued under the government of Spain till the car 1810. A revolution then took place.
- 11. In 1813, the Mexican provinces declared themselves see and independent, the constitution being dated October, 1824. One of these provinces was Texas, which has been dmitted into the American Union.
- 12. The country called Guatimala is an independent re-

public: the city of Guatimala is its capital. It has been once destroyed by an earthquake, but it is now a large place.

13. Mexico was drenched in blood from the struggles of the rival chieftains, each seeking supreme power, but in 1863 the French army gained the ascendancy, and on the 10th of July the chief men, acting under the advice of the French General, offered the crown to Maximilian, brother of the Emperor of Austria. He agreed to accept it if the offer was confirmed by the Mexican people; and, in accordance with their wish, he accepted the crown on the 3rd of October, 1863. The new Emperor devoted himself to the good of his subjects; but, on the withdrawal of the French soldiers, the rival factions gained head, and after a struggle which lasted many months the imperialists were defeated, principally through the treachery of General Lopez, and the Emperor Maximilian with two of his generals was shot by order of Escobedo on the 19th of June, 1867. Thus Mexico again presents a scene of anarchy and blood-hed.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of Gold in Mexico? 2. What of Mexico? Capital? 3. Describe the city of Mexico. 4. When did Cortex invade Mexico? 5. What of Montesuma? Cortex? 6. What did Montesuma do? What of the Mexicans? 7. Fate of Montesuma? 8. What did Guatimozin do? Cortex? 9. What is said of Cortex? What excuse did he give for his cruelty? 10. How long was the Mexican empire under the government of Spain? What took place in 1810? 11. What in 1813? What of Texas? 12. What of Guatimals? 13. Who conquered Mexico? To whom was the crown effered? When? What of the Emperor? When was he murdered?

CHAP. CLXXXII.—America continued. SPANISH PERUVIAN TERRITORIES.

- 1. At the present day, Peru is bounded north by the republic of the Equator, east by Brazil, south by Bolivia and the Pacific Ocean, and west by the Pacific. But it was much larger when the Spaniards first invaded it.
- 2. The sovereigns of this empire were called Incas, and the Peruvians believed that their first Inca was a child of the sun. The inhabitants were worshippers of the sun.
- 3. Peru contained many magnificent cities, and gold was more abundant even than in Mexico. And, therefore, the Spaniards determined to make themselves masters of the country.
- 4. The first invader was Francis Pizarro. In 1531 he marched into Peru, and took the Inca Atabalipa prisoner in his own palace. To regain his freedom he offered Pizarro as much gold as would fill a spacious hall of his palace, piled as high as he could reach.
- 5. The gold was delivered, but Pizarro refused to give Atabalipa his freedom. He was not satisfied with the Inca's treasure, but was determined to have his blood. So he condemned him to be strangled and burnt.
- 6. When he had conquered the Peruvians, Pizarro quarrelled with Almagro, one of his chief officers. They made war upon each other, and Pizarro caused Almagro to be beheaded. Soon afterwards he was himself murdered.

- 7. In the course of time, the Peruvian empire was divided into several provinces. All of them were under the government of Spain. The Spanish territories comprise nearly all the western part of South America.
- 8. But the kingdom of Spain became so weak that it lost its authority over these colonies. The first resistance to the government was made while Joseph Bonaparte was King of Spain; and the people would not return to their allegiance when the former king was again on the throne.
- 9. The different states in America, which were once Spanish provinces, are called, the United Mexican States, the Republic of Central America, New Grenada, Venezuela, Equator, Peru, Bolivia, Chili, Buenos Ayres, Uruguay, and Paraguay. Most of them are in a very unsettled condition, and torn with civil wars.

QUESTIONS.—1. When was Peru conquered? What of Peru at the present time? What of it when the Spaniards first invaded it?
2. What of the native sovereigns of Peru? The people? 3. What did Peru contain? What did the Spaniards determine to do? 4. When did Pizarro go to Peru? Who was the Inca? What did he do?
5. Fate of Atabalipa? 6. What of Pizarro and Almagro? What became of Pizarro? 7. What of the Peruvian empire? What of the Spanish territories? 8. What of the kingdom of Spain? The people?
9. What of the states in America once Spanish provinces?

CHAP. CLXXXIII.—AMERICA continued,

ACCOUNT OF THE BRAZILIAN TERRITORIES.

- 1. The vast country of Brazil is bounded north by New Grenada, Venezuela, and Guiana; east by the Atlantic Ocean; south by the Atlantic, Uruguay, and Paraguay; and west by Bolivia, Peru, and the republic of Equator. It is larger than the whole United States together.
- 2. When the Spaniards were making conquests in other parts of America, the Portuguese came to Brazil. It is said that, near the river Amazon, they found a nation of women, whose lives were spent in war.
- 3. We do not read that the Portuguese committed such horrible cruelties as the Spaniards did. The reason was, that the natives of Brazil possessed but little gold; and the Portuguese hardly thought it worth their while to colonize the country.
- 4. During many years the government of Portugal was accustomed to send nobody but criminals thither; so that to be sent to Brazil was considered almost as bad as being sent out of the world.
- 5. In 1548, a multitude of Jews were banished to Brazil. They planted the sugar-cane there, and successfully cultivated it. When the King of Portugal found that the country was rich and fruitful, he sent over a governor, in order than he might not lose his share of the wealth.

- 6. France. Spain, and Holland, likewise attempted to get possession of Brazil. But the Portuguese resisted them, and finally became sole masters of the country. Perhaps, if the other nations had known of the hidden riches of Brazil, they would not have given up their claims so easily.
- 7. A long time after the settlement of the country, valuable mines of gold were discovered. Considerable quantities of this precious metal are also found in the beds of the river mixed with sand and gravel. The topaz and the diamond are sometimes seen glittering among the gold.
- 8. The Rio Pardo, though it is a very small and shallow stream, produces a great number of diamonds. Other rivers are likewise enriched with them. Negro slaves are employed in washing the sand and gravel of these rivers, and when one of them finds a very large diamond, he receives his freedom.
- 9. In 1806, the King of Portugal removed to Brazil, and established his court in the city of Rio Janeiro. Fiftees years afterwards he returned to Lisbon. His son Pedro was then proclaimed emperor of Brazil.
- 10. In 1831, the Brazilians became discontented with the government of Pedro. He therefore gave up the imperior crown to his son, who was then only five years old. The boy was styled the Emperor of Brazil; and during the government was carried on by a council segency. He has assumed the regal authority as Pedro I

Questions.—1. Boundaries of Brazil? Extent? 2. What of the Portuguese? Amazous? 3. Why were the Portuguese not as cruel as the Spaniards? 4. Who were sent to Brazil? 5. What happened in 1548? What of Jews? 6. What of other countries? 7. What were discovered in Brazil? 8. What of the Rio Pardo? What of negro slaves? 9. When did the King of Portugal remove to Brazil? Where did he establish his court? When did he return to Lisbon? What of his son, Pedro? 10. What of the Brazilians in the year 1831? What did Pedro do? How is Brazil now governed?

CHAP. CLXXXIV.—AMERICA continued.

THE WEST INDIES.

1. I MUST not close my story about America without giving you some little account of the West India Islands, lying in the Atlantic Ocean, between North and South America. These consist of three clusters, called the Bahamas, the Antilles, and the Caribbees. The Bahamas are the most northerly of the three groups, and lie near to Florida.

They are about six hundred in number. Most of them are small, consisting of sand and rocks, and are uninhabited by man.

2. These, however, are the resort of a great variety of seafowl. Many of the birds which visit the lakes and shores of the United States in summer, retire to these lonely islands in winter, where they find a secure and pleasant abode. The Bahama islands belong to Great Britain, and contain about seventeen thousand inhabitants. The principal are, Turks' islands, Providence, and San Salvador, on

Cat island. This last, which the natives called Guanahana, was that which Columbus first discovered.

- 3. The Antilles, occupying the middle portion of the Wes Indies, consists of Cuba, which is the largest, and belongs to Spain; Hayti, or St. Domingo, which is independent, as governed by blacks; Porto Rico, which belongs to Spain Jamaica, which belongs to Great Britain; and a few smalls islands.
- 4. The Caribbee islands are very numerous, and lisouth-easterly of the others. They stretch from Porto Ric in a semicircular group to the shores of South America They belong to different European governments. The most celebrated of these islands are, Martinique, Barbados St. Thomas, Tobago, St. Lucia, St. Vincent, Guadalosp Antigua, St. Christopher's, Dominica, Santa Cruz, at Trinidad.
- 5. The climate of the West Indies is that of perpet summer. Frost and snow never come to visit them. ' trees are ever clothed with leaves, and many of the ab and plants continue at all times to be adorned with soms.
- 6. The fruits which are common with us, such as a pears, cherries, and peaches, are unknown in these rebut eranges, figs, lemons, pine-apples, and many other things, are abundant.
 - :E. The people do not cultivate Indian corn, whe

vhich they extract sugar and molasses, and they cultivate offee, cotton, indigo, tobacco, cocoa, all-spice, and other hings.

- 8. The forests contain mahogany, lignum vite, iron-wood, and other woods useful in the arts. Among the birds are parrots of various kinds, some of which are not bigger than a blue-bird. A friend of mine made me a present of one of hese little fellows a few years since. Instead of sitting apon his perch, I have known him to hang by his claws to the top wires of the cage, with his head downwards, and hus remain during the whole night.
- 9. Among the quadrupeds of the West Indies are some surious little monkeys and several kinds of lizards. The chameleon is the most interesting of these. He was formerly supposed to live on air, and to have the power of changing his colour at will. But it is now ascertained that he often nakes a sly meal upon insects that come in his way, and that his colour does not vary more than that of several other animals of a similar kind.
- 10. Although the West Indies are never disturbed by winter, they are often visited by terrible hurricanes. These constinues come so suddenly as to tear the sails from the masts of wessels, and often overturn the houses and trees mean the land.

QUESTIONS.—1. Where are the West India islands situated? Of what three groups do they consist? What of the Bahaman islands.

2. What of sea-fowl? To whom do the Bahamas belong? are the principal ones? 3. What can you say of the Antilles? 4 of the Caribbee islands? The principal ones? 5. What of the of the West Indies? 6. Fruits? 7. Productions? 8. Forests? 9. What of monkeys? The chameleon? 10. What of hurrier

CHAP, CLXXXV.—AMERICA continued.

WEST INDIES CONTINUED.

- 1. If you were to visit the West Indies at the preser you would find them inhabited by Europeans and descendants, together with a great many negroes. By would meet with none of the native Indians: these has since disappeared.
- 2. You already know that Columbus first discover of the Bahamas, to which he gave the name of St. Sal and which is now called Cat Island. Here he found a many people, who appear to have been nearly the sa the Indians which formerly inhabited America.
- 3. After leaving St. Salvador, Columbus visited Cub St. Domingo. Both of these were thronged with In It is supposed that Cuba alone contained several mil They appeared to live very happily, for the climate was and the soil fruitful. They received Columbus with and rendered him every service in their power.

- e thought of the cruel consequences which were soon to bw.
- . Not many years after the discovery of the West India nds, the largest and finest of them were taken possession by the Spanish government. The Indians were a gentle and were easily subjugated. The Spaniards did not not not regard them as human beings, but rather as wild nals who were to be exterminated. They shot them no by thousands, and even trained bloodhounds to pursue no.
- In this way, the numerous islanders who once swarmed bees upon every hill-side, and in every valley of these utiful regions, were reduced to a very small number. st of these were treated like slaves, and many of them e compelled to work in mines, where they soon perished n hard labour, to which they were unaccustomed, and for want of that free air which Heaven had sent them bethe Europeans came to deprive them of it.
- . Thus, by degrees, the native West Indians vanished, their fair lands came into the possession of various Euron governments. Spain held Cuba and Porto Rico in her grasp. England got possession of Jamaica, the Berlas, and some other islands. France had St. Domingo rtinique, Guadaloupe, and several others. Some of the ller islands fell into the hands of the Dutch, Danes.

- 7. The first object of the Europeans, after the of America, was to obtain gold and silver. They imagine that all the hills and mountains in this were filled with these precious metals. But this il vanished, and in the West Indies the people beging the soil instead of digging into the bosom of for gold and silver.
- 8. They discovered that the land was peculiarl the raising of sugar-cane, oranges, pine-apples, productions of a tropical climate. To these, then voted their attention, and the lands soon becam ductive. In order to till them, the people sent for negroes, who were brought by thousands a thousands, and compelled to work as slaves. New labour, at the present day, is performed by ne they are now free.

QUESTIONS.—1. How are the West Indies inhabited? Cat Island? What people did Columbus find there? 3. did he next visit? What of the Indians? 4, 5. What of government? How did the Spaniards treat the Indians islands did Spain obtain possession of? England? Fra of smaller islands? 7. What did the Europeans expect t dant in America? Result of these expectations? 8. Widiscover? What of negro slaves?

CHAP. CLXXXVI.—AMERICA confinued.

THE WEST INDIES CONTINUED.

- 1. I SHAIL not undertake to tell you of all the interesting events which have occurred in the West Indies. Several of these islands have often changed hands, sometimes belonging to one government and sometimes to another. They have frequently been shaken by earthquakes, and often desolated by whirlwinds, but of these events I cannot tell you now.
- 2. I must not, however, overlook the story of Hayti. This fine island was discovered by Columbus on his first voyage, and here he left a part of his men, who made the first European settlement on this side of the Atlantic. The sland was called Hayti by the natives, and Hispaniola by he Spaniards. The settlement increased rapidly, and soon whole island became subject to Spain. In after times a French obtained possession of a portion of the country, it, until about forty years ago, it was shared between the each and Spanish governments.
 - But the negro slaves had become much more numerous, the white inhabitants, and, in 1791, they rose against masters. France, at this time, was in a state of revolution, and could afford no aid to put down the insurrection, regroes, therefore, slaughtered the white people by thoupillaging their houses, and then setting them on the

escaped, but a large proportion were killed.

- 4. The negroes now considered themselves independent, and began to form a government of their own. After various revolutions, the whole island was formed into a sort of republic, the officers of which were negroes or mulattoes; and so it continues to this day. The people are, on the whole, pretty well governed, and the state of society is improving. Nearly all the inhabitants are coloured people, but many of them are intelligent, and carry on various concerns of agriculture and commerce with skill and success.
- 5. Before I leave the West Indies, I must say a few worls about the buccaniers, a famous set of sea-robbers who infested these islands during the seventeenth century. These at first consisted of men from England and France, who settled on the western coast of St. Domingo and the neighbouring island of Tortuga, about the year 1630.
- 6. For a while, they lived by hunting wild animals, but when they became numerous, they procured vessels, and went forth upon the sea to rob and plunder whomsoever they might meet. This business succeeded so well, that a great many desperate adventurers from all parts of Europe united themselves to the buccaniers. They therefore procured large vessels, which were equipped in the best manner for attack. These were filled with daring seamen, and commanded to bold leaders.

44

7. In this manner the buccaniers became very formidable.

Their vessels hovered in the track of the merchant ships.

Their vessels hovered in the neighbourhood of a barn-rate.

pounce down upon whatever might come in their way. They often captured ships laden with rich merchandise, and sometimes with gold and silver.

- 8. In this way they amassed great wealth; and such was their power at one time, that they made successful attacks upon large cities, sometimes pillaging the inhabitants, and sometimes laying them under contribution. But at length the European governments were roused, by the violence and cruelty of these robbers, to measures of retaliation. They sent large vessels to cruise in the neighbourhood of the West Indies, and, after many struggles, the buccaniers were finally exterminated.
 - 9. In later times the West Indian seas have been infested \mathcal{T} pirates, who have captured a good many trading vessels, at they are now seldom met with.

CUESTIONS.—1. What of some of the West India islands? 2. Who vered Hayti? What settlement was made? Names of the island? That country did it become subject? What of France? 3. What done in 1791? 4. What of the negroes? Their government? of society? 5. What of the buccaniers? Where were they mally from? Where and in what year did they settle? 6. How bey live for a while? What did they afterwards do? By whom they joined? 7. What of the ships of the buccaniers? 8. What power of these pirates? How were they finally subdued? 9. of other pirates?

CHAP. CLXXXVII.—AMERICA continued.

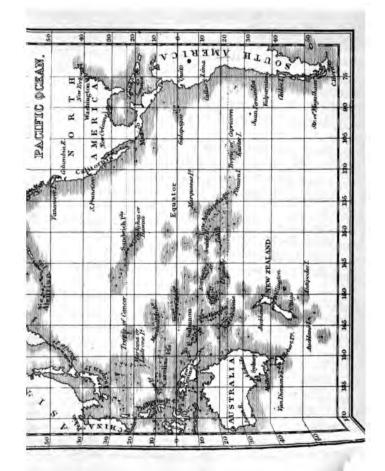
CILLO	ODOG	1 01	AMDI	HUA.				4.10
ICELAND and Greenland set		•	• "	•	•	•	•	860
Christianity introduced into	Icela	nd	•	•	•	•	•	981
Severe winter in Greenland	, whic	h de	stroye	d the	colo	ny	• 1	1408
Columbus born	•		•	•		•		1443
America discovered .	•		•	•	• `	•		1492
Cortez invaded Mexico .			•		•			1519
French settlements made in	Cana	ıda	•	•	•	•		1524
Pizarro goes to Peru .			•		•	•		1531
First settlement in Virginia	at Ja	mes	town	•				1607
Quebec founded						•		1608
First settlement in New Yo	rk							1613
Settlement at Plymouth							•	1620
Buccaniers first assemble at	St. D	omi	ngo ar	ad To	rtuge		•	1630
Maryland settled			٠.		•			1634
First settlement in Connect	icut	•			•	•	•	1635
Providence settled .	•						-	1636
English get possession of N	ew Yo	ork	•			•	•	1664
King Philip's war begins			•		-	•	•	1675
Carolina settled	•	-	•		•	•	•	1680
Pennsylvania settled .						•	•	1681
The Carolinas divided						•	•	1729
Georgia founded			•	•	•	•	•	1733
Capture of Louisbourg .		•		•		•	•	1745
Old French war begins .		-	•		•	•	•	1755
Capture of Louisbourg by V	Noife	•	•		•	•	•	1758
Quebec taken by the Englis		•	•		•	•	•	1759
Btamp act passed	_	•	•		•	•	•	1765
Affray between the soldiers	and i	nhal	itants	of B	ostor	•	•	1770
Pestruction of tea.			•			•	•	1773
harrier to the To-	-volnt	anoi	ZA 4187		•	•.	•	1,775
description of the Ka	A Pa	ator	-, \		•	•	. `	. 17

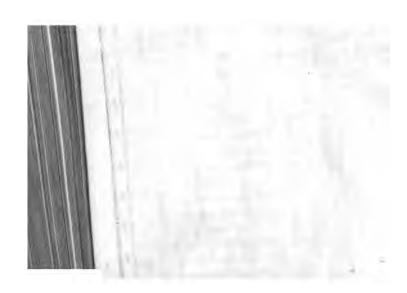
	1.6.8.						<u> </u>
AMERICA.							501
							A,D,
te came to America	•	•	•		•	•	1777
ten by Cornwallis .	•	•	•	•	•	•	1780
r of Cornwallis to Washi	ingtor	l	•	•	•	•	1780
ween Great Britain and							1783
ion of the United States	went	into (opera	tion	•		1789
on elected president			•	•	•		1789
ams elected president			•	•			1797
Washington							1799
elected president .				. •	•	•	1801
of Louisiana				•	•		1803
'ortugal goes to Brazil					•	•	1806
elected president .							1809
n in Mexico					•	•	1810
tates declare war against							1812
provinces become free			•			•	1813
New Orleans							1815
unroe elected president.			•				1817
Jackson elected presiden	t .		• .				1829
ro gives up the crown of			-		•	•	1881
Polk elected president							1845
Zachary Taylor elected p	reside		-		•		1849
'illmore elected presiden							1850
Rosas, dictator of Buenos							1852
General Urquiza overth	•	•		•	•	,	1852
'ebster died			•	•	•	•	1852
tion of General Pierce, p	reside	nt of	the Ti	nited	Stat	• eg	1853
uble in Kansas about sla							1856
ichanan elected presiden	•			•	•	•	1857
d insurrection of slaves			Form		•	•	1859
between the Northern an					:	•	1861
Lincoln, president, assa					-	•	. <i>1882</i> 1001
stablished and Slavery						the.	
ad States	WOOT	19911aı	Citt	oaku	ou.	400	1865
AL NIBEROS	•	•	•	•		•	-

CHAP. CLXXXVIII.—OCEANIA.

ABOUT OCEANIA. THE MALAYSIAN ISLANDS.

- 1. HAVING now related the history of Asia, Africa, Europe, and America, the reader will probably think that my Universal History ought to close here. But, as an Irishman would say, there is a *fifth quarter* of the globe on which I must now employ my pen.
- 2. America ought no longer to be called the New World; for there is a newer one, composed of the islands which is in the Pacific and Indian Oceans. I have told you that the name of Oceania has been given to this region. If all the islands were put together, they would cover a space of at least four millions of square miles.
- 3. There are three divisions of Oceania. Those islands which lie in the Indian Ocean, near the continent of Asia, are called Malaysia. The largest of them are Borneo, Sumatra, and Java. Scarcely any thing has been written about the history of Malaysia; for the islands are chiefly inhabited by the natives, who keep no record of passing events, and have no desire to know the deeds of their forefathers.
- 4. The history of Java is best known, but it is not very important or interesting. It was discovered by the Portugues in the year 1510. They found it an exceedingly fertile island, producing abundance of sugar, coffee, rice, pepper, upon





- d delicious fruits. There were also mines of gold, silver, amonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- 5. The island is six hundred and fifty miles in length. on after its discovery, the Dutch got possession of a large rtion of it. They built the city of Batavia, on the north-extern coast of the island.
- 6. The city is situated on a low marshy plain, and canals stagnant water are seen in many of the streets. But the ifices were so splendid that Batavia was called the Queen the East. Its beauty was much increased by the trees at overshadowed the streets and canals.
- 7. In the year 1780, the population amounted to a huned and sixty thousand. People from all the different parts the world were among them. But the Europeans were fewest in number, although the government was in their ids.
 - . Of late years, Batavia has been fast going to decay. climate is so unhealthy that strangers are very liable to ttacked by dreadful fevers. Sometimes a vessel loses her e crew by death.
 - In the year 1811, the English took possession of the l of Java. They kept it till 1816, and then restored it former owners. The Dutch are said to exercise great by over the natives. The population is six millions.

rions.—2. What of Oceania? Extent of Oceania? S. What vsia? The natives? 4. What of Java? When was it dis-What are its productions? Mines? 5. Length of Java?

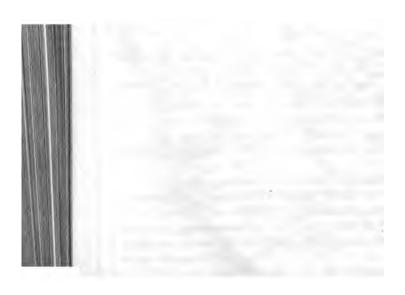
Who built Batavia? 6. Describe the city. 7. Population of Ban's in 1780? 8. What of this city of late years? Its climate? 2. Will happened in 1811? In 1816? What of the Dutch?

CHAP. CLXXXIX.—OCBANIA continued.

THE AUSTRALIAN DIVISIONS OF OCEANIA.

- 1. The second division of Oceania is called Australia. This comprises Australia, New Guinea, Van Diemen's Land and other islands in the vicinity. Australia is an immensisland, containing three millions of square miles, and is about as large as Europe.
- 2. The original natives of Australia are described at the most degraded people in the world. They are black, and have very lean arms and legs. Their features have a resultance to the monkey tribe, and they are said to be not made handsomer or more intelligent than the ourang-outangs found in the Malaysian islands.
- 3. This great island was discovered by the Dutch in 16¹⁰ but the whole of it is now a territory of Great British Captain James Cook, the celebrated navigator, took possession of it in 1770.
- 4. It is now divided into six colonies. North Aminst Questuland, New South Wales, Victoria, South Aminst and West Australia. New South Wales in the oldest began to be wettled in 1778. It was then called Beauty ...





- 5. The first colonists were not a very respectable sort of people. The English government conceived the plan of sending criminals to New South Wales, instead of keeping them in jail, or sending them to the gallows. Accordingly, shiploads were transported every year.
- 6. This cannot be considered a severe punishment, for the soil of New South Wales is fertile, and the climate is delightful. Perhaps the English would have acted more wisely if they had transported the honest poor people, who were starving at home.
- 7. But, during many years, there were hardly any honest men in the new colony. Few of the inhabitants felt any reluctance to commit crimes, or were ashamed to be found out; for they knew that their neighbours were as bad as themselves:
- 8. In later years, however, the people began to improve. The children of the convicts were now growing up; and their parents had taught them to be more virtuous than they themselves had been.
- 9. A young girl, who was born in New Holland, was once asked whether she would like to go to England. "Oh, no!" said she; "I should be afraid to go there, for the people are all thieves!" The child knew that a gang of thieves arrived in every ship which came from England, and she naturally supposed that the English were all thieves alike.
 - 10. Criminals continued to be transported from Emgland

till quite recently; and they became so numerous that it was found necessary to plant new colonies of them. The first batch of convicts was shipped to New South Wales in 1758. The colony was relieved from this infliction in 1840. In 1862 there were nearly three hundred thousand acres of land under cultivation, and more than six millions enclosed that were not cultivated. There were twenty-one coal-mines, and fifteen other mines of copper, lead, zinc, and silver, in operation. The population in 1861 was about three hundred and fifty thousand.

i

M

14

:6

3

Έ

1

(;

رتا

ş.

18

ь

k

lig.

- 11. Queensland formed a part of New South Wales, until it was erected into a separate colony in 1853. It comprises the whole north-eastern portion of the Australian continent, and all the adjacent islands in the gulf of Carpentaria, and has an area of six hundred and seventy-eight thousand square miles.
- 12. Most of the productions of both temperate and tropical climates can be cultivated with success. It possesses coal and other mines, and the climate being favourable, it will probably become the future cotton-producing country for the manufacturers of England.

QUESTIONS.—1. What is called Australia? What is the size of New Holland? 2. What of the natives? 3. When and by whom was New Holland discovered? Who now hold it in possession? When was it taken by Captain Cook? 4. What of the three colonies of New Holland? When was New South Wales settled? What was the settlement called? 5. Who were the first coloniets? Who were sent every par from England to Botany Bay? 7. What can be said of the coloniets for some years? 8. What of them in later years? 9. Relatation

anecdote of the young New Holland girl. 10. How long were convicts sent to New South Wales? How much land is in cultivation? How enclosed? What of the mines? The population? 11. What of Queensland? Its area? 12. Productions? Its probable future?

TASMANIA, SOUTH AUSTRALIA, AND NEW ZEALAND.

- 1. Tasmania, formerly called Van Dieman's Land, was discovered by the navigator Tasman in 1642, and partially explored by Captain Cook. It was appropriated for the transport of convicts from Great Britain and from New South Wales (of which colony it was a dependency) in 1803, and so remained till 1853, when transportation was abolished. This island lies south of New Holland, and is two hundred miles in length. The population is ninety thousand, and the area twenty-two thousand six hundred and twenty-nine square miles.
- 2. The mineral resources of Tasmania are supposed to be very extensive, but, as yet, they have not been fully developed. Gold and coal mining have made the greatest progress. Veins of coal are found in nearly every part of the colony. The coal-mine of Mount St. Nicholas is estimated to occupy a space of fourteen square miles. The gold obtained up to 1861 was valued at seven millions one hundred and thirty-one thousand one hundred and fifty pounds sterling. Iron is said to abound all over the colony.
- 3. It is in the southernmost part of Australia, at first named the Port Philip district, because it was reached from a fine harbour so called but now the Victoria province, that

so many people have located, who left England, and other parts of the world, to dig the gold which was found in 1850 to be so very abundant at the foot of the mountains.

- 4. South Australia is bounded on the north by Central North Australia, and on the south by the ocean. It is eight hundred and thirty-four miles in length along the eastern boundary, four hundred and seventeen along the western boundary, and five hundred and thirty miles in breadth, having an area of about three hundred thousand square miles. The population in 1861 was one hundred and twenty-six thousand eight hundred and thirty.
- 5. South Australia was first colonized from Great Britain in 1836, by emigrants sent out under the auspices of the South Australian Colonization Society, which had obtained a grant of the lands in the colony from the British Government, on condition that these lands should not be sold at less than one pound per acre, the proceeds to be applied to the emigration of agricultural labourers.
- 6. The mineral wealth of South Australia consists, as for as is yet discovered, chiefly in copper. In the year 1862 there were the following mines in active operation, viz.:—

60 Copper 6 Lead 1 Gold

3 Copper and Lead 3 Silver and Lead

but only one-half of these were at work in the early part of 1863. The largest of the mines is the Burra Burra Copper Mine, which employs about one thousand persons.

- 7. The colony of New Zealand consists of a group of three clands, known as the North, Middle, and South, or Stewart's sland; the latter being uninhabited. The whole group is early one thousand miles long and two hundred broad, having a coast line which extends over one thousand leagues. The area of the country is estimated at about eighty millions facres.
- 8. New Zealand was first visited by Captain Cook in the ear 1769. If my young friends have never read the very steresting narrative of Cook's voyages round the world, I ould strongly advise them to do so without delay; they will ad of many strange adventures, and will be better able to rm an opinion of the progress of the various places since he sited them.
- 9. The population of this colony has increased very rapidly ce the discovery of the gold diggings. Mineral stores of nense extent are believed to exist in New Zealand. In 3 war broke out between the natives and the colonists, h is now (1864) happily at an end, the natives having itted to the government.
 - estions.—1. What was the former name of Tasmania? Its disr? Its explorer? Population? 2. Mineral resources? Where is
 md? The largest coal mine? Its extent? What of gold? Iron?
 re did the gold-diggers go? Its former name? 4. How is South
 a bounded? Its dimensions? Area? Population? 5. How
 1? 6. What of its mineral wealth? Number of mines in operThe largest number of people employed? 7. Of what does New
 onsist? Its extent? Area? 8. By whom first visited? 2. What
 ulation? The mineral stores? The war? When did is

CHAP. CXC.—OCEANIA continued. POLYNESIA. THE SANDWICH ISLANDS.

- 1. The third division of Oceania is called Polynesia. It consists of many groups of small islands, which are scattered over a large extent of the Pacific Ocean. None of them are inhabited by civilized people.
- 2. The Sandwich Islands, which were discovered by Captain Cook in 1778, are among the most important in Polynesia. They lie about five thousand miles eastward of China, and two thousand eight hundred west of Mexico. Hawaii, or Owhyee, is the largest: it is about half the size of Wales, and is remarkable for its volcanoes. One of these, Mowna Loa, is 13,650 feet high. A tremendous eruption of this mountain took place in 1855. The climate is healthy, and the soil productive.
- 3. Cook found them inhabited by a race of people whose forms were very beautiful, although their complexions were darker than our own. They appeared to be of a gay, friendly, and sociable disposition, and they thought him to be a god.
- 4. But there were some shocking customs among them. They were in the habit of feasting upon human flesh, and offering human sacrifices to their idols. They were also great thieves, and had many other vices.
- 5. The natives at first behaved in a very friendly manner to Captain Cook. But, after some time, a party of them stole one of the boats belonging to his vessel. The captain was

- 1 shore, intending to take the king of Hawaii prisoner, and sep him till the boat should be returned.
- 6. But, when he had landed, the natives mustered in great ambers. Captain Cook found it necessary to retreat towards sown men, who were waiting for him in a boat near the core. The natives followed him, shouting, throwing stones, and brandishing their weapons.
- 7. Captain Cook pointed his musket at them, but it only ade them more tumultuous and violent. He then took aim id shot the foremost native dead. In a moment, before the roke of his musket had blown away, the natives rushed son him. One of them beat him down with a club, and then abbed him with a dagger. His men fired their muskets the natives, but could not rescue him.
- 3. The Sandwich Islands soon after became the resort of ale-ships, and of all other vessels that voyaged in that to of the Pacific Ocean; and Hononolu, one of the smaller ads, has now become important, as it lies in the great line ommerce between California, China, and Australasia. the inhabitants did not derive any advantage from their course with civilized people.

On the contrary, they became a great deal more vicious they were before. They contracted so many diseases heir numbers were reduced from four hundred thousand than a hundred and fifty thousand. There was reason that the islands would be depopulated.

Some English and American missionaries crossed the

ocean, in hopes to save these poor islanders from destruction. They preached the gospel to them, and established schools, in which the natives were taught to read the Bible.

- 11. Kaahumana, the queen-regent of the Sandwich Islands, adopted the Christian religion. By her assistance, the missionaries met with great success. A number of schools were established. It appeared probable that the whole people would be civilized and christianized.
- 12. But Kaahumana died, and her death was a great misfortune to the Sandwich Islands. Many of the natives relapsed into their former vices. But the missionaries are still labouring earnestly for their good; and, unless their efforts are successful, the people of the Sandwich Islands will finally be blotted from the earth by their own vices.
- 13. The Ladrones are about twenty in number, and are situated fourteen hundred miles east of the Philippines. They were discovered by Magalhaens, a Portuguese navigator in the Spanish service, about 1521, and were named by him Ladrones, in consequence of the pilfering propensities of the natives; Ladrones, in the Spanish language, signifying thieves. They were afterwards called the Marianne Islands, in honour of the queen of Spain, wife of Philip the Fourth.
- 14. The Carolinas (Islands) are situated about five hundred miles further south, and lie nearly midway between Japan and Australia. They form a vest group, extending cast and west through a distance of two thousand five hundred miles, and were named after Charles the Second of Spain.

35

- 15. The principal vegetable productions of these islands are the cocoa-palm, the bread-fruit tree, the screw-pine, the yam, the tara, and the sugar-cane, bananas, plantains, &c. The natives of Polynesia esteem the cocoa-palm as their chief dependence, and, as you will see, they have reason to do so. The cocoa-palm furnishes the shade beneath which they repose; they eat the fruit, and the juice of the nut affords them a delicious beverage.
- 16. The shells of the nuts are formed into goblets, with the boughs baskets are made, the trunks serve for fire-wood, and from the fibres fishing-lines and cords are manufactured; their huts are thatched with the branches; their canoes forced through the water with paddles made of the wood; and thus every part of the tree is of value to them.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of Polynesia? Its inhabitants? 2. Which are the most important islands of the group? Who discovered these islands in 1778? Which is the largest of the Sandwich Islands? For what is Owhyhee remarkable? When did the great eruption of Mowna Loa take place? 3. What people did Captain Cook find inhabiting the Sandwich Islands? 4. What were some of their customs? 5. What took place between the natives and Captain Cook? 6. What did Cook find it necessary to do? Relate what then happened. 8. What ships soon resorted to the Sandwich Islands? What was the consequence of the intercourse of the natives with the whites? 10. What of English and American missionaries? 11. What of Kaahumana? 12. Consequence of her death? What of the missionaries? 13. What of the Ladrones? Their discovery? Why so named? Their name afterwards? 14. What of the Carolinas? Their extent? 15. Productional for the employed?

UNIVERSAL RISTORY. :=iands> CXCI.—OCEANIA continued. THE SOCIETY ISLANDS. ireary sei Tur. Polynein. Tur. glance at which is the standard miles south of the solution. Lad not si And with Islands see north of Lapling is called Lapling return. in circulity in circulity in circulity 7. A Louitains Liesenis Pusty th and is intrapited by aking · .. Lart Land mark and marked to Polytical COMM! $e^{i_{1}i_{2}^{*}C}$ The second Britis

their time so pleasantly that they were very reluctant to depart.

- 6. They desired to spend their whole lives in these sunny islands, instead of wandering any more over the wide and dreary sea. When the Bounty sailed, they cast many a sad glance at the pleasant shores which they were leaving. They had not sailed many days before they formed a resolution to return.
- 7. A young man, named Christian, was an officer on board the Bounty. He was not on good terms with Lieutenant Bligh, and he incited the crew to mutiny against their commander, and take possession of the vessel.
- 8. One morning, before sunrise, Christian and his associates entered Lieutenant Bligh's cabin while he was asleep. They bound his hands behind his back, threatening him with death if he made the least resistance. He was then put into a leaky boat, with eighteen other persons who refused to join in the mutiny.
- 9. Happily, Lieutenant Bligh and his companions arrived safe in England after severe hardships. The British frigate Pandora was then sent to Otaheite in search of the mutineers, that they might be brought to justice.
- 10. The frigate arrived at Otaheite, and found fourteen of the mutineers. She took them on board and sailed for England, but was wrecked on her passage. Four of the mutineers were drowned. The other ten were carried to England, where three of them were hanged.

- 11. Christian, the ringleader of the mutiny, had not been taken prisoner by the Pandora; for he and several companions had sailed from Otaheite in the Bounty. They had taken with them a plentiful supply of hogs, dogs, cats, and fowls, and also a number of Otaheitan men and women.
- 12. For a great many years nobody could tell what had become of Christian and his friends, and of the brig Bounty, in which they had sailed away. As no news was heard of them, people universally believed that the vessel had gone to the bottom, with all her crew.

QUESTIONS.—1. Where are the Society islands? To what group do they belong? 2. What is the size and population of Tahiti or Otaheite? What of the natives? 3. What of the brig Bounty? Who was her commander? 4. When did he arrive at Otaheite? How did his men like the island? 5. How did the natives treat the Englishmen? 6. What of the crew of the Bounty? What resolution did they form? 7. What did Christian do? 8. How did he treat Lieutenant Bligh and eightess others? 9. Did they arrive in England? What ship was sent to Otaheite? 10. What happened to the Pandora? What became of the mutineers? 11. What had Christian and his companions done? 12. What was supposed to have become of them?

CHAP. CXCII.—OCEANIA continued.

STORY OF THE BOUNTY CONCLUDED.

1. But after twenty years, when people had ceased talking about the Bounty, it was found out what had become of her. In the year 1813, a British ship of war was alleged.

om the Marquesas islands to the port of Valparaiso, in outh America. The captain of the vessel was Sir Thomas taines. In the course of his voyage, he happened to cast achor off Pitcairn's island.

- 2. This small island lies many leagues to the south-east Otaheite. It was first discovered by Captain Carteret in 767; but very few people had since visited it, for it proceed no valuable commodities, and it was supposed to be sinhabited.
- 3. But, as Sir Thomas Staines looked from the deck of his essel to the shore, he was amazed to perceive that the island as cultivated, and that there were small houses on it. hese houses were better built than those of the savages merally are, and they looked something like the dwellings poor people in England.
- 4. While Sir Thomas Staines and his sailors were wonering at these circumstances, a small boat put off from the tore. The waves rolled very high, but the boat skimmed ke a sea-bird over the tops of them, and soon came alongde of the vessel.
- 5. The boat was rowed by two young men. They were andsome, though of rather a dark complexion. When they me near the vessel, one of them called out in good English "Won't you throw us a rope, friend?"
- 6. A rope was thrown to them, and they took hold of it id clambered on board of the vessel. Sir Thomas Staines ked them who they were, and how they came to be

living on that lonely island. The mystery was soon explained.

- 7. When Christian and his companions left Otaheite, they had steered for Pitcairn's Island, and had run the Bounty ashore on the rocks, and set her on fire. They had then built houses on the island, and had married the Otaheitan women whom they had brought with them.
- 8. Christian and all his associates were now dead, except one old man, whose name was John Adams. But they had left children and grandchildren, so that there was now quite a flourishing colony on the island.
- 9. Old John Adams had taught the young people to read the Bible, to tell the truth, and to be honest and upright in their behaviour. They seemed to be the happiest set of creatures that ever lived; for they hardly knew that there was any sin and sorrow in the world.

QUESTIONS.—1. What happened in the year 1813? 2. Where is Pitcairn's island? When was it discovered? 8. What was seen from the deck of the ship? How did the houses appear? 4. What of a boat from shore? 5. Describe the young men who rowed it? What did they call out? 7. Where had Christian and his companions steared on leaving Otaheite? What did they then do? 8. Who alone remained of the mutineers? How was the colony peopled? 9. What had John Adams done for the young people?

ANTARCTICA.

- 1. Many discoveries of islands and extensive tracts of land in the Antarctic Ocean, near the South Pole, have been made of late years, and are supposed to form parts of a great Southern Continent. These discoveries have been made by British, French, and American navigators.
- 2. Victoria land (so named in honour of the Queen of Great Britain, and which lies south of New Zealand) was discovered in 1840. Its coast rises in lofty mountainous peaks, covered with glaciers and perpetual snow. Mount Erebus, a volcano, is about thirteen thousand feet high, and presents a most imposing spectacle, standing like a fiery beacon at the very outposts of the world: the fiames are said to rise from fifteen hundred to two thousand feet above the mouth of the crater, illuminating the profound darkness which reigns over this dreary clime in the long night of winter. Westward is the South Magnetic Pole.
- 3. Kemp and Enderley lands lie nearly south of Madagascar; Sabrina and Adelia lands are south of Australia. Graham land approaches within about six hundred miles of Tierradel-Fuego; and to the north and north-east of Graham land lie the South Shetland, the South Orkney, and the South Georgian islands.
- 4. Between the New Georgian islands and Africa, Tristan da Cunha is situate. This is the largest of a group of small

islands claimed by Great Britain; it has a rocky surface, and in one point rises more than eight thousand feet high. Between this island and La Plata are the deepest known parts of the ocean, soundings were taken of eight thousand three hundred fathoms, equal to 9½ miles, in 1852.

- 5. Prince Edward islands are situated about six hundred miles south-east of the Cape of Good Hope, and to the east of these are the Crozet and Marion islands; still further eastward are the Kerguelin islands (or Land of Desolation) which are mostly a mass of sterile rocks, but yielding in some parts a kind of Cabbage, which is valued by the seamen frequenting these inhospitable shores. To the northeast are Amsterdam and St. Paul islands, both of which possess hot springs and craters of extinct volcances, to which the sea has now access.
- 6. These islands and the lands of Antarctica are mostly volcanic. They are the resort of the Albatross, and vast numbers of Penguins. Whales and Seals abound in the neighbouring seas.
- 7. My young readers will readily perceive that the discoveries in these remote regions have not been made without made exposure to the perils and hardships attendant on exploration. Many harrowing tales could be told of the perseverance of the hardy seamen, among all their privations and perils. We can recall the touching account of the sufferings and death of Sir John Franklin and his hardy crew. We can also connected some idea of the carnest heroisms of those brave

men who went in search of "the missing ships." We may even form some idea of the sufferings of Lady Franklin, and her mournful anxiety to leave no effort untried, that might happily relieve her gallant husband and his followers; and, although these incidents occurred near the North Pole, we may rest assured that the perils were the same to the adventurous men who prosecuted these discoveries near the South Pole. Besides the rigour of the climate, to which they were continually subject, there was the danger from icebergs, from hidden rocks and shoals, to avoid which required constant attention.

- 8. Among other dangers, there is one, the idea of which, I daresay, never entered into the mind of a landsman, but the existence of which is strangely confirmed, by the arrival in the port of Liverpool, October 1863, of the barque-rigged ship, Edwin and Lizzie, Captain Kirkham; who relates one of those peculiarly rare and singular instances of a whale striking a vessel direct on the stem, and which in the case of the Edwin and Lizzie had nearly caused her to founder, so tremendous was the blow.
- 9. This vessel left Prince Edward Island with a cargo of timber for this port, and on the 12th of October, in lat. 45.1 N., long. 27.8. W. (previous to which she had experienced severe weather), at half-past one in the afternoon, was struck by a large whale. Part of the cutwater of the Edwin and Lizzie was carried away, and the main stem out right through to the wooden ends.

- 10. This terrible blow, as might be expected, caused great alarm on board the vessel, and so rapidly did she leak that, to save the ship and crew if possible, the pumps were instantly manned, and kept going night and day without intermission. Fortunately they were equal to the emergency, and though the Edwin and Lizzie (a new vessel) had seven feet of water in her hold, she was brought safely to the Mersey, and docked in Brunswick Dock.
- 11. What the full extent of the damage may be, cannot of course be ascertained until the vessel is discharged, but it is enough to render her escape from foundering somewhat remarkable. Too much praise cannot be accorded to Captain Kirkham, his officers and crew, for their unwearied exertions during twelve days and nights to keep the Edwin and Lizzie afloat; for under more favourable circumstances have vessels been abandoned, without an effort having been made to save them.

QUESTIONS.—1. What name is given to the tracts of land discovered of late years? By whom were they discovered? 2. Describe Victoria Land? Mount Erebus? What is Westward? 3. Where are Kemp and Enderby Lands situate? Graham Land? What islands are north and north-west? 4. Where is Tristan da Cunha situate? What is the depth of the sea? 5. Where are Prince Edward islands situate? What islands are to the eastward? What of Kerguelin islands? Amsterdam and St. Paul islands? 6. What birds and animals are found in Antarctica? 7. What dangers had the early navigators and explorers to guard against? 8. What of the Edwin and Lizzie? 9. What did the captain relate of the damage done? 10. What did the marizers do? 11. To whom is praise due?

CHRONOLOGY OF OCEANIA.	523
CHAP. CXCIII.—OCEANIA continued.	
CHRONOLOGY OF OCEANIA.	▲.D.
JAVA discovered by the Portuguese	1510
New Holland discovered by the Dutch	1610
Batavia, the capital of Java, built by the Dutch	1619
Captain Cook took possession of New Holland	1770
Botany Bay, in New South Wales, settled	1778
Sandwich Islands discovered by Captain Cook	1778
Death of Captain Cook	1779
Ship Bounty arrives at Otaheite	1788
Convicts first sent to Van Dieman's Land	1804
The English take Java from the Dutch	1811
Sir Thomas Staines reaches Pitcairn's island	1813
Java restored to the Dutch by the English	1816
Missionaries established at the Sandwich Islands	1820
Constitution of New South Wales proclaimed	1848
Gold discovered in Australia	1850
Three ships leave Australia with seven tons of gold on board	1852
A mass of gold found in the Canadian Gully, 134 lb. 8 oz	1853
"Victoria Nugget," found at Bendigo Diggins, 340 oz. of gold	1853
Constitution of Victoria	1854
Branch of Royal Mint established at Sidney	1855
Responsible government established in New South Wales .	1856
Constitution of South Australia	1856
- - · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	1859
The Colony of Queensland formed out of New South Wales.	
Insurrection of the natives in New Zealand	1860
Maori war commenced	1863
Submission of the Maories	1864

CHAP. CXCIV .- REVIEW.

DURATION OF EMPIRES. ASIA. AFRICA.

1. I HAVE now told you my story of the four quarters of the globe, and that fifth division which passes under the new

٠.

Oceania. But, ere we part, let us take a backward glance at the countries through which we have travelled, and a general view of the events which have been narrated.

- 2. You will remember that the creation took place 4004 years B.C., and you will remember that it is now 1865 years since the birth of Christ. It is therefore 5869 years since the creation.
- 3. What a wonderful story does the world present! A little less than six thousand years ago, there was but a single human pair on this globe. These dwelt on the banks of the Euphrates, and every other part of the earth was without inhabitants. Now the whole world is peopled, and not less than a thousand millions of human beings are in existence.
- 4. And, since the creation of Adam and Eve, how many nations have arisen and passed away! How many empires have flourished and decayed! How many millions of individuals have lived and died! It is a matter which we cannot calculate with precision, but it is probable that at least one hundred thousand millions of persons have existed and perished since the world began.
- 5. The subject is almost too vast for our comprehension; let us therefore turn our attention to the principal empire of which history gives us an account. The first empire that was formed, as you will remember, was that of Assyria. This was founded by Ashar 2229 years R.C., and it was absented.

revived, and continued until the time of Cyrus, 538 B.C. Its whole duration, therefore, from the beginning to its final overthrow, was one thousand six hundred and ninety-one years.

- 6. The next great empire was that of Persia, founded by Cyrus in 536 B.C. This rose to great power, and spread itself over a large portion of Asia. But in the year 330 B.C. it was conquered by Alexander, and soon after became subject to the Parthians, having existed about two hundred and six years. The present kingdom of Persia is much smaller in extent, and of modern origin.
- 7. China, the most populous empire on the globe, is also the oldest. It is now about four thousand years from the time of its first emperor to the present date. The empire of the Saracens commenced A.D. 638, and was overthrown by the Turks, A.D. 1258, having continued six hundred and twenty years.
- 8. The Jewish nation may be considered as having its origin in Abraham, who left Chaldea and removed to Canaan, 1921 B.C. From this period to the destruction of Jerusalem by Titus, and the dispersion of the Jews in the year A.D. 70, was a space of one thousand nine hundred and ninety-one years. From the departure of the Israelites out of Egypt, to their dispersion after the destruction of Jerusalem, was a period of one thousand five hundred and sixty-one years.

- 9. Such is a brief view of the great kingdoms and empires of Asia. The only African empire of great duration was that of Egypt. This was founded by Misraim, 2188 B.C., and continued to the time of Alexander, 332 B.C. During this period of a thousand eight hundred and fifty-six years, it experienced many changes, but it may be considered as one continued empire. Since its conquest by Alexander, it has had many masters.
- 10. Carthage was originally a Phonician colony, and was founded 869 years B.C. The people owned a great many vessels, and carried on trade with various towns and cities around the Mediterranean. They likewise established colonies in Spain, and along the northern and eastern coasts of Africa.
- 11 Their ships also made pretty long voyages; some of them going into the Atlantic Ocean, and visiting the western coast of Africa. It has even been conjectured that some of their adventurous seamen crossed the Atlantic Ocean, discovered America, made settlements there, and were thus the progenitors of the Indian tribes which were found there; but this is not probable.
- 12. It is certain, however, that Carthage was at one time a great and flourishing city, and that the whole country around it became populous. Such was its power that it was the rival of Rome, and long maintained a conflict with its haughty competitor. But in a final wroughe it was over-

thrown, 146 R.C., having existed seven hundred and twenty-three years.

- 13. The Barbary states, Morocco, Algiers, Tripoli, and Tunis, are of modern origin. The countries where these are situated were, as I have before told you, inhabited in the time of the Romans, and appear to have been very populous. They all became subject to Rome, and experienced many changes till they were overrun by the Saracens.
- 14. In after times they became subject to the Turks; but for several hundred years they have enjoyed independence, with a nominal allegiance to the Sultan of Turkey. But even this independence has now ceased, and Algiers, at the present time, is subjected to the sway of France.

QUESTIONS.—2. When did the creation take place? How long since the birth of Christ? Since the creation? 3. What of the world about six thousand years ago? At the present time? 4. How many people have probably existed since the creation? 5. By whom and when was the empire of Assyria founded? What of it? Its duration? 6. What of the kingdom of Persia? 7. What of China? Empire of the Saracens? 8. What of the Jewish nation? 9. What of Egypt? 10. When was Carthage founded? What of the Phœnicians? 11. Their ships? Seamen? 12. What of Carthage? When was it overthrown? How long had it existed? 13. What of the Barbary states? 14. What of Algiers?

CHAP. CXCV.—REVIEW continued.

DURATION OF EMPIRES CONTINUED. EUROPE.

- 1. Let us now turn our attention to Europe. It is supposed that the Kelts passed from Asia into Europe at a very early period. Whether they entered the south-eastern come between the Black Sea and the Caspian Sea, or crossed the Ural Mountains to the north of the Caspian Sea, is what cannot tell.
- 2. It has been conjectured that some few scattered tribe may have migrated, even into the central parts of Europe as early as 2000 B.C. But this is hardly probable. I appears certain, however, that they were numerous in Germany, France, the northern part of Italy, and in Britain several hundred years before the Christian era.
- 3. But whatever may have been the period in which the Kelts first migrated into Europe, it is generally admitted the the earliest permanent settlement in that quarter of the glowas made by a Phœnician colony in Greece, 1856 n.c. This colony was led by Inachus.
- 4. But it was not till three hundred years after the Athens was founded by Cecrops, who came thither, bringing with him a number of settlers from Egypt. This is considered as the foundation of the Grecian states, and the proper point at which Grecian history begins.

7. The independence of ancient Greece was terminated

the Roman conquest, 146 R.C.; a period of one thousand seven hundred and ten years from the first settlement by Inachus, and one thousand four hundred and ten years from the founding of Athens by Cecrops.

- 6. Rome was founded 752 B.C. Its power continued to increase until the whole civilized world bowed beneath its yoke. Its form of government was often changed, being at first a kingdom, then a republic, and lastly an empire. The city of Rome was taken by Odoacer, A.D. 476, and a period was thus put to its dominion. The whole duration of the Roman empire was therefore one thousand two hundred and twenty-eight years.
- 7. The Greek empire, whose capital was Byzantium, afterwards called Constantinople, was originally a portion of the Roman empire, and was usually called the Eastern empire. Constantine removed to Constantinople A.D. 329, but the division was made by Theodosius, A.D. 395, at which point the Greek empire began.
- 8. It experienced various vicissitudes, but continued till 1453, when Constantinople was taken by the Turks, and a period was put to the Greek empire, after it had continued no thousand and fifty-eight years.
 - 9. The history of the Turks appears to commence at the pint where that of the Saracens ends. Under the name of artars, they overturned the Saracen empire A.D. 1258, ney adopted the Mahometan religion, and have ever times.

maintained it. They extended their dominion over those countries which the Saracens had conquered, and some others.

- 10. Othman I. began to reign in 1263, and founded the Ottoman empire 1299; this exists at the present day. The whole duration, therefore, of the Turkish dominion, from the conquest of Bagdad, 1258, to the present time, 1862, is six hundred and four years. This duration of the Ottoman empire, properly so called, from its establishment by Othman I. to 1865, is five hundred and sixty-six years. From the taking of Constantinople by the Turks in 1453, that city has been the capital of the Ottoman empire.
- 11. The French monarchy began with Childeric, who became king in 458. His son Clovis was the first Christian king. He drove the Romans out of France, and for this reson the French kingdom is often reckoned as commencing in his reign, about the year A.D. 481, at which time he succeeded his father, Childeric. The duration of the French monarchy, therefore, from the year 481 to 1865, is one thousand three hundred and eighty-four years; and it is the oldest existing kingdom in Europe.
- 12. The English monarchy is considered as beginning with Egbert, who was the first Saxon king, and came to the throng A.D. 827. From this period to the year 1865, is a space of one thousand and thirty-eight years. Next to France, this is the oldest monarchy in Europe.
- 13. The other kingdoms of Europe are of more recent

- erigin. The Moors established themselves in Spain A.D. 712, and were finally expelled in 1492, having held dominion in that country seven hundred and eighty years. For a long time the Moorish sovereigns held possession of three-fourths of Spain; but other portions remained independent, and existed under the title of kingdoms. One of these was Asturias, which was founded by Pelagio. His successors founded the kingdoms of Castile, Leon, Arragon, and others.
- 14. Ferdinand, king of Arragon, came to the throne in 1453. He married Isabella, queen of Castile, and their two kingdoms were united. From this period the several portions of Spain were gradually combined into one government. We may therefore consider the commencement of the reign of Ferdinand as the proper point at which the Spanish monarchy begins. Its continuation, therefore, to the year 1865, is exactly four hundred and twelve years.
- 15. The kingdom of Portugal was founded A.D. 1139, but it did not become finally independent of Spain till 1604. From this time to 1865, is a space of two hundred and sixty-one years.
- 16. Charlemagne, as you will remember, was King of France, but he conquered the greater part of Germany, and fixed his residence there A.D. 802; but in 911, Conrad, duke of Franconia, was elected emperor, and this is the point from which the origin of the German empire is usually dated.

It continued till the year 1806; a period of eight hundred and eighty-four years.

- 17. Austria, as I have told you, was originally one of the German states, and was called an archduchy. In 1273, Rodolph of Hapsburg became the archduke, and was elected Emperor of Germany. From this period, Austria steadily increased in strength, and we may properly consider it as the point at which its power was established. From this date till 1865, is a space of five hundred and ninety-two years.
- 18. The kingdom of Prussia was founded in 1701. Poland, having been an archduchy for many years, was formed into a kingdom in 999, under Boleslaus. In 1795 it was seized by Russia, Prussia, and Austria, and was thus finally blotted out from the list of independent nations, after a duration of seven hundred and ninety-six years.
- 19. Russia, anciently called Sarmatia, and inhabited by Tartars called Scythians, was overrun by Scandinavian tribs in the ninth century, who obtained a permanent dominion is the country. It was for a long time the scene of bloodshed and turmoil, and at length was subjected by the Tartan who maintained their sway for two or three hundred years.
- 20. It was delivered from this galling yoke by John Basilowits I., in 1450, and its independence was thus established. From this date till 1865 is a space of four hundred and fifteen years.

- 21. The kingdom of Sweden is of considerable antiquity. About the year 481, the rulers, who were judges, assumed the title of kings, and their descendants continued to reign till 1068. But Sweden at this time was of small extent, the people extremely barbarous, and the government unsettled. In the year 994, Olof, the king, was converted to Christianity, and formed the country into a regular monarchy. From this date to 1865 is a space of eight hundred and ninety-one years.
- 22. Skiold is said to have been the first king of Denmark, but we know little about him or his successors till the year 920, when Gorm the Old appears to have established the government by uniting the several Danish tribes into one kingdom. From this date till 1865, is a period of nine hundred and forty-five years.
- 23. Holland was originally settled by Belgic tribes. It was first formed into a state by Count Thierry, A.D. 868. It afterwards came into the possession of the Duke of Burgundy, and at length into the hands of the King of Spain. The people revolted, and, in 1581, formed themselves into a republic.
- 24. This is the proper point at which we may date the independence of Holland; though it was not erected into a kingdom till 1806. Belgium was formerly attached to Holland, and constituted a part of what was then called the kingdom of the Netherlands; but it became an independent kingdom in 1830.
 - 25. Switzerland, after having been subject to the Romuna,

the French, and the Germans, became an independent nation in 1315. From this date to 1865, is a period of five hundred and fifty years.

26. The first ruler of Naples who acquired the title of king, was Roger, who reigned about the year 1150. Sardinia was taken by the Spaniards in 1303, and continued in their hands till 1708, when it was taken by the English, and given to the Duke of Savoy, who assumed the title of king in 1720. Genoa, Piedmont, and Savoy, were added to the kingdom at a later date. These now are part of the kingdom of Italy.

27. Venice was formed into a sort of republic in 697, Paolucci Anafesto being the first doge. It became a powerful state, and continued independent till it was taken by the French under Napoleon, in 1797. It was soon after transferred to Austria, under whose rule it still remains.

Questions.—1. What of the Kelts? How did they enter Europe?

2. What has been conjectured? What appears certain? 3. Where was the first settlement in Europe? 4. When and by whom was Athers founded? When does Grecian history begin? 5. When was the independence of Greece terminated? How long had it existed? 6. What can you say of Rome? How long did the empire endure? 7. What of the Greek empire? When did it begin? 8. How was it terminated? 9. What of the Turks? Extent of the Turkish dominion? 10. Who founded the Ottoman empire? Duration of the Ottoman empire? What of Constantinople? 11. What of Childeric? Clovis? Duration of the French monarchy? 12. What of Egbert? Duration of the English monarchy? 13. What of the Moors? Pelagio and his successors? 14. What of Ferdinand? By what means were Castile and Arragon united? When does the Spanish monarchy proper.

begin? Its duration? 15. What of the kingdom of Portugal?

16. What of Charlemagne? Conrad? Duration of the German empire? 17. What of Austria? Its duration? 18. Prussia? Its duration? 19. What of Russia? 20. How was it rendered independent? Its duration? 21. What of Sweden? Its duration? 22. What of Denmark? Its duration? 23. What of Holland? 24. When did to become a kingdom? 25. What of Switzerland? Its duration? 26. What of Naples? Sardinia? Genoa? Piedmont? Savoy? 27. What of Venice? To whom does it belong?

CHAP. CXCVI.—REVIEW continued.

ANCIENT NAMES OF COUNTRIES, ETC.

You already know that most of the countries in Europe, Asia, and Africa, have different names at the present day from what they had in ancient times. I will therefore give you a list of the principal states and kingdoms throughout these three quarters of the globe, showing their present and ancient names, together with the original inhabitants, and the sources from which the present inhabitants have sprung, so far as I am able.

ASIA. Original Inha-From whom the present In-Modern Names. Ancient Names. bitants. habitants are descended. Descendants of Griginal inhabitants, Greeks, Jews, Turks, Natolia Asia Minor Japhet (and others. Descendants of \Original inhabitants, Palestine. Canaan Jews, Turks, &c. Shem Syria Syria

	_	TISTORY	· •
•	UNIVERS	AL HISTORY.	From whom the press
536		and single Inha-	habitants are descen
,	nelent Names.	bitants.	Comiginal Innaul
Modern Names. A	'Uctors -		with others.
	Armenia		
Armenia	Mesopotamia		
Diarbekir	Mesoborn		
Curdistan	Assyria		
	Babylonia or Chaldea		
Bagdad	J Chainen		
Adirbeitzan	Media		
Adii bersemi	Parthia.		_
Irak Agemi	Hyrcania	(Descendar	its] —
Chorazan	Persia	≺ of Elam	.)
Persia		Isbrana T	ats [—
1010-	(Asiatic Sar-	of Shen	1 5
Astrachan	7 matia	,	_
	To salvia		
Cabulistan			
Siberia, T	ar-} Scythia	AFRICA	1!
tary, &c	,)	AFRIOR	(Original ir
		Descend	ants of mixed v
	Egyp ^t	Ham	(and our
Egypt	DEJ L.	` _	_
	Libya	Greeks,	Car-l —
Barca	- •	1 than	nians) Original
Tripoli	part Africa	(Cartha	gini- Criginal Arabs
~£'I'n	ל פורד	ans?	Araba
Part of	Tunis Numidia	(Mauri	
and A	lgiers \ Maurita	nia Mo	ors &c.
Moroco	o Maurita	Gætul	
		Gaera	-
Beledu	ngorra	_	
37_2:0	and (Rithiop)		DT.
Aby	ssinia 5	EURO	: tribes)
l .		(Goth	ic tribes
Norw	ay, and Scand	inavia of call	BUSIESS
Swed	en, and Scand	(a)	-bri
Denn	ark)	iia C	_{imbri}
Julia	nark Cimb)r r 	
of Give	11.00		

Modern Names.	Ancient Name	c. Original Inha- bitants.	From whom the present In- habitants are descended (Tartars. Scandina-
Russia	Sarmatia	Tartars	Tartars, Scandina- vians, and other tribes.
Great Britain	Britannia	Kelts or Gaels	Saxons, Danes, Bri- tons, &c.
Scotland	Caledonia	(Highlands, Kelts; Low- lands, Picts	Norman French
Ireland	Hibernia	Kelts or Gaels	Original inhabitants.
Holland and Belgium	Belgica	Belgae	_
France	Gauls	Kelts or Gauls	Kelts, Franks, Nor-
Germany	Germania	{Teutones, Alemanni, and other tribes	Original inhabitants.
Switzerland	Helvetia	Helvetii	
Tyrol	Rhætia		
Romania	Thrace		•
Spain	Hispania	Carthaginians, Greeks	Original inhabitants, Goths, Vandals, and others.
Portugal	Lusitania		-
Savoy, Pied-) mont, &c.)	Cisalpine Ga	ul Kelts or Gauls	Original inhabitants, with Gothic tribes.
Macedonia	Macedonia		
Greece	Greece	{Phonicians, } Egyptians }	Original inhabitants.
Questions. habitants, &c.,			ancient name, original in-

CHAP. CXCVII.—GENERAL VIEWS.

THE ORIGIN AND PROGRESS OF GOVERNMENT.

- 1. I SUPPOSE by this time that my reader is weary; but I must ask his patience for a short time, till I have given a brief account of several important matters. I shall first speak of government.
- 2. You observe that, at the present day, some nations are governed in one way, and some in another. In America the people are governed by rulers of their own choice, and according to a constitution of their own formation. This nation is therefore called a republic.
- 3. Some nations are governed by kings or emperors, who rule according to their own will. These are called despotic monarchies. Other nations are ruled by kings or emperors, whose power is restrained by legislative assemblies, who make laws for the country. These are called limited monarchies.
- 4. Now, you must not suppose that the world has always been governed in the same manner as now. The first kind of government sprang from that of the father of a family. In the first place, he ruled over his children, who acquired the habit of obeying him. His grandchildren followed their example, and thus the whole of the little community naturally yielded to the authority of their common parent.
- 5. This laid the foundation for that kind of government which is called patriarchal. It existed before the Flood and also prevailed in many parts of Ania long after that event.

But mankind were at length divided into separate tribes, and these became involved in wars with each other. In the struggles which ensued, some men displayed superior strength, courage, and skill. These naturally became the leaders, and were intrusted with extensive authority.

- 6. All men are fond of power, and these leaders soon acquired almost complete dominion over the people. This produced the second kind of government, the head of which was a chief, and was usually that of warlike tribes, who had advanced from the savage to the barbarous state.
- 7. When society had progressed so far as to build towns and cities, the military chieftain was not exactly suited to the more refined and luxurious tastes of the people. They now desired rulers with more sonorous titles; they must be surrounded with pomp and ceremony; they must wear crowns upon their heads, and dwell in palaces.
- 8. They must be attended by persons richly attired, and, in order to give sacredness to the kingly character, must hold themselves aloof from the people, as if superior to other mortals. Thus a third kind of government was formed, which is called monarchical.
- 9. But it was at length found that the monarchs or kings were selfish, and made slaves of the people. In some countries, therefore, the people elected their rulers, and made laws for themselves. Thus a fourth kind of government was instituted, called republican.

- 10. Now you will bear in mind that the first kind of government, called patriarchal, was adopted in the earliest ages of society, while the greater part of the people were devoted to agriculture and the rearing of cattle. The second kind of government, at the head of which was a chief, was adopted by warlike tribes who had not yet reached a state of civilization.
- 11. The third kind of government was adopted when people had become civilized and luxurious. It was the form of government among the ancient Assyrians, Egyptians, and Persians, and has been, since the period of these empires, in all ages of mankind, more prevalent than any other system. At the present day, nine-tenths of mankind are subject to monarchical government.
- 12. The republican form of government was partially adopted by the Jews, soon after their return from Egypt. But it was not till the time of the Greeks that a genuine republic was established. Several of the states of Greece formed themselves into republics at different times; but these were of short duration, and were usually overthrown by aspiring men, who made themselves kings.
- 13. Rome was at one time a republic, but here, too, freedom soon gave place to despotism. Other countries have been called republics; but the largest and mightiest hitherto seen was in the United States of America, which professed to secure, on permanent principles, the equal rights of all

the citizens, but here they unhappily keep several millions of coloured people in slavery.

QUESTIONS.—2. How is America governed? What is it called?

3. What are despotic monarchies? What are limited monarchies?

4. From what did the first kind of government spring? 5. What of the patriarchal form of government? What of warlike tribes? 6. What was the second kind of government? 7. What did the people desire as society advanced? 8. What of the monarchical form of government?

9. What of the republican form of government? 10. What of the first kind of government? Second? 11. What of the third kind, or monarchical government? 12. What of the republican form of government? What of the Greeks? 13. What of Rome? The United States?

CHAP. CXCVIII.—GENERAL VIEWS continued.

ARCHITECTURE. AGRICULTURE. GARDENING.

- 1. The first habitations of men were such as nature suggested, just sufficient to satisfy their wants; caves or grottoes, huts and tents. As civilization advanced, they began to build more durable and commodious habitations. They fitted the stones or bricks together more neatly, but at first without any cement. After they had learned how to build houses, they began to erect temples for their gods, which were much larger and better made than their own habitations.
- 2. Architecture appears to have been one of the earliest inventions, and its works have been regulated by hereditary imitation. Whatever rude structure the climate or materials of any country forced the first inhabitants to construct, the

same form was kept up in after years by their more refined posterity.

- 3. Thus the Egyptian style of building derived its origin from the cavern and mound; the Chinese from the tent; the Grecian from the wooden cabin; and the Gothic from the bower of trees. Architecture at length became a fine art, and much pains were bestowed upon temples and palaces. Colonnades, halls, and courts, soon appeared; the rough trunk was transformed into the lofty column, and the natural vault of a cavern into the splendid pantheon.
- 4. The first nations who paid attention to architecture were the Babylonians, who built the temple of Belus and the hanging gardens; the Assyrians, who filled Nineveh with splendid buildings; the Phœnicians, whose cities were adorned with magnificent structures; and the Israelites, whose temple was considered wonderful. Of the Persian and Egyptian architecture we have some remains, and they are all in a style of prodigal splendour and gigantic height.
- 5. The Greeks first introduced a more simple and dignified style of building, called the Doric order. The Ionic and Corinthian columns were soon added to the Doric. After the Peloponnesian war, this noble simplicity had again given place to the excess of ornament; and, after the death of Alexander, 323 B.C., the art declined, and was afterwards but little cultivated in Greece.
- 6. The Romans had paid some attention to architecture, but did not equal the Greeks till the time of Angustus, who

encouraged Greek artists to erect splendid buildings in Rome. But when the seat of government was removed to Constantinople, the art declined in Rome. About this time the Roman or Composite column originated, which was employed in temples and splendid buildings.

- 7. These beautiful works of art were almost entirely destroyed by the Goths and Vandals; but Theodoric, a friend of the arts, endeavoured to restore them, and even erected several new ones. This is the era of the origin of modern art, and the style of building it introduced is called Gothic architecture.
- 8. Architecture has experienced different destinies in different countries, and it has risen and declined at different periods. In America the Grecian architecture is prevailing, as it is better adapted than the Gothic to small buildings, and does not require splendid edifices to display its beauty.
- 9. The first mention of agriculture is found in the writings of Moses. From them we learn that Cain was a "tiller of the ground," and that Noah "began to be a husbandman, and planted a vineyard."
- 10. The Chinese, Japanese, Chaldeans, Egyptians, and Phonicians, appear to have held husbandry in high estimation in the earliest ages. The Carthaginians were sensible of its blessings, and carried the art to a high degree of perfection. The implements of Grecian agriculture were very few and simple; the Romans used a great many implements. but particularly venerated the plough.

- 11. Gardening, for the production of culinary vegetables, appears to have received attention in all ages, where the people had advanced to a state of civilization. Ornamental gardening, which is the art of laying out grounds with walk, and fountains, and groves, and beautiful shrubs, plants, and flowers, and disposing them all in such a manner as to produce a pleasing effect, can only belong to a refined people.
- 12. The hanging gardens of Semiramis, which consisted of earth raised upon pillars, and set out with plants, which were necessarily watered by artificial means, were very wonderful, but they could hardly be considered beautiful.
- 13. The Greeks do not appear to have carried the art of ornamental gardening to any great extent. The style of ornamental gardening among the Romans, as you will remember in the account I have given you of Pliny's villa, was highly artificial, but not pleasing.
- 14. The whole art of ornamental gardening appears to have been banished from Europe from the time that the barbarians overspread its southern regions, till Charlemagne did something towards its revival.
- 15. In the time of Louis the Fourteenth a new style was introduced into France. According to this, the grounds were artificially laid out in straight walks, crossing each other at right angles,
- 16. These were bordered by straight rows of trees, many of which were cut into the form of pyramids, hay stacks and various animals. Flower-bods were laid out in more

2 ×

grotesque forms. Fountains were interspersed, from which figures representing frogs, lizards, lions, and crocodiles, spouted forth columns of water.

17. This artificial and absurd style was afterwards introduced into Holland, England, and other countries. But, at a later period, it was ascertained that the Chinese and Japanese had followed for ages a more natural style of consmental gardening. They collected the most beautiful flowers, the finest shrubs and trees, and planted them in irregular groups.

18. They sought, as far as possible, to imitate the most beautiful and pleasing arrangements of nature. The English introduced this system into their own country, and nothing can exceed the charming effect of the ornamental gardening of England at the present day.

QUESTIONS.—1. What of the first inhabitants of man? What was done as civilization advanced? 2. What of architecture? 3. Mention the different styles of building. What of architecture at length? 4. What people first paid attention to architecture? What of Persian and Egyptian architecture? 5. What of the Greeks? Their architecture? 6. What of the Roman architecture? 7. What of the Goths and Vandals? Theodoric? Gothic architecture? 8. What of architecture in America? 9. What mention is made of agriculture in Scripture? 10. What of the agriculture of different kingdoms? 11. What of gardening? Ornamental gardening? 12. What of the gardens of Semiramis? 13. What of the Greeks? The Romans? 14. How was gardening banished from Europe? Who revived it? 15. What of the style under Louis XIV.? 17. What of gardening in China and Japan? F. England?

CHAP. CXCIX.—GENERAL VIEWS continued

- 1. The first mention made of nations trading one with another, appears in the book of Genesis xxxviii. 25, when Joseph's brethren sold him to a band of Ishmaelites, who were conveying spices, balm, and myrrh into Egypt. The balm was from Gilead, and the myrrh was the produce of Arabia. They were going through the land of Canaan into Egypt, which was then a highly cultivated kingdom.
- 2. The central situation of Egypt has always made it the emporium of commerce. By caravans, the treasures of Asia and Africa were brought thither. Trade was always held in esteem, because of the wealth that it brought. Of the maritime trade of the Egyptians we have no regular account, for they superstitiously neglected the sea for many ages.
- 3. Tyre and Sidon, cities of Phoenicia, are next found rising into notice. Their country was not rich in its productions; industry alone made their rocks productive; they conveyed their merchandise from port to port, and commerce, by feeding industry, was itself enriched.
- 4. About eleven hundred years before Christ, in the time of David, the Phoenicians, in the true spirit of commerce continually extended their voyages; and, finding plenty of gold in Spain, they formed a settlement for the purpose of trade, called Gadiz, now Cadiz.

- 5. Solomon saw the advantage of commerce, and caused ships to be built, which he sent to Ophir, and which brought back gold, silver, ivory, birds, and other things. He had also great traffic with Egypt, whence he obtained horses and fine linen.
- 6. About eight hundred and sixty-nine years before Christ, Carthage was built, and became famous for her commerce throughout the civilized world. In 700 B.C., Corinth became distinguished as a maritime power, and made improvements in the building of ships.
- 7. In 588 B.C., Tyre became famous. We read an interesting account of her commerce and splendour in the 26th, 27th, and 28th chapters of Ezekiel. But the Tyrians drew upon themselves the vengeance of God, and they were subdued first by Nebuchadnezzar, and afterwards more completely by Alexander, 332 B.C.
- 8. The Phœnicians, after the destruction of Tyre, still pursued and enlarged the sphere of commerce, by means of Carthage, till that city was destroyed by the Romans, 146 B.C. At one time the Grecian states were conspicuous for their attention to naval affairs. Athens and Sparta in turn became famous, and remained so till their overthrow.
- 9. Alexander paid great attention to commercial affairs, and built the cities of Alexandria and Berenice; at which places he carried on an extensive trade with the West, by means of the Mediterranean Sea; with the richer provinces of the East, by the Red Sea; and with the central countries.

- of Asia, by the Isthmus of Suez. He kept up large fleets, and his revenues were immense.
- 10. The Romans were ignorant of the value of commerce, and, as if they were determined to root it out, they destroyed Corinth, which was one of the most commercial cities of Greece. Great stagnation of commerce now followed, which was felt by all the surrounding countries, till the time of Julius Cæsar, who determined to revive it, and restored in one year both Corinth and Carthage.
- 11. As the Romans were now masters of all around the Mediterranean, they began to favour commerce for their own sake. They therefore obtained supplies from all the regions round about, to minister either to their necessities or their luxuries. The return they made for these various and choice articles was in money; and, therefore, this interchange can hardly be called commerce. Indeed, the Romans were never a commercial people; they despised the character of a merchant, and wished to rule and obtain riches only by the sword.
- 12. After the seat of government was removed to Constantinople, Theodoric became king of Italy, and, under his wise and peaceful reign, commerce began again to flourish, though in a reduced state. In the East, silk began to be a great article of commerce, and the Persians enriched themselves very much in their trade with ships from India, which stopped at their ports.

18. In 782 A.D., Venice began to puy ettention to commune

and tarried on an extensive traffic with the East. Many other states in Italy also carried on a large trade with different countries. In 1063, Pisa and Genoa became distinguished as commercial cities.

- 14. At the accession of William the Conqueror to the throne of England, in 1066, we date the commencement of commerce in this country; and much intercourse took place between Normandy and England.
- 15. The Crusades we find giving the next spur to commerce. The crusaders, finding in the East luxuries that they could not procure at home, determined to supply themselves with these foreign elegancies, conveniences, and necessaries. Commerce therefore began to extend itself with rapidity.
- 16. The discovery of the polarity of the loadstone gave new wings to commerce; it was applied to navigation about the year 1200. In the time of King John, in 1216, England became very rich and populous by trade, and the people flourished accordingly.
- 17. In 1241, the German towns began to engage in commerce, and entered into a league for mutual defence. They were called Hanse towns. They made themselves very rich and powerful. Edward I. of England allowed them great privileges in trade, which were, however, curtailed under Edward VI.
- 18. In the time of Elizabeth another blow was struck extheir commerce; but, in spite of all, they became so formidable

that the governments of several states entered into a league against them, which resulted in their power being weakened and finally sunk, in 1662.

- 19. About the year 1251, we find Florence rising into notice in a commercial point of view. Its trade was immense, and its fabrics beautiful and costly. The merchants amassed great wealth, and became the bankers of all Europe. This state of splendour continued for centuries.
- 20. Flanders was for some time the seat of the principal manufactories of Europe. As far back as the year 960, we find the Flemish trading to great advantage. In 1253 they were famous for their linens, and they continued eminent for their manufactures till 1584, when Antwerp was destroyed by the Duke of Parma. This put an end to the prosperity of the country, and her fine manufactures were dispersed among other nations.
- 21. Hitherto the trade with India had been carried on by caravans; but, in 1497, a passage being found round the Cape of Good Hope, the way was now open to wealth and luxury. In the year 1500 the Portuguese began to make settlement in Africa; and, soon after, Portugal became the centre of commerce, till 1580, when the kingdom was seized by the King of Spain.
- 22. From the reign of John, in 1216, to 1317, commerce flourished in England. But at that time quarrels between the English and Flemish were so herce that all commercial

intercourse was suspended. In 1331, it was again revived under Edward III., who introduced the manufacture of woollen cloth.

- 23. In the reign of Henry VIII. the Reformation was of great service to commerce, and in the time of Edward VI. a trade was entered into with Russia. Queen Elizabeth greatly encouraged commerce. She formed several trading companies; one to Russia, and another to Turkey and the Levant. The East India Company began during her reign, in 1600; its charter ended a few years ago.
- 24. As for the commerce of America, after independence was declared, the commercial resources of that country began to develop themselves. Their ships penetrated to the most distant seas, and brought home with them the produce of every clime. Their commercial prosperity is now established on a firm basis.

QUESTIONS.—1. What is the first mention made of trade? 2. What of Egypt? Its commerce? 3. What of Tyre and Sidon? 4. What of the Phoenicians? Cadiz? 5. What encouragement did Solomon give to commerce? 6. What of Carthage? Corinth? 7. What of Tyre? 8. What of the Phoenicians? Athens? Sparta? 9. What of Alexander? 10. How was commerce destroyed? 11. What did the Romans do in favour of commerce? 12. What of commerce under Theodoric? In the East? Persia? 13. What of Venice? Pisa? Genoa? 14. What of the rise of commerce in England? 15. What of the Crusades? 16. What of the loadstone? 17. What of the Hanse towns? 19. What of Florence? 20. What of the commerce of Flanders? What destroyed it? 21. What of trade in India? In Portugal? 22. What of commerce in England? 23. What Queen gave green encouragement to commerce? 24. What of commerce in America?

CHAP. CC.—GENERAL VIEWS continued.

PAINTING, SCULPTURE, AND MUSIC.

- 1. The earliest account we have of the existence of painting is in the reign of Ninus, about 2000 R.C. Egypt was decidedly the birth-place of the arts and sciences, though but few of its paintings remain, and their date is uncertain. The Greeks were very little advanced in the art of painting at the time of the Trojan war.
- 2. The first important fact in the history of painting is, that about 700 years B.C. a king of Lydia purchased a picture of a Greek artist, and paid him its weight in gold. In the year 400, Zeuxis introduced a new style of painting into Greece, and at this period much progress was made in the art. About the year 328 B.C., Apelles commenced a new era in painting, and many distinguished painters were his contemporaries.
- 3. Before Greece was taken by the Romans, the art of painting had arrived at a high degree of perfection; but, at that time, the spirit which had animated her arts had departed, and with her liberty her arts perished.
- 4. The first name worthy of record in the annals of Italian painting is Gimabue, a native of Florence, who painted in freeco, a.D. 1300. In 1445, Leonardo da Vinci was been at Florence. Many subsequent painters are indebted to this great artist for his improvements in the arts. During his time the use of oil in painting was discovered.

- 5. Michael Angelo Buonarotti was born in the year 1474. He erected an academy of painting and sculpture at Florence, and is considered as the founder of the Florentine school. Raphael, born 1483, was the founder of the Roman school. Titian, born 1477, was the founder of the Venetian school. Correggio, born 1494, founded the Lombard school. The establishment of these four schools embraces the golden era of painting.
- 6. The French, Flemish, Germans, and English, have all produced excellent painters, but none equal to the best masters of Italy. Whoever wishes to see the finest productions of the pencil, must visit the galleries of Rome, Florence, and Naples.
- 7. The antiquity of sculpture is proved by reference to the Bible. In the book of Exodus we read of Laban's images, of the golden calf made by Aaron, and of the statues of the cherubim. Herodotus tells us that the Egyptians first carved figures of animals in stone.
- 8. Almost all the sculpture of Egypt was employed for sacred purposes; it was of stupendous magnitude. The pyramids, colossal statues, and sphynx, are gigantic works of art, and strike those who behold them with astonishment. The eras of Egyptian sculpture extend through the dominion of the Greeks and Romans. Under the latter, much improvement was made in the art.
 - 9. Hindoo sculpture strongly resembles that of Eggpt.

but is generally inferior. Chinese sculpture also alightly resembles the Egyptian. Dædalus may be considered the first sculptor in Greece, as before his time the attempts at the art were rude and imperfect, though there were schools established at Sicyon, Egina, Corinth, and Athens. Dædalus was born 1234 B.C. He formed something like a school of sculpture at Athens. The first statues were made of wood, and metal was also used in many cases for sculpture.

- 10. About 646 B.C. statues in marble were executed; and a school, called the Chian school, was founded by Malas, in Greece. The marble was procured from the Ionian islands, where a school was established, called the Ionian school. In 517 B.C., great improvements were introduced in the art of sculpture in marble.
- 11. After the battle of Marathon, 490 B.C., sculpture flourished, and the schools produced many eminent artists, among whom was Phidias. He executed statues in bronze, marble, and a composition mostly of ivory. His works were numerous and splendid, and he stands without a rival among the ancient masters.
- 12. From this period till the fall of Greece, many eminent sculptors appeared; but, after the death of Alexander, the arb began to decline, and continued in this state for nearly two hundred years, when Greece became a Roman province.
- 13. Italian sculpture may be divided into two distinct classes, the Etruscan and the Roman. The sculptors were

mostly Greeks, as the Romans possessed only sufficient know ledge to value the genius of others. After Constantine died, the annals of ancient art may be considered as closed.

- 14. Schools for sculpture were formed in Italy in the eleventh and twelfth centuries; and, before the close of the thirteenth, a school was founded by Nicholas Pisano, a native of Pisa. Before the close of the next century, sculpture was successfully practised throughout Italy. It has made little progress in other countries, but has risen to great perfection in the schools of Rome and Florence.
- 15. According to Mosaic records, Jubal, the son of Lamech, played on musical instruments even before the deluge. At a later period we find mention made of the harp, the trumpet, and the drum. The oldest song is that which Miriam sang after the passage of the Red Sea. Music reached its highest perfection among the Hebrews at the time of David and Solomon.
- 16. The Greeks are said to have received the art of music from Lydia and Arabia. But it was not till the sixth century B.C., that much of the science of music was understood. Labus, a Greek, who lived about 546 B.C., wrote something on the theory of music. In the time of Pericles, Damon is said to have been a distinguished teacher of music.
- 17. In the time of Plato and Aristotle, many improvements in music were made; these philosophers considering music useful as a means of education. At the time of Alexander,

Aristoxenus distinguished himself as a writer on music. He composed many treatises, and made many great changes and improvements. He introduced the chromatic scale. We have, on the whole, but little light on the subject of the music of the ancients, as the existing writings are very obscure and unintelligible.

- 18. The Romans seem to have received their sacred music from the Etruscans, and their warlike music from the Greeks. Stringed instruments were introduced into Rome, 186 R.C. Under Nero, music was cultivated as a luxury. After his death, five hundred singers and musicians were dismissed.
- 19. In the middle ages, the progress of music was promoted by its being consecrated to the service of religion, and education was not thought complete without some knowledge of music. Guido of Arezzo made great improvements in the manner of writing the notes in music; and in the fifteenth century still further improvement was made by Johannes de Musis.
- 20. At the same period music was treated scientifically in the Netherlands, France, and Spain. The invention of the opera, in the sixteenth century, has chiefly contributed to the variety and splendour of modern vocal music; and in the eighteenth century there were immense improvements in musical instruments.
- 21. The merit of the advancement of vocal music is chimical by the Italians; that of instrumental music by the

Germans and French. The English have been great patrons of musical talent, but have produced few celebrated composers.

QUESTIONS.—1. What are the earliest accounts we have of painting? What of Egypt? Greece? 2. What of the King of Lydia? Zeuxis? Apelles? 3. What of painting in Greece? 4. What of Cimabue? Leonardo da Vinci? 5. What of Angelo? Raphael? Titian? Correggio? 6. What of painters in other countries? 7. What of sculpture? What do we read of in the Bible? 8. What of Egyptian sculpture? Roman? 9. What of Hindoo sculpture? Chinese? What of Dædalus? 10. What of the Chian school? What of the Ionian school? 11. What of Phidias? 12. When did the arts begin to decline in Greece? 13. What of Italian sculpture? What of the art after Constantine? 14. What of Nicholas Pisano? What of sculpture? 15. What of Jubal? What of Miriam's song? Music among the Hebrews? 16. What of the music of the Greeks? What of Labus? Damon? 17. What of Plato and Aristotle? Aristoxenus? 18. What of the Roman music? 19. What of music in the middle ages? Who made improvements in music? 20. What of music in other countries? What of the opera? Musical instruments 21. What of vocal music? Instrumental music? English music?

CHAP. CCI.—GENERAL VIEWS continued. OBIGIN AND PROGRESS OF VARIOUS ARTS.

1. I HAVE attempted to give you some idea of the origin and progress of government, of architecture, agriculture, gardening, painting, sculpture, and music; but there are still many things necessary to be known, in order to understand the manners, customs, feelings, and opinions of mankind in former ages.

- 2. When you read of such a great man as Julius Casar, and know that he had immense wealth at his command, you might imagine that he rode in a beautiful coach, wore a fine beaver hat, silk stockings, leather shoes, with silver buckles, and that he carried a splendid gold watch in his pocket.
- 3. But you must remember that no such things as coaches, hats, stockings, shoes, buckles, or watches, were invented till long after the time of Julius Cæsar. The truth is, that by far the largest portion of the articles of furniture and of clothing, as well as the greater part of the tools and implements now in use, have been invented within the last five hundred years. I will endeavour to give you some little idea of the origin and progress of various inventions which essentially contribute to our comfort and convenience.
- 4. You know that all edge-tools, such as knives, hatchets, axes, planes, &c., now used for cutting and shaping wood, are made of steel, which is a preparation of iron. Yet it appears probable, although iron is mentioned as being known before the deluge, that the use of it was afterwards lost.
- 5. There is, therefore, no doubt that the ancient nations were ignorant of the use of iron, and therefore destitute of all those convenient edge-tools now so common among us. It lieu of these, the ancients used sharp stones, flints, home bones, and other things.
- 6. But it is said that iron was discovered by the burniage

 -- Ida, in Crete, about the year 1406 BC. It is pro-

that it was in use for various instruments, among the more civilized nations, not long after this period. Among the Romans, two or three hundred years before Christ, iron was used for chains, locks, axes, hoes, spades, and other tools.

- 7. But fine cutlery, such as is now in use, was not known till hundreds of years afterwards. Knives for the table were not made in England till about 1500. Forks were unknown to the Greeks and Romans, and are not in use even now among the Turks, Chinese, and some other eastern nations. Razors appear to have been of great antiquity, as they are mentioned by Homer; but they were probably not of steel till long after.
- 8. The weaving of woollen and linen cloth was practised in very early times. The ladies of Rome paid great attention to these arts. Silk was manufactured in Persia several hundred years before Christ, and afterwards in Tyre and Constantinople. In later times, the art of making silk fabrics passed into Italy, France, and other countries.
- 9. Cotton fabrics are also of great antiquity, and it appears that the inhabitants of India had the art of calico-printing at least as early as the time of our Saviour.
- 10. The first houses of mankind were made of wood, stone, clay, and various other substances; they were, however, low rough, and inconvenient. As the arts advanced, improvements were made in the dwellings. But, even so late as the time of Nero, almost all the houses in Rome were built of wood; and when the city was set on fire by order, as some

historians say, of that cruel emperor, three-fourths of it τ consequently burnt to the ground.

- 11. The houses of the rich had small windows of treparent stone, horn, or other substances, but most of dwellings had no other windows than small holes in the weat to admit light and air. Glass windows were not introdutill the fifth century after Christ.
- 12. Chimneys were not in use till the twelfth cent Before this, the smoke escaped through an opening in roof. It was, however, very troublesome; and we have rest to suppose that even Alexander and Cæsar often had t eyes almost put out with it. As late as the time of Elizak three-fourths of the houses in England were destitute chimneys.
- 13. These few remarks will show you that the world sents a very different state of things now from what it formerly. The poorest person now enjoys a multitud comforts, conveniences, and luxuries which Cassar, with his wealth, did not possess,
- 14. One of the most wonderful improvements of most times is that of the steam-engine. This contrivance is made to do the work which millions of men could not I done before. It is applied to the manufacture of an infivariety of articles. Nor is this all; it is employed to d vessels over the water, and to impel carriages upon rails with immense speed.
 - 15. A steam-boat was some years ago taken to Calor

in Hindostan. The Hindoos looked at the huge vessel ploughing through the waves, and spouting forth fire and smoke, with great astonishment.

16. One of them remarked upon the occasion as follows:

"Man is one curious thing: he catch elephant, make him work; he catch camel, make him work; he catch wind, make him work the big ship; he catch water, make him work the mill; now he catch fire, make him work the steam-boat!"

QUESTIONS.—2. What might you imagine of Julius Casar? 3. What articles were unknown till after his time? What have been invented within the last five hundred years? 4. What can you say of iron? 5. What did the ancients use instead of iron? 6. When was iron said to be discovered? What is probable? What of iron among the Romans? 7. What of fine cutlery? When were table-knives first in use? What of forks? Rasors? 8. What of weaving? Silk? 9. What of cotton fabrics? Calico-printing? 10. What of the first houses? Those in the time of Nero? 11. What of windows? 12. What of chimneys? Smoke? 13. What of the present state of the world? 14. What of the steam-nogine? Its various uses? 15. Relate the anecdote of the steam-boat at Calcutta.

CHAP. CCIL.—GENERAL VIEWS continued.

DATES OF DISCOVERIES AND INVENTIONS.

I WILL now give you a list of various discoveries and inventions, and tell you their dates. When you read this list, I should like to have you tell which of these things were known in the time of Julius Casar, which in the time of Constanting

which in the time of Charlemag Louis XIV.	ne, and	whic	h in	the	time of
					B.C.
First pyramid begun, about	•	•	•	•	. 2095
Brick-making known	•				2000
Money first mentioned in Genesis xx		•	•		. 1865
Letters invented by Memmon, an Eg	-	•	, ,		. 1822
Alphabetical writing first introduced					. 1493
The first ship seen in Greece arrived					. 1485
Bows of wood and metal, shields, sw		•			
helmets, coats-of-mail, chariots,					
statues, temples, canals, iron-w		hand-	mills	tones	,
gilding, and perfumery known, a					. 1400
Iron discovered by the burning of Mo	ount Ida,	in Cr	ete	•	1350
Weights and measures invented .	•	• •			. 869
Carving in marble invented	•	•			. 779
The game of chess invented	-	•	•	•	. 608
Comedy first acted in Athens on a sc	affold		, ,		. 569
Bellows invented	•	• ,	,		. 554
Malt liquor used in Europe	•	•			. 450
First private library, belonging to Ar	istotle			•	. 334
Wrought silk brought from Persia to	Greece				. 32
Silver coined at Rome	•		, ,	• ,	. 269
Water-clocks used in Rome	•	•	•		. 156
Blister-plasters invented	••				. 6
Glass known to the Romans	•	•	•	•	. 6
					A.D
Grist-mills invented in Ireland .	•	•	•	• •	. 214
Hour-glass invented in Alexandria.	•	•	• .	•	. 30
Saddles in use about		• _ '	•	• •	. 460
Bells invented by Paulinus, Bishop of	f Nola, i	n Car	pani	а,	. 401
Glass for windows first used	•	•	•	• •	. 451
Shoeing of horses introduced .	• •	•	•	•	. 481
Stirrups first used, about	•	•	•	•	. 4

DATES OF DISCOVERIES, ETC.	563
r-mills for grinding invented by Belisarius	A.D. 555
for writing first made from quills	635
ing of stone first introduced into England	670
	890
metical figures first introduced into Europe from Arabia	
stone bridge built in England	1087
first made of cotton	1100
ges for education first established in Paris	1215
first made in England	1253
ifying glasses invented by Roger Bacon	1260
mills invented	1299
acles invented by Spina, a monk of Pisa	1299
ng-glasses made only at Venice	1300
owder invented	1330
on invented about	1340
ing in oils invented by John Van Eyk	1352
invented in France	1380
in use about	1400
invented at Paris	1404
ets first used in France	1414
first made from linen rags	1417
s invented	1425
ving for printing on paper first known	1428
ng invented by Faust	1441
in Bible, the first book printed from type	1450
icity discovered	1467
acs first published in Germany	1470
s and watches invented	1477
n canals first made in Italy	1481
co first discovered in St. Domingo	1496
ing introduced into England	<i>7202</i> 1480
	1230
late introduced into Europe from Mexico	1680
ng-wheel invented at Brunswick	. 184
first made in England by a native of India	

Küitting stockings first invented in Spain	547 550 553 572 590
Kritting stockings first invented in Spain Circulation of the blood first published Fans first used in England Coaches first introduced into England Bombs first invented at Venloo Telescopes invented in Germany Tes first brought into England from Chisa Coining with a die first practised Thermometers first invented by Drebel, a Dutchman Microscopes first used Coffee first brought into England Air-guns invented Railroads first used near Newcastle-upon-Tyne	553 572
Fans first used in England	572
Coaches first introduced into England	
Bombs first invented at Venloo	LOC
Telescopes invented in Germany	360
Tes first brought into England from Chisa Coining with a die first practised Thermometers first invented by Drebel, a Dutchman Microscopes first used Coffee first brought into England Air-guns invented Railroads first used near Newcastle-upon-Tyne	586
Coining with a die first practised Thermometers first invented by Drebel, a Dutchman Microscopes first used Coffee first brought into England Air-guns invented Railroads first used near Newcastle-upon-Tyne	560
Coining with a die first practised Thermometers first invented by Drebel, a Dutchman Microscopes first used Coffee first brought into England Air-guns invented Railroads first used near Newcastle-upon-Tyne	50 1
Microscopes first used	617
Coffee first brought into England	530
Air-guns invented	12 1
Air-guns invented	34 1
	546
Air-numns invented	150
zrit-pumps in tensor	154
Clocks with pendulums invented about	156
Chain-shot invented by Admiral de Witt	j60
Knives not made in England till	68
First idea of a steam-engine given by the Marquis of Worcester 1	663
Fire-engines invented	j63
Barometers invented	570
Guineas coined in England from gold brought from Guines . 1	573
Buckles invented about	(8)
Telegraphs invented	687
Copper money first coined in England	689
Steam-engine first constructed by Savery	
Prussian blue discovered at Berlin	704
First newspaper in America printed in Boston	706
Stereotype printing invented at Edinburgh 1	785
First ascent of a balloon in France	
Sunday schools first established in Yorkshim, Esgland 1	
A s. 1 . 1	190
The mank is congressing investigated by the land and a section of the	W
Simple steem-hoat succeeded in Sections	

DATES OF DISQUVERIES, ETC.			000
The Omnibus invented at Paris			A.D. 1827
	•	•	
Modallion Engraving invented , .	•	•	1830
Wire Rope invented in Germany	٠	••	1830
Lucifer Matches invented	•	about	
Locomotive Engine first used on Liverpool & Mancheste	r R	ailway	
Screw-propeller introduced	•	•	1836
The Electric Telegraph invented	•	•	1837
The Daguerreotype, or Sun-drawing, discovered .	•	•	1838
Stereoscope invented		•	1838
Electrotype invented		•	1839
The art of Electro-plating discovered			1840
Steam-hammer invented			1842
Gutta-percha made known by Dr. W. Montgomerie			1845
Gun-cotton invented by Professor Schönbein .		•	1846
Discovery of Gold in California		•	1849
Paraffin Oil discovered		•	1850
Discovery of Gold in Australia made known in Sydney	7.		1851
Straw Paper perfected and used in printing books .	•		1854
Electric Light discovered		about	1855
Discovery of Gold in British Columbia		•	1858
Atlantic Telegraph laid, and fails			1858
Photozincography discovered			1859
The Armstrong Gun invented	Ì	·	1859
The Victoria Bridge in Canada opened			1859
Exploring Expedition across the Australian Contin	ent	hv	
Burke and others	V	, -,	1861
Submarine Telegraph laid successfully between Ma	1+0	and.	1044
Alexandria, 1400 miles	LVA	аци	1861
First Bronze Coinage in England	•	•	
m - m - 4 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1	•	•	18 61 18 61
Type-composing Machine invented	•	•	1861 (Re)
	٠	~*	186
Discovery of the Source of the Nile, by Spake and Callantic Submarine Telegraph Cable haid successive	erk Tr.	sa.	. 1.

REK

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF KINGDOMS, OR STATES, WITH THEIR REIGNING SOVEREIGNS OR HEADS OF GOVERNMENT.

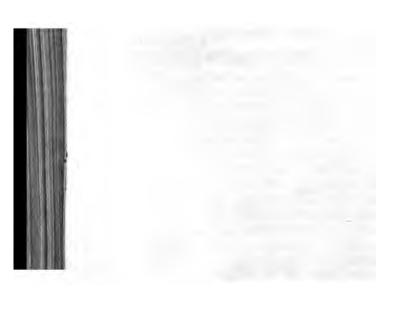
								A.D.
Auhalt-Bomberg—Alexan	ier C	harle	8 .	•		•		1834
Anhalt-Dessau-Cöthen—L	eopol	IV.		• •		•	•	1817
Argentine Republic-Don	Barto	lome	Mitr	e, Pı	eside	nt.		1862
Austria—Francis Joseph I.			•	•	•			1848
Baden—Frederick I		•	•					1856
Bavaria—Ludwig II				•	•			1864
Belgium—Leopold II				•	•	•		1831
Brazil—Pedro II				•			•	1831
Brunswick—William I					•	•		1831
Canada—Viscount Monk, (Jover	nor-(J ener	al				1861
Cape of Good Hope—Gove	rnor,	Sir I	P. E.	Wod	ehou	se.		1861
Ceylon—Governor, Sir H.	G. R.	Rob	inson			•		1864
Chili, Republic-President	, Don	Jose	Joaq	luin]	Perez		•	1861
China-Ki-tsiang		•	•	•				1861
Denmark—Christian IX.								1863
Egypt—Ismail Pasha .				•				1863
Electoral Hesse—Frederick	Will	iam :	I.		•			1847
France-Napoleon III								1852
Grand-Ducal Hesse—Louis	III.							1848
Great Britain—Victoria L.			•		•			1837
Greece—George I	•			•		•		1863
Hesse-Darmstadt—Ludwig	III.						•	1848
Folland-William III.				•	•	•		1849
ndia-Governor-General	Bir	J, L	MT	<u>DWIG</u>	. 020			1863
tels—Victor Emmanuel	u.		•	•	•			/380

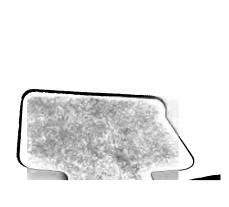
LIST OF KINGDOMS WITH THE	IR B	EIGN	IINQ.1	80VE	ŖEIG	ns,	567
							A.D.
Japan-Mina Motto I., Typhoon		•	•	•	•	•	1860
Java-Baron L. A. J. W. Sloet van	n der	Beel	le, Go	verne	or-Ge	neral	1861
Liberia-President, D. B. Warner		٠	•				1864
Liechtenstein-Johan II					•		1858
Lippe-Detmold—Leopold II.							1851
Luxemburg-William III							1849
Madagascar-Queen Rabidon							1863
Mecklenburg-Schwerin-Frederick	. Fra	ncis	II.				1842
Mecklenburg-Strelitz-Frederick V	Willi	am I.					1860
Natal-Governor, J. Maclean							1864
New South Wales-Sir John Your	ıg, G	overi	or				1860
New Zealand-Sir George Grey, G	dove	mor					1861
Oldenburg-Peter I							1853
Paraguy-President Lopez .							1862
Peru, Republic-President, Genera	al Pe	ezet					1863
	•						1861
Prussia-William I						-	1861
Queensland-Sir G. F. Bowen, Gov	verno	r					1859
Reuss, Elder-Henry XXII.							1859
Reuss, Younger-Henry LXVII.		_					1854
Roman Pontificate—Pius IX.	_						1846
Roumania—Charles	_						1866
Russia-Alexander II.							1855
Saxe-Altenburg-Ernest Frederick	. T.	•	_	•		_	1858
Saxe-Coburg-Gotha-Ernest II.				•		_	1844
Saxe-Meiningen-George II.	_	•		•	•	-	1866
Saxe-Weimar—Charles Alexander	r T.	•	•	•	•	•	1853
	- - •		:	•	•	•	1854
Schaumberg-Lippe—Adolphus	<u>.</u>	•		•	•		1860
Schwarzberg-Rudolstadt—Gunther	VI	•	-			•	7091
Schwarzburg-Sondershausen—Gur	ther	.77	•	٠.	٠.	`.	1835
Servia—Michael III.			•	٠.	•		1680

568 LIST OF KINGDOMS WITH THEIR REIGNING SOVEREIC

Siam—Somdel Phra (first king) .	•	•	•	•	
South Australia—Sir D. Daly, Govern	or	•		•	
Spain—Isabella II.	•	•	•		
Sweden and Norway—Charles XV.					
Switzerland-M. Fornerod, President			4		
Fasmania—Col. Gore Browne, Govern	10 r		•		
Furkey—Abdul Aziz I					
United States of America—Andrew Jo	ohnso	n, Pr	eside	nt	
Uruguay Republic-Dr. F. A. Vidal,	Presid	lent.			
Victoria—Hon. J. H. Manners Sutton.					
Waldeck-George Victor L		•	•		
Western Australia-J. S. Hampton, G	over	MOR"			-
Wurtemburg-Charles I	•		•		•

THE END.





.

